

GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

ARCHAEOLOGICAL SURVEY OF INDIA

CENTRAL  
ARCHAEOLOGICAL  
LIBRARY

ACCESSION NO. 12056

CALL No. 954.023/ Che.

D.G.A. 79

Acc. 12056

Vol. II



~~D 4366~~ Vol. 2





THE  
HISTORY  
OF  
TIMUR-BEC,

Known by the Name of

Tamerlain the Great,

Emperor of the

MOGULS and TARTARS:

BEING

Acc. 12056

An historical JOURNAL of his Conquests  
in *Asia* and *Europe*.

Written in *Persian* by *CHEREFEDDIN ALI*  
Nati of *Yezd*, his Contemporary.

Translated into *French* by the late *Maître de la Croix*, *Black Professor* in the  
Royal College, and Secretary and Interpreter  
to the King in the Oriental Languages.

With historical Notes and Maps.

Now faithfully render'd into *English*.

VOL. II.

LONDON: Printed for J. DART in the Strand,  
E. BELL in Cornhill, W. PARKER in Pall Mall,  
W. and J. INNES at the West End of St. Paul's Church,  
J. OSMAN in Lombard Street, and T. PARKER  
in the Strand, MDCCLXXII.

74

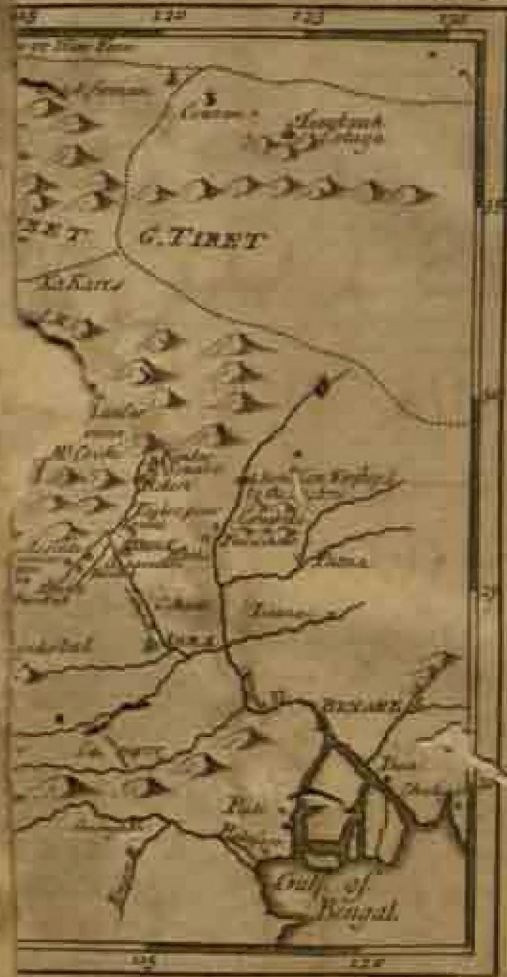
954.026



87366

20







---

THE 12056  
HISTORY  
OF  
TIMUR-BEC.

---

BOOK IV.

*Timur enters India, and passes over the rivers Indus and Ganges. The taking of the citys. of Moultan, Labor, and Deli capital of that kingdom. A considerable battel between Timur and the Sultan Mahmound, grandson of Firouz Chah emperor of India. The Tartars artifice in conquering the elephants in the war with the Indians. The destruction of the temples of the Guebres. Several battels with these adorers of fire, and other idolaters of this great empire.*



## C H A P. I.

*The cause of Timur's war in India.*

**T**IMUR had given to his grandson prince Pir Mehemed, son of Gohanghir, the provinces of Condoz, Bacalan, Cabul, Gaznin, and Candahar, with their dependencies, as far as the frontiers of India, as we said before; and this Mirza being establish'd in these principalities, endeavor'd to render 'em flourishing by his justice and goodness.

He receiv'd orders from court to assemble the troops of all the provinces, and to depart at their head for other conquests, and to make himself master of many towns and countrys in India. He accordingly set out with a great army commanded by good generals, the most valiant Emirs of his country.

They began with the plunder of the Ouganis, inhabitants of the mountain of Soffman Couh<sup>a</sup>, which country they entirely ravag'd. They pass'd the Indus, invert<sup>b</sup> Outchah<sup>c</sup>, and also laid siege to Moultan<sup>d</sup>, which had then for its governor prince Sarenk, eldest brother of Melton Can, who govern'd the empire of India for the young Sultan Mahmoud.

Timur resolv'd to make war in the empire of India, because since the death of Firouz Chah

<sup>a</sup> On the west of the Indus, between Cabul and Candahar.

<sup>b</sup> A town E. of the Indus, N. of Moulhan.

<sup>c</sup> A town of India on the Raver, long. 107 $\frac{1}{2}$ , lat. 29.

emperor of it, Mellou Can and Sarenk two Chap. 1.  
brothers, who had been his generals, had usurp'd  
the sovereign power; and having plac'd on the  
throne Sultan Mahmoud, grandson of Firouz  
Chah, they reign'd over all India, Mellou Can  
residing at Deli\*, near Sultan Mahmoud, and  
his brother Sarenk at Moultan.

Moultan being besieged by our army, was  
briskly attack'd and batter'd without interrup-  
tion: there were two assaults given every day,  
and the regiment of Timur Cosa son of Achouga,  
fought with more heat than all the others, be-  
cause this Emir was not only an adviser, but the  
first actor in this enterprize.

Timur receiv'd the news with joy; and as he  
had already resolv'd to carry his arms to Catai or  
China, to root out the infidels, he got together  
all the troops of the empire. He had been be-  
fore that inform'd, that the mahometan reli-  
gion was then observ'd in many places of In-  
dia, as at Deli and other citys, where the testi-  
mony of that faith was written upon their  
coins; nevertheless the greatest part of the pro-  
vinces distant from this town were inhabited by  
idolaters. Timur, who design'd to partake of  
the merit and glory of the Gazie\*, and had  
rais'd this numerous army with intention to  
make war on the enemies of his religion, soon  
resolv'd on the conquest of India. He assem-  
bled his council, according to the custom Ma-

\* Capital of India, long. 100. lat. 20. It consists of three  
Towns, Siri, Goharpeta, and old Deli, all which make but  
one; as Paris consists of the city, university, and suburbs of  
St. Germain.

\* Gazie among the originals signifies the wars the Mahome-  
tans undertake against those who profess a different religion.  
They imagine that whoever die in these wars, become martyrs,  
and of consequence inherit paradise.

Book IV. *homai* had introduc'd, and propos'd his undertaking to the great Emirs of the state in these terms.

" Fortune, my dear friends, furnishes us  
 " with such happy conjonctures, that she seems  
 " to offer herself to us, and invite us to lay hold  
 " of the favorable opportunitys which present  
 " themselves; for as we have already seen the  
 " empires of Iran and Touran, and almost all  
 " Asia under our command, she shews us In-  
 " dia, thro the disorders of the princes who  
 " govern it, opening its gates to receive us.  
 " My name has spread terror throughout the  
 " universe; and the least motion I make is ca-  
 " pable of shaking the whole earth. It is  
 " therefore time to attack the kingdom of In-  
 " dia, where having overcome what opposes  
 " our designs, we shall oblige this kingdom to  
 " acknowledg no other sovereign than me.  
 " What think ye, my dear friends, who are the  
 " companions of my victorys, of this great en-  
 " terprize? Speak all in general, and every  
 " one in particular, your opinion of this pro-  
 " posal, which appears reasonable, since for-  
 " tune has not yet withdrawn its protection  
 " from me."

Timur having thus made known his resolution to the captains and generals of his army, they fell upon the ground, and with sincere submission and perfect obedience, said, The order of the emperor was a law to all men, and more indispensibly so to them who were his slaves; that wherever he shou'd set his feet, there they shou'd be ready to lay their heads: that it was their glory punctually to obey his orders, even when he requir'd 'em to undertake the greatest difficulties. Timur, pleas'd with this answer, heap'd favours on 'em, and thought of nothing



nothing more than the means of bringing this Chap. 2.  
enterprize to perfection.

## CHAP. II.

*Timur brings his army into the field, to make war against the Guebres in India.*

THE Alcoran says, the highest dignity man can attain to, is that of making war in person against the enemys of his religion. Mahomet adviseth the same thing, according to the tradition of the mussulman doctors: wherefore the great Timur always strive to exterminate the infidels, as much to acquire that glory, as to signalize himself by the greatness of his conquests.

For which reason in the year of the Leopard, that is, in the month of Regeb of the year 800 of the Hegira, having left Mirza Omar son of Mirza Miran Chah to govern the city of Samarcand, he took the road to India, having many kings of Asia for his attendance, who were come to his court as to an asylum, to render their services to this conqueror.

March  
1393a

He had in his army soldiers and even officers of all nations: but all the chiefs, and greatest part of the companys who were in posts of consequence, were Tartars: and he had also a great many lords of Kech.

Timur being arriv'd at Termed, there order'd to be made a bridge of boats over the Oxus, which he cross'd with his army: He rais'd many choice soldiers and of good appearance in the fine city of Culm, from whence he took the road to Aznic and Semencan; and after having

Book IV. pass'd the mountains of Bacalan, he went to encamp at Enderabe.

### CHAP. III.

*Timur marches against the inhabitants of Ketuer. He defeats the Siapouches, who were cloth'd in black.*

WHILST Timur was encamp'd at Enderabe, the inhabitants came to cast themselves at his feet, to complain of the insults and troubles they receiv'd from the idolaters of Ketuer\*, and from the Siapouches†: they represented to him that there were a great number of Mafsulmans, from whom the infidels exacted every year excessive sums of money, under the name of tribute and Carage; which if they fail'd to pay punctually, they kill'd their men, and made their women and children slaves.

The emperor, touch'd with their complaints, and excited by zeal for the religion of which he was protector and defender, march'd immediately against these tyrants: he chose three soldiers out of every ten, and left the Mirza Charoe to command the rest of the army and the baggage at Goumandicour‡, where they ordinarily pass'd the summer. Timur decamp'd twice a day, and march'd with so much diligence, that he made two days journey in one.

\* A mountain of Badakchan inhabited by idolaters, long. 114. lat. 36.

† An idolatrous nation cloth'd in black, inhabiting the mountain S. of the province of Badakchan.

‡ A cool place in the mountain near Enderabe.

He soon arriv'd at Perjan <sup>1</sup>, whence he sent Chap. 22  
 Mirza Roussem, accompanied by Burhan A-  
 glen, and other Emirs, with ten thousand men  
 towards the West, to seek the Siapouches; and  
 following his road, he arriv'd at Caouc <sup>2</sup>, where  
 he found a demolish'd citadel, which he caus'd  
 to be rebuilt. Many Emirs and soldiers left  
 some of their horses at Caouc, and ascended on  
 foot the mountain of Keiner, where tho the  
 sun was in Gemini, the snow lay in so great  
 abundance, that the feet of most part of the  
 horses, which the lords wou'd have carry'd  
 up, fail'd 'em: yet some of 'em were spur'd  
 on so much during the night and the frost,  
 that they were constrain'd to get up: but day  
 being come, and the snow turn'd into ice, they  
 kept these horses under fells till evening, when  
 they continu'd to ascend the mountain, so that  
 at length they arriv'd at the top, and then sent  
 for the rest of the horses. And as the infidels  
 dwell in narrow passages and precipices, and  
 there was no road to get to them, besides what  
 was cover'd with snow; some of the Emirs and  
 soldiers descended by cords, while others lying  
 on the snow, slid down to the bottom. They  
 made a sort of raft for Timur, to which they  
 fasten'd rings, that they might tie cords to it  
 of two hundred and fifty cubits in length: he  
 sat upon it, while many persons let him down  
 from the top to the bottom of the mountain,  
 as far as the cords wou'd reach. Others dug  
 with pickaxes in the snow a place where he  
 might stand firm. They who were on the top

<sup>1</sup> A town in the province of Bedakshan, two days journey  
 from Lerdashe near the Siapouches.

<sup>2</sup> A town at the foot of the mountain of Keiner, long 113  
 fms. 25.




Book IV. having gently descended, they let down Timur again in the machine. The place also was mark'd out where he shou'd stay next; and so on till the fifth time, when he arriv'd at the foot of the mountain. Then this monarch took a staff in his hand to rest on, and walk'd on foot a great way. These fatigues did not deter him, because of his confidence in the merit of the Garie, which always increas'd his ardent zeal for the most difficult enterprizes. Those who work for God may rest assur'd of success. They also let down some of the emperor's horses, girding 'em about the belly and neck, with great precaution; but most of 'em thro the fault of the guides fell headlong down, so that there remain'd but two fit for service. Then Timur took horse, and all the army follow'd on foot.

The infidels of this country are strong men, and as large as the giants of the people of Aza<sup>\*</sup>; they go all naked; their kings are nam'd Oda and Odachouh: they have a particular language<sup>\*</sup>, which is neither Persian, nor Turkish, nor Indian; and know no other than this: and if it was not for the inhabitants of the neighbouring places, who are found there by chance, and having learnt their language, serve for interpreters, no one would be able to understand 'em.

These infidels were in a citadel, at the foot of whose walls passes a great river; and on the other side of this river there was a high mountain. As they had learnt the approach of Timur twenty four hours before his arrival, they abandon'd this post, cross'd the river, and car-

<sup>\*</sup> Azilant in the time of Nimrod.

<sup>\*</sup> The language of the people of Kazer was heretofore unknown.

ry'd their effects to the top of this mountain, *Chap. 3.* imagining it inaccessible, especially with the intrenchments they had made there. 

When the army after long fatigues arriv'd at the citadel, they found nothing there but some sheep the enemy had left, which they made themselves masters of: then having set fire to the houses, they immediately cross'd the river. The emperor order'd 'em to ascend the mountain by many narrow passages: which our soldiers did, and at the same time return'd thanks to God.

Cheik Arslan, at the head of the vanguard of the left wing<sup>1</sup>, attack'd the foremost of the enemy, and made himself master of a rising ground. They were also attack'd by Ali Sultan Tarachi, who came down into the place where they were encamp'd. A colonel nam'd Chamele signal'd himself by many great actions: and fourteen of our bravest soldiers fell from the top of the mountain to the bottom, and were kill'd. Mubacher also behav'd himself gallantly. Mengheli Coja advanc'd at the head of his company, and gain'd the top of the mountain. Sevindgie Behader did all that cou'd be expected from the greatest valor. Cheik Ali Saliberi advanc'd as far as the ridge of the mountain with all his soldiers: he attack'd the enemy, and got possession of their post. Mansur Raczal and the Emir Hussein Courachi behav'd themselves with the utmost resolution: and at length all the Emirs of the Bezars and Couchans attack'd the infidels on all sides in the most dangerous places. The enemy defended themselves vigorously, notwithstanding the great slaughter of their men. The fight lasted three

<sup>1</sup> The Timur have a vanguard to each wing, which they call Gambel.

**Book IV.** nights with unheard of dissuade: but at length these unfortunate men finding themselves no longer able to make resistance, beg'd quarter with tears in their eyes. Timur sent to 'em Ac Sultan Kechi, with order to tell them that if they would come to him with submission and obedience, abandon their errors, and take up a resolution to acknowledge but one God, and embrace the mahometan religion with sincerity, he would not only give 'em their lives and estates, but also leave 'em to enjoy their principality as before. They had no sooner learnt this from an interpreter, than the fourth day they came to cast themselves at the feet of the emperor, conducted by Ac Sultan Kechi: they abjur'd their idolatry, and embrac'd the mahometan religion, promising to submit entirely to the emperor, and obey all his commands. Timur, according to his wonted generosity, gave them clothes, and sent them away, after having encourag'd 'em by the most affectionate speeches.

**Treason of the men of Keiser.** Night being come, these wretches, whose hearts were more black than their garments, fell upon the regiment of Chamelic, and put all the soldiers of it to the sword, except a few, who, tho' wounded and lame, escap'd their hands.

**Their punishment.** As soon as this treason was discover'd, our men slew near one hundred and fifty of 'em. All the army got up upon the mountain, and following the precept of Mahomet, who orders the women to be spar'd, they put to the sword all the old and young men of these infidels, and carry'd away their women and children. At length they built towers on the top of the mountain and the end of the bridge, with the heads of these traitors, who had never bow'd their head to adore the true God. Timur order'd to be engrav'd upon marble the history of



of this action, which happen'd in the month of *Chap. 4*  
 Ramadan in the year of the Hegira 800; and he *Jan 1792*  
 added the particular Epocha which this people us'd, that their posterity might have some knowledge of the famous valor of the ever-victorious Timur. This pillar so inscrib'd gave the greater pleasure to Timur, in that these people had never been conquer'd by any prince in the world, not even by Alexander the great.

## C H A P. IV.

*Timur sends Mehmed Azad to gain intelligence of Mirza Roustem and Burhan Aglen. His return to Ketcher.*

AS there came no news of Mirza Roustem and Burhan Aglen, who were gone against the Siapouches, the emperor order'd the inhabitants of Ketcher to furnish him with guides; and he sent Mehmed Azad and Deletchah, who had been rais'd to preferments in his court. Four or five Embry accompany'd 'em, with four hundred Turks<sup>\*</sup> and three hundred Tadgics<sup>†</sup>, commanded by Mehmed Azad, who had orders to get information of Mirza Roustem and Burhan Aglen. Mehmed after his departure, according to Timur's order, went up, by strait and difficult passages with extreme Fatigue, high mountains cover'd with snow, which he afterwards slid down, having

<sup>\*</sup> The Turks are those who descend from the Moguls and Tartars.

<sup>†</sup> The Tadgics are the inhabitants of the towns of Transoxiana, and all the country of Ien, who are called Tartars, Moguls, not Turks.

*Book IV.* Strongly fasten'd his buckler to his shoulders. He then march'd to the fortrels of the Siapouches, where he cou'd not meet a single person, or hear one word; but he found the tracks of the feet of several men, who were gone to the other side of the mountain. These were the footsteps of the Siapouches, who having advice of the march of Mirza Roustem and Burhan Aglen, were gone out of their fortresses, and retir'd to the mountains, where they lay in ambuscade in a very narrow passage. Some pass'd by 'em, and others without precaution got off their horses, which they let go loose: then the Siapouches, laying hold of the opportunity, came out of their ambuscade, and fell suddenly upon them. Burhan Aglen, thro his great cowardice, or rather by an unheard-of treason, flung off his coat of mail, and fled without fighting, which caus'd the defeat of his troops. When a general turns his back, we may say he is the murderer of his soldiers. The infidels seeing the Mussulmans fly, became more daring; and pursuing our men close, slew many of 'em with their axes and war-clubs, and among the rest Cheik Hussein Courtchi, Dolotchali Gebegi, and Adina captain of the horse, who, after a vigorous defence, were destroy'd among the rest.

Affairs were in this miserable state, when Mehemed Azad observing the prints of the feet of the Siapouches, arriv'd in the passage where this tragedy happen'd: he met 'em at their return, attack'd 'em with the greatest bravery, after a sharp fight utterly defeated 'em, and retook from 'em the bucklers, arms and horses of our Mussulmans. He then went to rejoin Burhan Aglen with the horse which had fled; and every

every one knowing his own bucklers, arms and horses, they were resist'd.

Mehemed Azad then told Barhan Aglen that he must stay in that place all night; but this coward would not do it: he got up to the top of the mountain, whither he was follow'd by his troops, to the great regret of Mehemed Azad; for when a commander proves a traitor or a coward, his army never fails of being conquer'd. This action of Barhan was very infamous; and since the reign of Genghiz Can there has not been one prince of the race of Cayat\*, who has committed the like. Barhan had formerly done the same in the war of the Uzbecs, and receiv'd pardon by the singular goodness of Timur, who continu'd to honor him as before, and had even sent him on this expedition, in hopes he would repair his fault, and recover his credit, which in this last affair he entirely destroy'd.

After the conquest of Ketuer, and defeat of the idolaters, Timur sent Gelalelislam and Ali Sistani with troops to seek an easy passage from the mountains, and to clear the ways: and he order'd them to ruin whatsoever they met belonging to the infidels.

These two Emirs having found a passage to their mines, open'd a way in the snow; and then Timur cross'd the mountains, and went down to Caouc', where he left a strong garrison. At this place he join'd the Emirs and soldiers, who for eighteen hours had constantly

\* A Mogul herd, from whence Genghiz Can sprung; which herd were the descendants of an ancient Mogul prince call'd Cayat, who was descended from Turz, son of Japhet, son of Noah.

† A town in Ketuer rebuilt by Timur.



Book IV. fought on foot: then they took horse, and accompanied the emperor.

When Buthan Aglen and Mehemed Azad had join'd the imperial standard with their troops, Timur wou'd not admit the first into his presence, because without making any defence he had fled from the infidels: he treated him with scorn as he met him by chance; and to shew his infamy, cited a passage of the Alcoran, which assures us, That twenty zealous Mussulmans are able to conquer two hundred infidels, provided they trust in God: and yet Buthan (said the emperor) at the head of ten thousand men fled from a handful of infidels, and put the Mussulmans in danger of being torn in pieces. Then Timur declar'd him criminal, and as a mark of disgrace banish'd him the court.

Mehemed Azad having fought on foot at the head of four hundred men only, and stood his ground against the same men, tho' pusht up with their victory; and having also put a great number of 'em to the sword, recovering from 'em all the horses they had got from us; Timur heap'd on him honors and riches, distinguishing him by great praises, and giving him the command of a regiment to reward his valor. The emperor distributed also largesses among those who had given marks of their courage in so dangerous an expedition.

## CHAP. V.

*Timur sends Mirza Charoc to Herat.*

AT this place \* Timur permitted his dear \* Gou-  
 son Mirza Charoc, heir apparent to the  
 crown, to return to Herat, capital of Corassan,  
 of which he was governor. When he took leave  
 of this prince, he gave him his advice, and us'd  
 many expressions which shew'd a fatherly tender-  
 ness and affection; and after having embrac'd  
 him, and recommended him to the divine pro-  
 tection, he dismiss'd him. Timur decamp'd at  
 the same time, and march'd towards Cabul: he  
 took the road to Tasse †, ascended the mountain  
 of Hendou-Kech, pass'd by Pendgehar ‡, com-  
 monly call'd Pendgir, and went to encamp in a  
 meadow of the country of Barin, about five  
 leagues from Cabul. And as the design of this  
 conqueror was chiefly to dispense justice to the  
 people, and to render the country and towns  
 flourishing, he gave orders for a canal to be dug,  
 which might join the river which passes thro  
 those quarters. He divided the land between  
 the captains and soldiers, and in a short time  
 there was a great canal made five leagues long,  
 which is yet call'd the canal of Mahignir: at  
 length there were many large villages built up-  
 on it; and the valley, which before had not

\* A little town of Belakshan.

† A town and mountain, where Abulfeda the geographer  
 says there are two silver mines; and that the town is full of  
 diamonds dug to get out the ore. It is at the foot of the moun-  
 tain of Cochmor to the west, between Cabul and Belakshan.

Book IV. been cultivated, became a fine and delightful garden.

## CHAP. VI.

*The arrival of ambassadors from several places. Taizi Aglen returns from the country of the Calmaet, and Cheik Noureidin from that of Fars.*

**T**IMUR being encamp'd in the plain of Dourin<sup>1</sup>, there arriv'd an ambassador from Timur Corlué Aglen a prince of Capchac, and another from Emir Aidecou, a prince of Capchac, as also a third of Gere from Keler Coja Aglen; who were presented before the throne by the Emirs and Nevians. After they had kiss'd the ground and perform'd other usual ceremonies, they began their harangue, wishing all prosperity to Timur, and highly extolling him: then they declar'd the subject of their embassy, which was, to assure the emperor that their masters were faithful servants of his majesty; that tho' for some time past there had been no good intelligence or agreement between 'em, which had made 'em depart from the obedience they ow'd him, and wander as vagabonds in the deserts; yet consideration and prudence having now brought 'em to see the deformity of their actions, they sincerely repented of 'em, and that if the emperor would be merciful and pardon their fault, they would for the future

<sup>1</sup> A village near Gerza.

be most obedient, and never disobey the orders of his officers. Chap. 6

Taizi Aglen, who for some difference which happen'd between him and the Can at Olug Yurt \*, fled from the kingdom of Calmac †, came to this place to lay himself at the feet of the throne, and was receiv'd as handiome as a prince of his rank could expect. Timur embrac'd him, and presented him with a vest wore with gold, a belt set with precious stones, horses of great price, several mules and camels, tents and pavilions, and whatever could be expected from a great emperor. At the same place also arriv'd Emir Choik Noureddin, son of Sar Bouga, who had been left by Timur in Persia, after the five years campaign there, in order to receive the revenues of that kingdom and the neighboring countrys. He brought with him an immense treasure, with abundance of jewels of inestimable price; likewise animals proper for the chase, and birds of prey; leopards, gold money, belts enrich'd with precious stones, vests wore with gold, stags of all colors, arms and all sorts of utensils for war, arabian horses with saddles of gold, great camels, several carriage and riding mules, fine stirrups, the straps embroider'd with gold and silver; umbrellas, canopys, pavilions, tents and cartrains of scarlet and all colors; in short, there was so great a quantity of curious pieces of work, that the secretaries and comptrollers of the Divan employ'd three days and three nights

\* This is, the great boy, son of the king of Calmac, or rather of the Mogul Can or emperor, near Caracorum capital of Calmac.

† A kingdom, formerly call'd Casacal, is Mogolstan, north of the kingdom of Couge or Lentsing.



Book IV. to register 'em, and write copys of 'em, which were presented to the lords of the court for their perusal.

The day for presenting petitions being appointed, the Emirs or generals, and the Nevians or foreign princes, presented Emir Cheik Noureddin before the imperial throne. This prince knelt down, and the whole day was spent in calling over before the emperor all his presents, than which none ever were seen so magnificent, not even in the reign of the great Feridon \*, or of Corzu Peruize †.

Prince Taizi Aglen, the ambassadors of Capcha, and several princes of the race of Genghis Can, who were present, were surpriz'd at it; not only at the sight of the riches, but but also considering that the power of Timur must be very great, since one of his subjects was rich enough to make so magnificent a present.

Timur distributed a great many of these rarities, and gave a very friendly reception to Emir Cheik Noureddin, who told the emperor that all these presents were too small for those who had resolv'd to sacrifice their lives to his service.

Timur being willing to treat the ambassadors of the Uzbeks ‡ and Getes handsomely, gave 'em caps of gold, belts, vests and horses; he granted 'em whatsoever they ask'd, and loaded 'em with presents, as well for themselves as their masters, with letters in answer to those they had brought. At length Emir Cheik Noureddin knelt down, and ask'd pardon for Borhan Aglen, and the rest who accompany'd him at

\* King of Persia of the first race.

† King of Persia of the third race.

‡ The princes of Capcha are here call'd Uzbeks.

the audience: Timur granted this with an excess of clemency and generosity. Chap. 6.

He then sent to India Sultan Mahmoud Can<sup>1</sup>, with the troops of the left wing, and all the princes and Emirs who had before receiv'd orders.

At this time Malch Melchmal, brother to Lechke Chah an Ougani, call himself at the feet of the emperor, and in an humble manner told him, that Moulla, prince of the nation of the Kerkes, had kill'd his brother, who was an officer of his majesty; that he had ruin'd the town of Ijab<sup>2</sup>, and pillag'd his Herazes; that he had made himself master of their effects by force, and that this villain constantly robb'd in the great roads, that no one cou'd pass those quarters: "For my part, says Malch, I, who am a poor servant of your majesty, have fled to save my life from the hands of this barbarous man: I have pass'd by Garna, and stand here on the good news I receiv'd of the march of your imperial standard."

This advice rais'd Timur's passion, and he resolv'd to put a stop to these disorders, by some means or other. He order'd Malch to lie conceal'd, and to keep this advice secret, telling him he wou'd call Moulla to court, and if he came, he wou'd oblige him to do justice, and make entire satisfaction; but if he did not come, he wou'd give him an army, with which he might revenge himself on this murderer, for the death of his brother. Timur immediately sent

<sup>1</sup> True emperor of Zagnai, who serves under Timur as general of the army, and has only the name of Can, Timur being sovereign.

<sup>2</sup> Four days journey from Douchi, in the road to India.



Book IV. a messenger to Moussa, to whom he gave orders to tell him as follows.

"The emperor having advice that you have demolish'd the city of Ispah, situate in the great road to India, does not think convenient that it should remain in ruins, wherefore he wills and commands you to come forthwith to court, where he designs to invest you with the government of that country, not doubting but you will rebuild the place, and settle it in its former splendor."

The messenger having handsomely acquitted himself of this commission, Moussa came immediately with a resolution to cast himself at the feet of the throne; but Timur, who had resolv'd to put him to death, with all his accomplices, receiv'd him in a civil manner at full sight, and gave him a vest woven with gold, a belt, a sword with a gold handle, a horse well equip'd, with other curious things, and at last said to him, "We will assign you troops, with which it is expedient you should go and rebuild that place: wherefore depart with thy domesticks and friends, and use all your efforts, that the place may be rebuilt before we arrive: and if there is need of any thing towards the perfecting of it, we will order it you; and then leaving you in the government of it, we will depart for India." Timur then sent him away, and order'd Moussa Rezzai, with three thousand brave men, to accompany him.

When Moussa was arriv'd at Ispah, he made dispatch in executing the orders he had receiv'd, and employ'd all his men and domesticks, about three hundred persons, in the rebuilding of this place.

## C H A P VII.

*The repairing the fortress of Irjāb, and the  
destroying of the Qanganis robbers.*

TIMUR sent from the country of Dou-  
sin to Samarcand the angust princeſs Se-  
ral Muſt Canam, and the Mirza Oluc Bei, who  
were at court; and then he decamp'd. In four  
days he arriv'd at the town of Irjāb, which he  
found nearly repair'd: there he fix'd his impe-  
rial tent, and the army encamp'd in order of bat-  
tel, every one in his proper poſt. Timur or-  
der'd that the rebuilding of the town ſhou'd be  
contin'd; and the Emir Chahmelik and Gela-  
leliſlam had a commiſſion for rebuilding of  
moſques and other public buildings, inſomuch  
that all was finiſh'd in fourteen days. Timur  
had before commanded the Tavachis not to  
ſuffer any of the ſubjects of Mouſſa, employ'd  
in repairing the town, to re-enter it after once  
going out: and this order was not given with-  
out cauſe; for on the ſeventeenth of Zalkadge  
in the morning, Timur having taken horſe to  
view the place, with its diſchies and wall, ac-  
company'd with many princeſs and generals,  
who march'd on foot on each ſide him, he was  
perceiv'd by ſeven of Mouſſa's labourers, who  
were in an upper ſtory of an houſe ſituate be-  
hind a gate of the town; and being within bow-  
ſhot of him, they let fly from a window with  
deſign to kill him. But they did not take good  
aim, and the ruſhing the arrow made only ſtuffed  
his horſe. However Timur went into the town  
by another gate, and caſt Mouſſa and his ac-

Sept. 16.  
1307.

*Book IV.* complices to be seiz'd: the seven assassins who were in the house from whence the arrow was shot, took up their arms to defend themselves, and wounded some of our men; but at last Kelleki Sistani broke open the house with some soldiers of his company, and put 'em to death.

At nine a'clock the same morning, Timur deliver'd to Malek Mehemmed his enemy Moussa, with two hundred of his men, whom he had seiz'd. Malek, assisted by three of his servants, cut off all their heads, to revenge himself for the death of his brother whom they had slain, and made a tower of them. Then they pillag'd all his country and subjects, and put to death several leaders of those villains who were mix'd among our officers. The women and children, as also the goods and moveables of these tyrants, were given to the poor oppress'd people of Ijab, who, for being of Malek Mehemmed's side, had suffer'd for several years great violence and injustice. And on this occasion we see that passage of the Alcoran fulfill'd, which threatens tyrants with confusion and ruin.

Timur gave the principality of Ijab to Malek Mehemmed, and by this means deliver'd travellers from being infested by these insolent robbers. Thus as he render'd kingdoms flourishing by his goodness and equity, so he suppress'd disorders by his power and justice.

## C H A P. VIII.

*Timur marches to Chenouzan and Nagaz;  
and destroys the robbers of the nation of the  
Pervians.*

**T**IMUR, after having settled the affairs of the country of Iraj, which requir'd a great authority as his to put it in order, the nightenth of Zilhadge, in the year 800, march'd towards Chenouzan. After having pass'd many forests and some mountains, he encamp'd near that place; where he staid the next day, and sent his son prince Cassi Sultan to Bamai<sup>a</sup>, by the road of Capitalagai<sup>b</sup>, at the head of the baggage, accompanied by several Emirs.

Timur having march'd all night with great diligence, went with some thousands of horse towards the fortress of Nagaz, where he arriv'd early on the twenty-first of Zilhadge.

It is to be remark'd, that the court having been before at Cabul, Emir Solyman Chah, and other commanders of the troops of Corassana, were come to Nagaz<sup>c</sup>, according to Timur's order, to rebuild that place; and that they had work'd very hard there, so that it was completely fortify'd. Timur at his arrival there, was inform'd that the nation of the Pervians, a sort of Ouganis, to whom he had sent orders to appear before his throne with their troops, to serve in the army, had revolted, and refus'd

<sup>a</sup> Town of Cabulistan near the Indus.

<sup>b</sup> A town of Cabulistan, between the Indus and the river of Cabul.



Book IV. to send their men: for one day when Mirza Pir Mehemed, who had been to view some neighbouring places in India, was return'd with his troops and plunder, bringing with him to Cabul several captives: these inconsiderate men were so bold as to stop up their passage, to plunder 'em of part of the spoils, pass the river of Hir, and entrench themselves in the high mountains and forests, from whence they constantly went to rob on the high-ways. Timur had no sooner advice of this, than giving loose to his passion, he the same day march'd in search of these insolent people, whose end must of course be unfortunate. He came up to 'em in three days, and order'd all his soldiers to dismount, that they might march into the woods and mountains with more ease: and so seize and exterminate these rebels. They attack'd 'em with the greatest vigor, and after a weak defence cut 'em in pieces, made their children prisoners, and pillag'd their goods, having set fire to their habitations; and as there were some who fled, Timur would stay some time in this mountain, to deliver passengers from the fear of these robbers. At this place the deputys and K-lancers \* of the nation of Oubel<sup>†</sup> came to call themselves at his tent, to beg pardon, and implore his protection. This monarch, who sought nothing more than the welfare of his people, not only forgave their crimes, but receiv'd 'em into his protection, heap'd favors on 'em, and granted 'em many privileges, because of their sincerity.

\* K-lancers  
† Oubel.

<sup>†</sup> A nation among the Ouzbeks.

The Emir Solyman Chah having restor'd the town of Nagar to its former splendor, learnt that the Kelatians\*, a strong and numerous people, had refus'd to obey the orders of the emperor, and to come to the camp with their troops. This bew's oblig'd him to fall on 'em, which he did with such bravery, that in two days and nights he defeated these giants, who before that time were esteem'd the most valiant men in the world: he pillag'd their country, cut to pieces a great number of 'em, put the rest in chains, made their children slaves, and burnt their houses. After this he left the country of the Kelatians, and return'd in triumph to the imperial throne, where he was receiv'd with all the respect his actions deserv'd.

The first of Muharrem in the year 801, Timur leaving the country of the Persians, went down to view the neighbourhood of the town of Nagar: he sent the Emir Solyman Chah to Moulhan with good troops, to Mirza Pir Mehemed, and leaving Chah Ali Ferahi with five hundred foot in garison at Nagar, he departed for Bannou, in which he left Pir Ali Spidhar, and the Emir Husseln Courtehi, with a sufficient garison.

Timur departed from Bannou, and the eighth of Muharrem arriv'd at the river Indus, at the very place where Sultan Gelsaleddin king of Carizme, when he fled from the wrath of Genghis Can, swam cross the river. Genghis Can encamp'd here, but did not pass the Indus.

Timur had a bridge of boats and reeds made over this river, in which all the army were

Sept. 30.  
1393.

See the  
History of  
Genghis  
Can, Book  
IV. Ch. 5.

\* A nation among the Ouzbeis.

Book IV, constantly employ'd; and it was finish'd in two days.

At this place he dismiss'd the Ambassadors who came to pay their respects to him, among whom were the said Mehemmed Medini, ambassador from Mecca and Medina \*, and from all the princes and Cherifs of Arabia, who pray'd this conqueror to honor 'em one day with a visit, and take 'em under his protection. Timur also dismiss'd the ambassador of Iskender Chah, prince of Cashmir †, whom he had sent to beseech his majesty to receive him upon his obedience: he order'd him to tell his master that he receiv'd his offer with pleasure, and that he desir'd he would not fail to come to him at the town of Dipalpour ‡, and there join the imperial camp.

## C H A P. IX.

*Timur passes the river Indus.*

Octob. 12.  
1398.

**T**HE twelfth of Moharrem in the year 801, which answers to that of the Leopard, Timur cross'd the Indus at the head of his army, and encamp'd at the entrance of the great desert of Geron, which is call'd Tehol-Gelall, because the Sultan Gelaluddin Carezem Chah, flying from the wrath of Genghiz Can, cross'd the Indus at this place, and enter'd this desert to avoid being put to death by the sword of

\* The Cherifs of Mecca and Medina offer'd to signify Timur Caliph, the Bajani was invested with that high dignity.

† A province, whose capital was Nagai,

‡ A town of India, S. of Lahore

that conqueror. At Timur's arrival at this place, the Rayas, and the principal inhabitants of the mountain of Couhdjoud\*, came to make their submissions to him: they offer'd him presents, promis'd to remit to him considerable sums, and serve him on all occasions. Chap. 10.

Some months before, Roustem Tagi Bongai Berlus had been sent with an army towards Moultan; and having stopt some days at Couhdjoud, these same Rayas did him several important services, furnish'd him with provisions, and even money to pay his soldiers. Timur was highly pleas'd with 'em upon these accounts, and resolv'd they shou'd enjoy the fruits of his clemency: he prohibited every one from insulting 'em, and order'd they shou'd be treated with humanity and affection. After which they return'd home joyful and contented, without either being molested or depriv'd of their usual place of residence. These are the effects and fruits of civility. The poet says, We ought always to be under the protection of our own actions.

## CHAP. X.

*Chehebeddin Mobarec Chah Temini commits hostilities against the emperor after his submission.*

CHEHABEDDIN Mobarec, who was prince of an isle of the river of Jamai\*, had a great number of officers under him, and was very

\* A mountain S. E. of Cachmir.

\* A river near the Indus: it is the continuation of the river Dendana, which comes from Cachmir.



Book IV. rich in many and moveables. When the Mirza  
 W Pir Mehemed Gellangir march'd to the frontiers  
 of Mooltan, Chelabeddin came to him to kiss  
 his feet, and met with a handsome reception  
 from him. He submitted to the emperor, and  
 after he had staid some time to make his court  
 to the Mirza, he took his leave, and return'd  
 home; where he suffer'd himself to be over-  
 taken with pride, and trusting in the strength  
 of his ile, which he believ'd inaccessible, he  
 fortify'd it with a good ditch and high walls.  
 Timur at his arrival at the river of Jamad, had  
 advice of his revolt; and the fourteenth of Ma-  
 Ghal 13. harrem order'd the Emir Cheik Noureddin to  
 attack this ile at the head of his Toman, and  
 as soon as he made himself master of it, to put  
 to the sword every one he shou'd find therein.  
 When the Emir came there, he and his soldi-  
 ers cast themselves into the water to cross over.  
 The besieg'd prepar'd to obstruct their passage;  
 and there was as furious a battel fought as was  
 ever heard of, which lasted till night. Cheba-  
 beddin at the head of ten thousand men came  
 by the windings of the river to attack our ar-  
 my in the rear during night, and fought with  
 great courage and bravery. The Emir Cheik  
 Noureddin, a man of good conduct, receiv'd  
 the enemy with the greatest intrepidity; and  
 after several attacks entirely defeated 'em, con-  
 stantly some to leap into the water, where  
 they were drown'd, and killing the rest. Man-  
 sour and Donoge Tanoura, officers of the em-  
 peror, perform'd many noble actions, and re-  
 ceiv'd several wounds.

Timur came with diligence to this place, and  
 encamp'd near the ile. Chelabeddin, who till  
 that time had never us'd precaution in an af-  
 fair, was so prudent as to get ready two hun-  
 dred

ded flat-bottom'd boats, that he might escape if he shou'd be conquer'd. Whereupon at his return from the night-attack, in which he was vanquish'd, he fled with his domesticks in these boats. With a great deal of difficulty they escap'd, rowing along the river Jamad, and at length they came to Outcha\*, a town of India.

The Emir Cheik Nouruddin had orders to pursue him along the banks of the river: he slew a great number of these Indians with arrows. When he return'd, the emperor rewarded those who had lihar'd themselves gallantly on this occasion, and were wounded, giving 'em vests, and other things. Chehabeddin's boats arriving near the frontiers of Moulain, the troops of Mirza Fir Mohehed and Mirza Charoc, commanded by Solyman Chah, who had been sent out as scouts, hinder'd their passage, and seizing the boats on the river, cut 'em to pieces. Chehabeddin cast his wife and children into the river, and half-dead gain'd the bank. As many of this prince's subjects were retir'd into the woods, Timur order'd Chamelik to enter 'em, and if posible to exterminate all who were fled there for refuge. Chamelik accordingly enter'd the forests and bogs, and having slain a great number of these miserable people, and pillag'd their effects, return'd to the camp, laden with booty, and a great number of captives.

After the success against Chehabeddin, the army march'd five or six days on the banks of the Jamad, and on the twenty-fourth of Muharrum it encamp'd on the borders of the Genave\*, at a fortress over-against which the Jamad and the Genave join in one stream, where

\* On the Jamad above Moulain, long. 177. lat. 30.

\* It falls into the Rour above Moulain.

Book IV. the waves dashing against one another, make it appear like the troubled ocean. Timur order'd a bridge to be built over it, which was finish'd on the twenty-seventh of Muharrem, all the troops having been employ'd in it. We don't find in history that ever any one built a bridge over it before: and even Turmechirin Can\*, who formerly cross'd it, was oblig'd to swim over.

## C H A P. XI.

*Timur's arrival at Toulonba.*

**T**IMUR pass'd this great river\* with all his army, and encamp'd on the other side: the next day having entirely left the bridge to give free passage to the baggage and the rest of the army, he went to encamp over-against the town of Toulonba, on the bank of the river, thirty-five miles\* from Moultan. The princes and Rayas, accompany'd by the Clergys and doctors, immediately came out of the place to call themselves at Timur's feet: they kiss'd the ground on which he stood, and were handsomely treated by him.

Octob. 18. The same day Timur pass'd the river of Toulonba, and the twenty-ninth of Muharrem staid on the other bank, till all the army was cross'd over. The first of Sefer he encamp'd in the neighboring plains of Toulonba.

\* Defended from Genghis Can: he conquer'd India, Anno Dom. 1210.

\* Jaund and Geneva join'd.



The ministers tax'd this town at two millions of crowns for the safety of their effects and lives. The Chériffs, because of the nobleness of their race, and the doctors for their learning and virtue, were exempted from this tax. They had even presents made 'em of vests and other things, because Timur was naturally respectful to men of their character.

Some part of this tax was soon paid; but the inhabitants making a difficulty at paying the rest, the troops, who were in great want of provisions, had orders to carry away all the grain they cou'd find: During the night the soldiers, under pretence of making a search, march'd towards the town, which they sack'd and pillag'd, burning all the houses, and even making the inhabitants slaves; the Chériffs and doctors being the only persons exempt from this misfortune.

Timur had advice that a number of Rayas and little princes in the neighbourhood of Toulonba, who had before submitted to the Mirza Pir Mehomed, had now revolted; whereupon he sent the Emir Chamelik, and the Cheik Mehemed Aieoutmur, with their regiments, to ravage the country of these Rayas, with orders to punish 'em severely, for an example to others. The Emirs immediately departed, and enter'd the forests whither the enemy was retir'd. They kill'd two thousand Indians, who became a prey to the wild beasts and birds; and carrying away their children prisoners, they return'd to the court, laden with the spoils of the rebels.

The eighth of Sefer, Timur departed from Toulonba, and next day encamp'd on the borders of a deep lake, situate on the bank of the Biah\*, within sight of the town of Chanavaz.

\* A river near Labor, which falls into the Rave.



## C H A P. XII.

*Timur marches in search of Nusrat Coukeri.*

**T**IMUR, having advice that Nusrat, brother of the Cheik Coukeri, had surrounded this deep and large lake with a wall, behind which he had retir'd with two thousand men, immediately took horse, and leaving the baggage, went to encamp with his army on the borders of this lake. He rang'd his soldiers in order of battle, and gave the command of the right wing to the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Allahdad, the two greatest men of their time. The left wing was given to the Emirs Chamelik and Cheik Melchmed Aidoutmur. The main body was commanded by Ali Sultan Trachi, with the infantry of Corassane. And being all in order, they prepar'd to give a vigorous assault. Nusrat at the head of a thousand Indians posted himself on the borders of the lake in view of our men. Ali Sultan immediately attack'd him with his infantry; and tho the marshes and sloughs were very disadvantageous to our men, yet they gave marks of their invincible courage. Ali Sultan was wounded in the fight, as well as several others of our captains; but the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Allahdad, entering into the bogs, cut all the enemy to pieces, and fixing their heads on their lances, laid 'em at Timur's feet. It's uncertain, what became of Nusrat, whether he fled into the desert, or was slain. The soldiers set fire to the houses of these rebels, pillag'd their goods, and brought away a great number of cattle.

The

The tenth of Sefer the army pass'd this great lake, and the low-lands, which were full of  
hogs and marshes, notwithstanding the extreme  
difficulty of the ways; and went to encamp at  
Chamavaz, a great and populous town. Here  
they found several granarys full of corn, of  
which the soldiers took as much as they had  
occasion for.

Shortly after the Emirs had orders to depart.  
They cross'd the river of Biah, in pursuit of  
some soldiers of Nusret who had fled. They  
overtok 'em, and having cut 'em in pieces,  
brought away a great booty. Timur staid two  
days at Chamavaz, and set fire to the granarys  
which were left, in order to reduce the infidels  
to extremity; and on the 13th of Sefer he de-  
camp'd, and went down to the banks of the  
river Biah over against the town of Dgendgian,  
to which place the baggage and main body of  
the army was come. Here he made all his troops  
pass the river. The same day Herimulk, a  
faithful domestick of prince Charoc, came from  
Hera: he acquainted the emperor with this  
prince's good state of health, which very much  
pleas'd him, and excited him to read the Al-  
coran, and distribute alms in token of joy.

## C H A P. XIII.

*Arrival of prince Pir Mehemed Gebanghir  
from Moultan.*

WE said in the chapter \* which gives the  
reason of Timur's march into India,  
that the Mirza Pir Mehemed besieg'd the town  
of Moultan, where, after a siege of six months,  
the

\* Chap. 12

siege of  
Moultan.

Book IV. the inhabitants were in such great want of  
 ~~~~~ victuals, that they were constrain'd to eat un-  
 cleanly things, and even dead bodys: and Sa-  
 real the governor being at length oblig'd to  
 fly, the town was taken by our prince, who  
 immediately sent advice of it to the emperor.  
 In the mean while there happen'd an \* inunda-  
 tion, which caus'd a mortality among our horses,  
 and oblig'd us to carry the sick horses into the  
 town, and there shut 'em up.

Upon this accident the Rayas of these coun-  
 trys revolted, tho' they had before submitted.  
 They declar'd war against us by acts of hos-  
 tility, massacring the governors who had been  
 set over 'em. And as our men had no horses,  
 these insolent people advanc'd during night to  
 the gates of the town, which extremely disturb'd  
 our Mirza: but at length the enemy, on ad-  
 vance of Timur's approach, flung away their  
 weapons, and fled.

Nov. 11. The Mirza being deliver'd from this trou-  
 ble, came out of Moultan the fourteenth of  
 Sefer, and march'd to the imperial camp, on  
 the banks of the Biah; where he had the honor  
 to kiss the emperor's feet, who tenderly em-  
 brace'd him, and gave him a handsom reception.

Juncid Bourouldai, his brother Bayazid, and  
 Mehemed Dervich Taicani, who in the war  
 of Carezem had fled from the Emir Gehancha,  
 and with great difficulty were got into India,

---

\* Pechelal is the name the Indians give to the great  
 rains and inundations which happen in India at a certain time  
 of the year; for then they say to travellers, Don't go now, it  
 is the season of Pechelal. This inundation is caus'd by the  
 great rains and snows, which falling off the mountains, cover  
 the flat countrys, fill the rivers, and overflow like the Nile in  
 Egypt; and this constantly happens in the months of July,  
 August, September and October.



having heard that the Mirza Pir Mehemed had Chap. 11.  
made himself master of Moultan, came from the very furthest parts of India to implore his protection. The Mirza carry'd 'em to the emperor, and procur'd 'em the honor to salute him, begging pardon for 'em. Timur granted their lives, but not their libertys, before they had been bastinado'd according to the laws of Genghiz Can. The fifteenth of Sefer, Timur cross'd Nov. 11.  
the Biah, and went to encamp at Dgendgian, forty miles distant from Moultan. In three days the soldiers pass'd this river, some in barks, and others by swimming, notwithstanding its rapidity, without any damage.

Timur staid four days at Dgendgian; and the eighteenth of Sefer, the prince Pir Mehe- Nov. 13.  
med made a sumptuous banquet, and offer'd his rich presents, which consisted of crowns of gold, belts of gold, Arabian horses with gold saddles, jewels of great price, stuffs, curious vessels, basons and pots of gold and silver; of which there was so great a number, that the secretaries and comptrollers of the Divan employ'd two days in registering 'em. Timur distributed these presents among the Emirs, Viscers and officers of his court, according to their deserts: and as the Mirza's soldiers had lost their horses in this campaign, and some were oblig'd to ride on oxen, and others to go on foot, he gave thirty thousand horses among 'em. Then Timur departed for Schoual: on the twenty first Nov. 14.  
of Sefer he encamp'd at Afouan\*, where he staid one day, and at length went to Gehaoul\*.

\* Town S. of the river Biah.

\* A town between Lahore and Dipalpour, S. of the Biah.



Book IV. The inhabitants of Dipalpour<sup>\*</sup> had formerly submitted to the Mirza Pir Mehemed, who plac'd over 'em a governor nam'd Meisier Cabbul, with a thousand men: but there being a mortality among the horses of the Mirza, which consequently diminish'd his troops, these men join'd with the Goulam<sup>†</sup> guards of Sultan Firouz Shah, and slew Meisier with the thousand men he commanded. On the report of Timur's approach, these rebels, thinking to escape the emperor's fury, retir'd with their effects into the fortress of Batur. Timur, at his arrival at Ghehnaul, left the Emir Chahuncik and Dolet Timur Tavachi, with the baggage and main-body of the army, which he order'd 'em to conduct by the way of Dipalpour, and to join him at Saman, a town near Deli. Then he departed with ten thousand horse, and got to Adjondan May. 21. on the twenty fourth of Sefer: the inhabitants of which town having been drawn from their obedience to the nephew of the Cheik Noured-din, by the Cheik Minaver and Sad, had graciously abandon'd their country: for these Cheikhs after having seduc'd 'em, took 'em into their pay, and carry'd 'em to a town call'd Batur, except some few who fled to Deli with the Cheik Minaver.

The Cheriks and doctors, being inform'd of the respect Timur always shew'd to men of their character, were so far from being disturb'd at

<sup>\*</sup> A town between Lahore and Deli.

<sup>†</sup> Goulams are the corps-de-garde of the Indian kings, who of ancient times were pure Mahomedans. They are educated by the king's order in the noble exercises of arms and sciences. There are also such in Persia, who in their youth are call'd Goulams, and when grown up and incorporated among the guards, Caskaks.

these actions, that as soon as they had advice Chap. 14. of his arrival in their quarters, they came immediately to the foot of the throne, and met with a kind reception there. Timur gave the government of their town to Moulana Nasreddin Amor, and to Chahab Mehemied son of Coja Mahmond, with orders to hinder the troops in their passage from molesting the inhabitants of that place. Thus Timur treated those civilly who rely'd on his protection, and extirpated those who refus'd to submit, pillaging their goods, and carrying away prisoners their women and children.

---

#### C H A P. XIV.

*The taking the town of Bend, and the fortress of Barnir; the inhabitants of which places are put to the sword.*

THE citadel of Barnir was the strongest and most noted place in India; situate in a desert, and out of the common road. The inhabitants have no water, except from a great lake near the gate of the town, which is never fill'd but in inundations: and as no foreign army ever came into these parts before, the inhabitants of Dipalpour, Adjoudan and other towns, fled for refuge into Barnir, to escape the fury of our soldiers. So many had retir'd thither, that the place not being large enough to contain all their cattle and effects, they had left without a great number of cattle, and several chariots fill'd with moveable goods.

Book IV.

Nov. 22.

The twenty fifth of Sefer, in the morning, Timur enter'd Adjoudan; he visited the sepulchre of the Cheik Ferid Cheker Condge, whose protection he implor'd near God's throne. Then he departed for the conquest of Batnir, cross'd the river Dena, and encamp'd on the hill of Caleseuteli, ten miles distant from Adjoudan, and fifty from Batnir; three miles, which they call Gouronh, making one Farsanga, or a Persian league. Timur read the noon-prayers at Caleseuteli; and then he march'd all night by moonlight, and cross'd the great desert in one day.

Nov. 23.

The twenty sixth of Sefer, at ten in the morning, he came before Batnir, and immediately caus'd the drums to be beat, and the great cry Souroun to be made: and the soldiers pillag'd whatever they cou'd find without the place. Raoudoulégin the governor prepar'd to make resistance. He had a great many soldiers and domestics, and reign'd as a sovereign in that country. He forc'd the merchants and caravans to pay custom to him, no one being safe from his insults. The strength of the place, the many officers, and the abundance of effects he had, made him so insolent and proud, that he refus'd to obey Timur; for which reason the army march'd directly against the place. The right wing was commanded by the Emir Solyman Chah, the Cheik Nonreddin, and Al-lahad; and the left had for its leaders, the Mirza Calli Sultan, and the Cheik Mehemmed Aicourmur.

At the first attack our generals made themselves masters of the out-parts and suburbs, where they slew a great number of Indians, and got a vast quantity of booty; they also took the counterescarp: and at the same time the Emirs, colonels and captains invested the town;

and



and arming themselves with their bucklers, Chap. 12  
gave a second assault. Raoudouldgin posted himself at the gate of the town with the bravest of his Indians; but the Emirs Solyman Chah, Seid Coja and Gehan Mule, who belong'd to prince Charoc's court, march'd to attack that gate. Seid Coja and Gehan Mule fell briskly upon the enemy near the person of the Indian prince, and perform'd several heroic actions. Then all the soldiers began to advance at the sound of kettledrums, drums and trumpets, and the terrible Kerrenai. They gave many assaults; and as they were on the point of gaining the place, Raoudouldgin, despairing of being able to make any longer resistance, demanded quarter, and had recourse to the emperor's clemency. He sent a Cheriff to Timur, to desire a suspension of arms for one day, on condition that he came the next to call himself at his feet. Timur granted his petition for the messenger's sake, who was of the race of Mahomet; he order'd his soldiers to retire from the gate of the town, and even from the suburbs, and to incamp in the open plain. Next day Raoudouldgin not keeping his word, orders were given that every Emir shou'd sap that part of the walls which was over-against his respective post, that they might the more easily take the town by assault. Every one obey'd, and all the fire, stones and arrows the besieg'd cast upon our men, cou'd not divert 'em. Raoudouldgin and all his court being astonish'd at their intrepidity, got upon the tops of their towers, and made signals that they implor'd the conqueror's clemency, acknowledg'd their fault, and wou'd for the future obey the emperor, only begging he wou'd save their lives. Timur, following the precepts of the Alcoran,  
which



Book IV. which tells us that pardon is the title of victory,  
 hearken'd to their prayer: whereupon in the evening Raoudoudgin sent his son Naib, with presents of animals and arabian horses, to the foot of the throne. Timur, after a handsom reception, gave him a veil of gold-brocade, a belt and sword; and then sent him back to his father. This prince took courage, and mov'd at Timur's civilitys, came out of the place the twenty-eighth of Sefer at nine in the morning, accompany'd by the Cheik Sadeuddin Adjoudani: he kiss'd the threshold of the door, and at length approach'd the imperial carpet; he made several presents of animals and three sets of arabian horses, nine in a set, with saddles of gold to each. Timur recompens'd him with vests of gold, belts of gold, and a crown. And because the people who were in this place, were very numerous, especially those of Dipalpour and Adjoudan; the Emirs Solyman Ciah and Allahdad had orders to guard the gate of the fortress. And on the twenty-ninth of Sefer, Timur order'd the people assembled there to come before him. They were put into the custody of some faithful persons; and near three hundred Arabian horses were taken from 'em, which Timur gave to the Emirs and bravest warriors of the army. Five hundred of the inhabitants of Dipalpour were put to the sword, and their wives and children made slaves, for having treacherously slain Meisafar Cabuli, and a thousand horsemen belonging to the Mirza Pir Mehemed. And as for the people of Adjoudan, who had abandon'd Timur, part of 'em were slain, and the rest made prisoners, after having their effects pillag'd.

Kamaleddin, brother of Raoudoudgin, having seen the punishment of those who had deferted it, was seiz'd with a panic fear: and next day, the Raoudoudgin was in the imperial camp, he caus'd the gate of the town to be shut. This so irritated Timur, that he caus'd Raoudoudgin to be put in chains, and order'd the siege to begin again, and the place to be fill'd with the blood of the inhabitants. The soldiers having set themselves to sap the walls, the besieg'd soon found they shou'd not be able to defend themselves against so warlike a people, and an ever-victorious prince: they were persuaded that if the place shou'd be taken by assault, they must not expect their lives, for repentance wou'd then signify nothing: whereupon they resolv'd to beg pardon of the emperor. Accordingly Raoudoudgin's brother and son went out, to beseech Timur to grant a general pardon, and deliver'd the keys of the town and castle into the hands of our officers.

The first of Rabinlevel, the Emirs Cherk Nov. 12  
 Noureddin and Allahdad enter'd the place to receive the tribute for saving the people's lives; but the Rayas and other chiefs wou'd not accept the tax: and as there were among the rest Guebres and idolaters, disputes arose, which cou'd not be terminated without commotions and broils. Timur was incens'd at this proceeding: and order'd that this rabble shou'd be put to the sword, and the houses of the infidels raz'd to the ground. The soldiers scal'd the walls, and enter'd the place sword in hand. The Guebres set fire to their own houses, casting their wives, children and goods into the fires; and those who call'd themselves Mussulmans cut their wives and childrens throats. And thus the men of these two sorts uniting together,  
 put

*Book IV* put themselves in a posture of defence, being resolv'd to die sword in hand. They fought in a cruel obstinate manner: and as these men were exceeding strong and courageous, tho ignorant, they may be compar'd to an army of satyrs, who fight only in despair.

Our men having enter'd the place, and cry'd out Allahou Echer', fell upon these enrag'd people, who slew several Mussulmans, and wounded others. The Emir Cheik Noureddin, who to partake of the honor of this expedition, had resolv'd to dare the greatest dangers, advanc'd into the midst of the enemy, and struck with his sword one of the bravest of 'em, whom he disabled from fighting. But the Emir was immediately surrounded by a troop of Guebres, and was near being seiz'd by 'em, had not Ouzoun Meziid of Bagdad, and Firouz of Sistan made their way thro these infidels, and deliver'd him from danger. Victory at length declaring for our men, they slew ten thousand Indians, set fire to the houses which remain'd, and even ruin'd the walls of the town, so that it look'd like an uninhabitable place. The emperor distributed among the soldiers all the gold, silver, horses and habits that were in the place. He rewarded the wounded; and gave great gifts to Ouzoun Meziid and Firouz, who had acted with so much resolution in delivering the Emir Cheik Noureddin, and rais'd 'em to dignities according to their merit.

---

\* God is great. The Mahometans begin all their prayers with these words, which they often repeat, with their face towards the ground.





## CHAP. XV.

*Timur departs from Batnir, for Seresti, Fatabad and Ahrooni.*

AFTER the ruin of Batnir, the multitude of dead carcases which infected the air, oblig'd Timur to depart thence the third of Rabiulevel. When he had march'd about fourteen or fifteen miles, he came to Kenarei Haour\*, where he encamp'd. Next day he went to the castle of Firouze; and march'd as far as the town of Seresti, the inhabitants of which being infidels, eat swines-flesh. They fled on advice of Timur's arrival, who sent out a detachment of horse in pursuit of 'em. These cavalry overtook a great number, whom they put to the sword, and brought their horses and goods back to the camp; Adel Ferach being the only person on our side who was slain. Timur staid one day at Seresti, and the next march'd eighteen miles, as far as Fatabad, where he encamp'd. The inhabitants of this town were also fled. Some of our men pursu'd 'em, destroy'd several, and return'd laden with booty, as silver, furniture and cattle.

The seventh of Rabiulevel, Timur pass'd by Dec. 4. the town of Radgebuour, and went to encamp near that of Ahrooni, which was inhabited by a brutish people, unfit for making compliments to the emperor, or demanding his protection: wherefore part of 'em were destroy'd like beasts, and the rest made slaves by the soldiers, who carry'd away their corn, and set fire to their houses.

The



Book IV.

Dec. 5.

The eighth of Rabiulevel, the army departed from Ahrouni, to encamp in the plains of the village of Touhene, a country inhabited by Getes, who had by force of arms made themselves masters of it a long time, and committed disorders there. They rob'd on the high-ways, insulted and pillag'd the caravans, and not leaving the least marks of religion, murder'd all who oppos'd their violence. On the report of the arrival of our troops, these wretches hid themselves in the midst of a wood, where almost all the trees were full of prickles.

The emperor sent against 'em a regiment commanded by Toulai Hindoui Carcara, and Moulana Nasereddin Amor. These two lords made so strict a search after these robbers, that they put to the sword near two thousand, render'd themselves masters of their cattle, and return'd to the imperial camp, dragging after 'em several of these wretches loaded with chains.

## C H A P. XVI.

*Timur marches against a nation of rebellious Getes.*

Dec. 6.

**T**IMUR's intention in these wars being chiefly to exterminate robbers, tyrants and infidels, to put a stop to their disorders, and give peace and tranquillity to the people; he departed from Touhene the ninth of Rabiulevel; and having sent the baggage under the conduct of Solyman Chah towards Samarc, he march'd beyond the castle of Mounec, where he encamp'd. Then he enter'd the deserts and woods, whither the Getes were retir'd; he

he exterminated two thousand of 'em, making their wives and children slaves, and pillaging their goods and cattel. Thus he delivered the country from the fear of their insults. Chap. 16.

Several Cheriffs, who made their ordinary residence in a town in these quarters, came to cast themselves at Timur's feet, and kiss'd his hands. Timur receiv'd 'em with demonstrations of esteem and affection, gave 'em vests and considerable presents; and fix'd a governor over 'em, to defend 'em from the insults of our soldiers.

The tenth of Rabiulevel, the Emir Solymán Dec 7. Chah departed with all the train of artillery which was before Mounee; and march'd towards the town of Samah, where he staid one night. The eleventh of Rabiulevel he arriv'd Dec 8. at the river of Kehler, at which place Timur join'd him, after he had been against the Geres. Here he staid four days, to wait the remainder of the baggage. He departed hence the fif- Dec. 12. teenth of Rabiulevel, and went to encamp near the bridge of Fouleouble, where he was join'd by the Emirs and soldiers of the left wing, commanded by the Sultan Mahmoud Can, and several others, whom Timur had sent from the meadow of Cabul by a particular road into India, where they had taken towns, ravag'd the country, and brought into subjection several people.

The sixteenth of Rabiulevel, the emperor, at Dec 13. the head of his army, cross'd the bridge of Fouleouble, and encamp'd on the other side. The baggage and remainder of the army from Dipsalpour, under the conduct of the great general Chamelik, also arriv'd the same day at the imperial camp.

Book IV.

Dec. 17.

The twentieth of Rabiulevel, the army departed from Foulcouble. They went but five miles that day, and encamp'd near the bridge Foulbeiran. The twenty first they arriv'd at the town of Kuteil, seventeen miles from Samane.

## CHAP. XVII.

*A review of the whole army marching in order of battel.*

WHEN the several bodys of the army, which had taken different roads, had join'd the imperial camp, orders were given that every Emir shou'd repair to his respective post. The right wing was commanded by the Mirzas Pir Mehemed and Roullem; the left by the great Sultan Mahoud, Can of Zagatal, with the princes of the blood, and several Emirs: and the main body was compos'd of divers Tomenans and regiments, which march'd six leagues and two miles by the road of Dell.


Dec. 19.

The twenty-second of Rabiulevel, they arriv'd at the town of Assendi, seventeen miles from Kuteil. The inhabitants of Samane, Kuteil, and Assendi, who were mostly idolaters, burnt their own houses, and fled to Deli; so that our men cou'd meet with no one in their country.

Dec. 20.

The twenty-third, after a march of six miles, they encamp'd at Toglocpout, the inhabitants of which town were of a particular religion. They believ'd that the whole universe was govern'd by two beings, the first of which they call Yerulan, that is, God; and the other Arimen, that is, the devil. The former they explain




explain by light, and the other by darkness: Chap. 12.  
pretending that all good proceeds from God,   
and all evil from the devil.

These idolaters, call'd Souloun, having all  
fled, our soldiers set fire to the town. The  
twenty-fourth of Rabiulevel the army arriv'd at Dic. 20.  
Panipat, a town twelve miles from Toploosour.  
All the inhabitants had fled like the rest. There  
was found in this place a granary of wheat, in  
which were more than ten thousand *Mans* \* of  
full weight, worth about a hundred and sixty  
thousand *Mans* of common weight, which was  
distributed among the soldiers. The twenty- Dic. 21.  
fifth they march'd about six miles, and en-  
camp'd on the bank of the river of Panipat.  
The twenty-sixth all the Emirs girded on their Dic. 22.  
cuirasses, that they might be ready upon occa-  
sion, and then continu'd their march.

The twenty-seventh of Rabiulevel, the Emirs Dic. 23.  
of the right wing had orders to march as far as  
Gehannomai, a palace built by the Sultan Firouz  
Chah on the top of a mountain, two leagues  
from Delhi: at the foot of which runs the great  
river Jaoum. According to this order, they  
march'd from Caughlataun as far as Gehannomai,  
putting to the sword all the officers they  
met, and making slaves of the inhabitants of  
that country, whom they pillag'd. On mon-  
day the twenty-ninth, Timur departed from the Dic. 24.  
town of Pelle, cross'd the Jaoum, and march'd  
to the right of the town of Louni, where was  
abundance of pasture: here he encamp'd the  
same day. This place is situate between the  
two rivers of Jaoum and Hissen. The latter is  
a great branch which the Sultan Firouz Chah

\* A *Mas* is a pound, or thereabouts.



Book IV.  had cut off from the river of Calimi, which joins the Jaxoun near the town of Firouzabad. The Emirs Gehan Chah, Chamelik, and Allahdad, were already come to the foot of this castle, the governors of which, nam'd Maimoun and Maichoum, far from coming to meet 'em with submission, resolv'd to defend themselves. At Timur's arrival there, an experienc'd old man came out to call himself with respect at the emperor's feet, and demand his protection: but the inhabitants, who were Guebres and the servants of Mellon, persisted in their rash resolution of resistance.

Then Timur order'd his men to besiege the town, and sap the walls. Accordingly they began to do it at noon, and by evening made themselves masters of the place, where the Guebres had burnt their houses, with their women and children. Timur repos'd himself this night without the place, and the thirtieth of Rabiulvel order'd that the inhabitants who were Mahometans, shou'd be separated from the Guebres and servants of Mellon Can; which being done, the latter were put to the sword. All the houses were pillag'd excepting those of the Cheriffs, for whom Timur always preserv'd a filial affection, because of their extraction: and then the rest of the town was set on fire.

Dec. 27.  
Dec. 28.  
The first of Rabiulakher, Timur departed from the town of Louni, and went to the bank of the Raxoun, before the palace of Gehanumai: so that observing himself the passages in these places, he might the better know how to give out his orders. He return'd to the camp in the evening, and assembled his imperial council, consisting of the princes his children, the great Emirs, and generals of his army. He propos'd to 'em the method of forming the siege of Delhi, capital

capital of India, which was not far off: and *Chapter.*  
it was resolv'd, that a great quantity of corn  
and ammunition shou'd be got together forth-  
with, and kept in Gehanumai; and that this  
great city shou'd be block'd up.

Accordingly the Emirs Solyman Chah, Ge-  
han Chah, and others, were order'd to pillage  
the granaries in the neighbourhood of Delhi:  
whereupon they set out in the beginning of the  
month of Rabiulakhir. Next day Timur was  
for taking the diversion of walking in the pa-  
lace of Gehanumai: he took horse with seven  
hundred cavaliers with their cuirasses on, pass'd  
the river Jaoun, and enter'd into this magnifi-  
cent palace, to which the Sultan Firouz Chah  
had given the name of Gehanumai, that is,  
the mirror of the universe, because of its fine  
prospect; tho one wou'd think this name was  
rather given it, to prognosticate that it shou'd  
fall into the hands of the monarch of the uni-  
verse.

After Timur had consider'd the beautys of  
this place, he took care to observe from this  
rising-ground the properest place for the field of  
battel, that he might draw the enemys thither  
in case they appear'd. In the mean time Ali  
Sultan Tavachi and Juncid Bourouldai, who  
had been sent out as scouts, return'd; Ali Sul-  
tan bringing with him Mehemed Selef whom  
he had seiz'd, and Juncid bringing another.  
Mehemed Selef was question'd concerning what  
had been transacted in the city, and then put  
to death. When Timur had pass'd the river,  
to observe the field of battel, four thousand  
horse, five thousand foot, and twenty-seven  
elephants, belonging to Meliss Can, were  
seen near Gehanumai. Our scouts, command-  
ed by Seid Coja and Mobacher, to the number

Book IV. of three hundred, attack'd their vanguard, and  
 pretending to fly, led 'em as far as the bank of  
 the river, where a furious battle ensu'd.

On advice of this, Timur sent Sevidgie Be-  
 hader and Allahdad to succour Seid Coja: they  
 cross'd the river with their regiments, and  
 having join'd him, let fly a shower of arrows on  
 the enemy; but as they were about to fall on  
 'em with their drawn swords, the Indians, un-  
 accusom'd to such brave actions, gave ground  
 at the first onset, and fled towards the city,  
 which with difficulty they enter'd. Seid Coja  
 pursu'd 'em, and slew a great number. In this  
 flight an elephant fell and was wounded; which  
 was a prognostic of our further victory.

## CHAP. XVIII.

*Timur marches to the east side of the town  
 of Louni. Massacre of a hundred thou-  
 sand Indian slaves who were in his camp.*

Dec. 70

\* Chah  
 Zader,

THE third of Rabiulakhir, Timur de-  
 parted from Gehannumai, and went to  
 encamp on the east side of Louni, where the  
 emperor's sons \*, the great Emirs, the colonels  
 of the regiments, who were gone out to make  
 incursions, came to the imperial camp. Being all  
 assembled, Timur, who would not give place  
 to the greatest generals of the army, nor the  
 most undaunted warriors, as well in policy and  
 wisdom of government, as in war, believ'd it  
 not improper to harangue the leaders, imitating  
 in that the example of the ancient emperors  
 and the most illustrious conquerors. This he  
 did

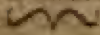


did with all the eloquence that cou'd be expected on the like occasion. He spoke to 'em of the manner of breaking thro' ranks, of overturning squadrons, and how they shou'd repulse the enemy: he instructed 'em how to make retreats when overpower'd, and how rally the soldiers and return to the attack; how to sustain an obstinate fight, and how to free one's self from any eminent danger. In short, he explain'd to 'em, with so much energy and perspicuity, all the maxims of war, that his captains admir'd the extraordinary wisdom and experience which appear'd in his speech, saying that the discourses of great princes are the most beautiful; insomuch that being excited by the lively reasons and learned maxims which he had inculcated, they were fill'd with zeal and ardor, and prepar'd to confront the greatest dangers in his service. They answer'd every thing he propos'd by generous vows for his prosperity, and the conclusion of his victories; they kiss'd the ground on which he stood, to testify their respect and joy at being the officers of so great a conqueror.

The same day the Emir Gehan Chah and the other generals remonstrated to Timur, that since his crossing the Indus, they had made above a hundred thousand Indian slaves, who were mostly Guebres and idolaters; that they were now in the camp, and wou'd probably in any obstinate battle, take part with the men of Deli, and falling upon our soldiers, make us lose the battle. This remonstrance was back'd by those who had observ'd, that when the officers of Mellou Can came out of Deli with their elephants to attack us, the slaves seem'd highly pleas'd. Timur having made a serious reflection on all the circumstances of this affair,

Chip. 18.  
Timur  
harangues  
the army.



Book IV.  pass'd an order, that those who had any Indian slaves shou'd put 'em to death; and he who deser'd or refus'd doing so, shou'd be put to death himself, and his wives, children and effects be given to him who shou'd inform against him.

As soon as this order was made publick, they began to put it in execution, and in less than an hour were put to death a hundred thousand Indians, according to the smallest computation. Among others, Miriana Nasereddin Amor, one of the most venerable doctors of the court, who cou'd never consent so much as to kill a single sheep, was constrain'd to order fifteen slaves whom he had in his house to be slain. Timur afterwards order'd that one soldier out of every ten, shou'd keep watch over the Indian women and children, as also over the camels they had taken in the pillage.

After these precautions, Timur resolv'd to march to the siege of Delhi: he set out on the third of Rabiulakhir at noon, to encamp on the bank of the Jaoum. The astrologers and soothsayers secretly disputed concerning the disposition of the heavens, and of the fortunate or unfortunate aspects of the planets at his departure: but Timur told 'em that neither joy nor affliction, adversity nor prosperity, depended on the stars, but on the will of the Creator of them, of men, and of the universe. "I confide," says the emperor, in the assistance of the Almighty, who has never abandon'd me. "What avail the triplicity or conjunctions of the planets? I'll never delay one moment the execution of my projects, when I have taken sufficient measures and precautions to bring 'em to perfection." Next morning our hero made the public prayer, and order'd an Alcoran

coran to be brought him, from whence he might Chap. 19.  
 judg of the event of his expedition. Here  
 he found a very favorable answer, which point-  
 ed out the destruction of a people by a wonder-  
 ful effect of the almighty providence. He ex-  
 plain'd the passage in his own favor, and having  
 shewn it to all the army, became assur'd of the  
 victory. Our warriors being thus animated by  
 the Aleoran, which promis'd 'em the divine  
 protection, Timur despis'd the stars; and on  
 the fifth of Rabiulakher 801, cross'd the river Jan. 1.  
 of Jaoun, and encamp'd on its banks on the  
 other side. The soldiers thro' precaution made  
 a ditch to surround 'em, near a hill nam'd Ponch-  
 rei Behali; here they fix'd palisados of branches  
 of trees; and for a rampart bound several great  
 buffalos neck and heels, behind which they  
 prepar'd their bucklers and ensignes.

## C H A P. XIX.

*Timur gives battel to Sultan Makrand, em-  
 peror of India.*

**T**UESDAY-morning the seventh of Ra- Jan. 1.  
 biulakher, Timur drew up his army in  
 order of battel. He gave the command of the  
 right wing to prince Pir Mehemed Gehanghir,  
 accompany'd by several Emirs. The left wing  
 was led by the Mirzas, Sultan Hussein, and Ce-  
 lil Sultan, also assisted by many great generals.  
 The rear was given to the Mirza Roustem,  
 in conjunction with several illustrious Emirs;  
 and the main body was commanded by Timur  
 himself; it being fit that this prince, who was

Book IV. the very life of the soldiers, should be fix'd in the heart of the army. Every thing being thus settled, they march'd in good order.

The enemy also advanc'd in order of battel. Their right wing was brought up by Tegi Can, Mir All Coia, and other Indian princes. The left had for its leaders Maleh Moineddin, and others: and the main body was command'd by the Sultan Mahmud Can, grandson of Timur Chah, emperor of India, he having for his lieutenant-general Mellen Can. This army consisted of ten thousand horse well equip'd, and forty thousand foot arm'd to advantage: besides several elephants of war, arm'd with cuirasses, having between their long teeth great poison'd daggers, and on their backs wooden towers in form of battions, on which were mounted a great many cross-bow-men and archers, who cou'd fight under cover as in fortresses: and on the side of the elephants march'd the singers of fire and melted pitch, as also rockets arm'd at the ends with iron, which give several blows one after another wherever they fall.

Our soldiers were not much disturb'd about this Indian army: but as they had never seen any elephants before, they ignorantly imagin'd that the arrow and sabre had no effect on the bodies of these animals: that they were so very strong, that they overthrow trees only by shaking the earth as they pass'd along; that they cou'd move down the strongest buildings; and that in battel they wou'd toss both horse and horse-man to a vast height in the air. This despir'd several of our side: so that when the polls were fix'd for the officers and lords of the court, Timur, who always shew'd respect to men of learning, chusly demand'd of 'em what possi-  
they



they wou'd chuse. Several of these doctors, Chap. 12.  
 who were always near Timur's person, being  
 frighten'd at what they had read and heard of  
 the elephants, answer'd immediately, " If it  
 please your majesty, we chuse to be near the  
 ladies."

Timur being sensible of his soldiers fear, took  
 all necessary precautions to arm 'em with cou-  
 rage. He order'd that a rampart of bucklers  
 shou'd be made before the ranks, and a ditch  
 dug before the rampart: then he caus'd buffalos  
 to be tied by the neck and feet with long pieces  
 of leather, close to each other; after which on  
 each side of 'em and on their heads were fix'd  
 brambles. Besides this were made iron-hooks,  
 three-fork'd, and fix'd to stakes; so that when  
 the elephants shou'd come to the attack, these  
 hooks shou'd be plant'd in their way, and the  
 brambles on the buffalos set on fire to put the  
 elephants into disorder. But victory declar'd  
 for us before we had occasion to make use of  
 these machines.

As soon as the two armies were in view,  
 Timur got upon an eminence in the middle of  
 the field of battel, near the foot of the hill of  
 Pouchuri Behali, whence he observ'd the motion  
 of both armies. When they were on the point  
 of coming to blows, he fell on the earth, and  
 after several times bowing, besought God to  
 give him the victory, which he must expect  
 from the divine goodness, and not from his own  
 valor, and the number of his soldiers.

While Timur was at prayers, a strange acci-  
 dent happen'd, which was, that the Emirs of  
 the rear, Cheik Noureddin, Chamsik and Al-  
 lahidad, imagin'd that if the emperor shou'd send  
 recruits from the main body to the right wing,  
 and even to the rear, this wou'd be a certain  
 token

Timur's  
 artifice to  
 overcome  
 the Indian  
 elephants.

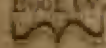


**Book IV.** token of victory. Accordingly after prayer Timur order'd Ali Sultan Tavachi, and Tagi Bouga, who commanded the regiment of Sanfir of the Toman of Roustem, which belong'd to the main-body; as also Alton Barchi Peferi, and Moulla Reemal, to go with their regiments to succour the right wing; and at the same time he sent another squadron of Emirs to reinforce the rear. This so excited the courage of our warriors, that they rush'd impetuously upon the enemy, whom they attack'd with so much vigor, that the Indians were constrain'd to give ground, and the great and strong elephants suffer'd themselves to be drove like oxen.

This advantage augmented the valor of the other battalions, who also fell upon the enemy, praising God. So hot a battle was ne'er seen before; the fury of soldiers was ne'er carry'd to so great excess; and so frightful a noise was never heard: for the cymbals, the common kettledrums, the drums and trumpets, with the great brass kettiedrums which were beat on the elephants backs, the bells which the Indians sounded, and the cries of the soldiers, were enough to make even the earth to shake; and there was not a man, how dauntless soever, who was not somewhat dismay'd at the beginning of the fight. But our vanguard, compos'd of the regiments of many illustrious Emirs, perceiving the enemy's vanguard advancing, retir'd behind the right wing to lie in ambuscade, till they had pass'd by 'em; then they came out of their ambuscade, and fell on the enemy sword in hand like roaring lions, and in a moment slew between five and six hundred men. The prince Pir Mehamed, who was at the head of the vanguard of the right wing, assisted by the Emir Solyman Chial, attack'd the left of the enemy, which

which consisted in the valor of Tagi Can: this Chap. 10.  
 he did with so much conduct, that he drove 'em  
 beyond the basin of Havizeah. Then Pic Me-  
 hemed fell upon the elephants; and these furious  
 animals, finding themselves closely press'd, en-  
 ter'd among the ranks of the enemy's left wing,  
 and caus'd a further disorder. Our left wing,  
 conducted by the Mirza Sultan Hussein, per-  
 form'd several great actions, thro' the valor of  
 that prince, of Gehan Chah Behader, Cayased-  
 din Tercan, and others: for they made the  
 enemy's right wing, commanded by Moined-  
 din and Malek Hani, give ground, and those  
 who escap'd the edge of the sword, were re-  
 puls'd as far as the gate of the city. While  
 the enemy's wings were thus gaul'd, their main  
 body, sustain'd by the elephants in good order,  
 came to the attack: they had a warm recep-  
 tion from the Mirza Roustem who commanded  
 the rear, and was pos'd over against 'em. A  
 bloody battel ensu'd, in which the Emir Cheik  
 Noureddin gave marks of extraordinary valor.  
 The Emir Chamelik also perform'd the most he-  
 roic actions, rushing furiously into the midst of  
 the elephants, with Doser Timur Tavachi, and  
 Mengheli Coja. With their lances they over-  
 threw those who were mounted on the ele-  
 phants, and with their sabres and arrows cut  
 off the trunks of these terrible animals, whom  
 they wounded in all parts of their bodies; so  
 that in a short time the field of battel was  
 cover'd with the elephants trunks, and the heads  
 and bodies of the slain.

The most valiant Indians always endeavor'd  
 to defend themselves; but this defence seem'd  
 rather like the struggling of those going to the  
 slaughter, than a vigorous resistance. Thus  
 these poor Indians were constrain'd to turn  
 their

Book IV.  their backs with their elephants: to which this passage of the Alcoran may be well apply'd:  
 "Do you not see how the Lord thy God has  
 "dealt with the men of the elephant?"

The Sultan Mahmound, and his head-general Mellon Can, fled into the city, the gate of which they shut.

The Mirza Calil Sultan, who commanded our left wing, brought to Timur one of the elephants bound with cords: after having very much maul'd it with the sword, he overthrew its guards, and made it walk before him, as the husbandman does the ox in the plow. Timur and all the court were surpris'd that a child, of but fifteen years old, shou'd dare to attack, and be able to conquer and bind a war-elephant, which had struck terror into the whole army.

When the sight of the enemy had assur'd us of victory, Timur spur'd his horse towards the gate of Deli, and carefully examin'd the walls and fortifications: and as it was the time of noon-prayer, he went down to the bank of the Havizeis, which is a round basin, above an arrow's shot in diameter, bank'd by the Sultan Firouz Chah; and as in any inundation it is fill'd with rain-water, it furnishes the inhabitants of Deli with water for an entire year. On its bank is the tomb of Sultan Firouz Chah.

Timur being encamp'd here, the princes and generals came before him to kiss the earth: they congratulated him on his victory, and gave applauses to the princes of the blood, the Emirs, and other brave men, who had signalis'd themselves in the battle.

---

\* The Arabians before the Hegira had an epocha call'd the Elephant.



Timur upon hearing these strange adventures, Chap. 10.  
 burst out into tears of joy: he blest'd God for  
 having given him such brave children, and such  
 faithful and valiant subjects. Was it not sur-  
 prising, that this great prince, who on some  
 occasions cou'd exercise extraordinary severitys,  
 had at this time so tender a heart, that he cou'd  
 not restrain his tears, while he return'd thanks  
 to God for his favors? Timur had in the per-  
 son of Cassil Sultan a son worthy of himself, who  
 in magnificence, valor and generosity, surpass'd  
 Menoutcher<sup>1</sup>, Feridon and Kei Cosru<sup>2</sup>; he \* Cf. 1000.  
 was as virtuous as Alexander, and as rich as  
 Darius. He was at first nam'd the friend of  
 God, Cassil Allah; and the glory he afterwards  
 acquir'd, was the reason of his being call'd  
 Sultan.

## C H A P. XX.

*Flight of Sultan Mahmound, and his general  
 Mellou Can, prince of Multan, - Reduc-  
 tion of Delhi capital of India.*

**T**HE Sultan Mahmound and Mellou Can,  
 being vanquish'd, re-enter'd the city, re-  
 penting they had ever undertaken to go out:  
 but repentance now being useless, they cou'd  
 have recourse only to flight. They departed  
 at midnight while it was very dark: the Sul-  
 tan went out by the gate of Haydoran, and  
 Mellou by that of Barake; both which are li-

<sup>1</sup> Son of Feridon, King of Persia.



Book IV. routed south of Gehampenah: and they retir'd  
 into the deserts.

Timur being inform'd of this flight, sent several Emirs in pursuit of 'em; they seiz'd on some of their officers who fled with 'em, and return'd with a great quantity of booty, taking prisoners the prince Seif Can, surnam'd Malek Cherefeddin, and the prince Cedadad, son of Mellou Can.

The same night the Emir Allahdad, and other colonels of our regiments, had orders to make themselves masters of the gates by which the princes went out; as also to guard the other gates of the city, that no one might escape.

Jan. 4.

The eighth of Rabinlakher, Timur erected his standard on the walls of Deli, and went in person to the gate of the capital, where he sat on the Aidgiah, or throne whereon the Indian emperors sit in their royal robes on the great feast-day. This gate is in the quarter of Gehampenah, over against the bason of Havizear. In this place a tent and tribunal were prepar'd for him, where he gave audience. Then the Cherifs, Cadis, and principal persons of the city of Deli, came to cast themselves at the foot of the throne, and had the honor to kiss the imperial carpet. Fadlallah Hacchi, lieutenant of Mellou Can, at the head of the whole Divan of Deli, was the first who came to make his submission; and the Cherifs, the men of learning, and the old men, address'd themselves to the princes the emperor's sons, and to the great Emirs, to obtain quarter: so the Mirza Pir Mehemed, and the Emirs Solyman Chah and Gehan Chah, at a proper time presented their petition.

According to custom they carry'd the horse's tail and kettledrums, which were fix'd upon the

the gate: and the concerts of music were per- Chap. 2.  
form'd on this occasion on the tune Rihari, us'd only on victories. And to preserve the memory of so considerable a conquest, an ingenious poet made these verses, the letters of which form the epocha of this memorable day <sup>1</sup>.

*On wednesday the eighth of the month of Rabiulak Jan. 2.  
ber, the ever-victorious emperor Timur made himself master of Delhi, the sun being in Capricorn.*

All the elephants and rhinoceros's were brought to Timur. These animals, being before instructed, fell down before the emperor in an humble posture, and at the same time made a great cry as if they demanded quarter. There were an hundred and twenty of these elephants of war, which at the return from India were sent to Samarcand, and to the provinces of the empire, where Timur's sons resided. Two were carry'd chain'd to Tauris, one to Chiraz, five to Herat, one to Chirvan to the Choik Ibrahim, and one to Arzendgian to the lord Taharten. The tenth of Rabiulak Jan. 5.  
her, the doctor Nasereddin Amor was order'd to enter the city, with the other lords and Cherihs of the court, to preach in the grand mosque, and make the public prayers and Cawbe in the august name and titles of the invincible emper-

<sup>1</sup> The Ottomans have an alphabet, the letters of which they make use of instead of cyphers, and by which they compose a vein in the praise of any one who has perform'd some remarkable action; and the letters of that verse us'd for cyphers denote the day, month, and year wherein this action was perform'd.

Book IV. for Timur, and not in the name of Firmuz Chali, as was done before.

The Debits, Menehis and other secretaries, sent a relation of this expedition, in their letters of conquest, into all the parts of the empire, and even to the princes in alliance with Timur, tho' it were a year's journey to go round to 'em all; so that public rejoicings might be made for these great advantages with which God distinguish'd the reign of Timur.

The Bitiscochis, or controllers of the Divan, also enter'd the city, where having taken an estimate of the money due for saving the people's lives, the receivers-general took care to receive it.

In the mean while the principal lords of the court, and the emperor's favorites remonstrated to his majesty, that after having suffer'd the fatigues and difficultys of this war, victory inspir'd 'em with thoughts of renewing their diversions and pleasures; that Feridon and the Keis had always done the same; and that it was in justice due to 'em after they had thus fatigu'd themselves. The emperor willingly consented, and gave orders for a feast, which was to continue for several days. Timur began the rejoicings by presents to the princes of the blood, the Emirs and generals of the army, in consideration of their services and great actions; and afterwards the musicians perform'd concerts of music in amorous and drinking tunes, which so charm'd the hearts of all, that they forgot the rigors of war, and the fatigues of a campaign.

Jan. 12.

The sixteenth of Rabiulakhir, a great number of our soldiers being assembled at the gate of Deli, insulted the inhabitants of the suburbs. The great Emirs were order'd to put a stop to these disorders; but God, who had predestin'd

the



the ruin of this place for the chastisement of the inhabitants, permitted its destruction by second cause. Our soldiers coming into the place was one cause; and the despair of the Guebres, who remain'd in great numbers in the towns of Seiri, Gehanpenah and old Deli, was another. The curiosity of the Sultanelles to see the rarity of Deli, and particularly of the famous palace, adorn'd with a thousand columns, and built by the ancient king of India, Melik Jouna, induc'd 'em to go into the city with all the court, which was very numerous: and the gate was left open to every one, so that above fifteen thousand of our soldiers got in unperceiv'd. Besides the Emirs and controllers of the Divan, who were set at the gate to receive the tribute for saving the inhabitants lives; other officers in commission had the same liberty to enter the city: but there remain'd a far greater number of troops in a large place between Deli, Seiri, and Gehanpenah. The disorders our men committed in the two last places caus'd a great bustle among the Guebres, who in despair fell upon our men; and several of 'em set fire to their houses, wherein their wives and children were burnt. Our men perceiving this desolation among the Guebres, pillag'd 'em, because of their evil designs. As other troops were let into the city to seize on the inhabitants of the neighbouring towns and villages who had fled for refuge thither, the confusion very much increas'd, and the troops within the place employ'd themselves intirely in plundering and burning the houses of the Guebres. The Emirs, to quell this disorder, caus'd the gates to be shut, that the troops without might not enter: but the soldiers within open'd the gates to their comrades; by

Book IV.

Jan. 11.  
1199.

morning all the army enter'd, and the soldiers rose in arms against their leaders, who oppos'd their enterprize. So on the seventeenth of Rabiulakhir 801, this great and proud city was deliver'd.

The next day pass'd in the same manner; and there were some soldiers who took a hundred and fifty slaves, men, women and children, whom they carry'd out of the city; and some soldiers-boys had twenty slaves to their own share. The other spoils of precious stones, pearls, rubys, diamonds, stuffs, belts, gold and silver vessels, money, plate, and other curiosities, were innumerable; for the Indian women and girls were adorn'd with precious stones, and had on their feet and hands, and even on their toes, bracelets and rings: of which our men had such great numbers, that they refus'd to carry away a vast quantity of precious ornaments of inestimable value.

Feb. 15.

The nineteenth of Rabiulakhir they did the same in old Deil, whither the rest of the Guebres were retir'd. These Indians assembled together in the great mosque, and prepar'd to defend themselves; but the Emir Chamellah and Ali Sultan Tarschi came thither with five hundred men, and having forcibly enter'd the mosque, sent to the abyss of hell the souls of these infidels, of whose heads they erected towers, and gave their bodies for food to the birds and beasts of prey. Never was such a terrible slaughter and desolation heard of. As old Deil was pillag'd the same day, they made some of the inhabitants slaves, whom they load-ed with chains, tho they had promis'd 'em their lives. Several days were employ'd in making 'em quit the city; and as they went out, every Emir of a Toman or regiment took

took a number of 'em for his service: and as there were several thousands of tradesmen and artisans, some were distributed among the princes and Emirs who serv'd under Timur; and others were sent to the officers of the emperor's sons, and to the other Emirs in their respective governments. The emperor likewise order'd that all the masons shou'd be kept for his particular service, as he design'd to build a spacious mosque in Samarcand of stone.

But it may not be amiss to give a description of the three towns which compose the city of Deli\*. That of Seiri is surrounded with a wall in form of a circle; old Deli is the same, but much larger; and from the walls of Seiri on the north-east, to the walls of old Deli, which is on the south-west, there are two other walls, one on each side: and the ground which lies betwixt 'em is call'd Gehampenah, and is larger than old Deli. Three gates of Seiri look towards Gehampenah, and the four others have the prospect outwards. Gehampenah has thirteen gates, six to the north-west, and seven to the south-east: so that when one speaks of Deli, we comprehend the three towns together, which have in all thirty gates.

---

\* Description of Deli, as it was in the author's time; for at present what they call Deli is a new city, built in a different place, built by Gelsahidin Ertis, and call'd Erber Aba, from the name of that king, the father of Humayun Chah.





## C H A P. XXI.

*Timur departs from Delhi; and pursues his conquests in the remoter parts of India, near the Ganges.*

TIMUR continu'd fifteen days at Delhi, the destruction of which place was caus'd by the ill conduct of the inhabitants: then having resolv'd to exterminate the idolaters of India, as well as the robbers and rebels, he march'd towards the other most famous places of this empire. At his departure he order'd the Cherifs, Cadis, doctors and Cheiks of the city, to assemble in the great mosque of Ghanpenah; where he fix'd a governor over 'em, to protect 'em from the insults of the soldiers, whom victory had render'd insolent.

Jan. 12.

1776

The twenty-second of Ralaalakher, at ten in the morning, the army encamp'd from Ghanpenah, and march'd down to Firroz Abad, three miles from Delhi. Here Timur staid an hour to view this delightful place: and, after having made two Rekats \* in the mosque belonging to it, which is built of stone on the banks of the Janou, to return thanks to God for his conquest, he departed out of this town.

\* A prostration to  
prayer.

About this time the lord Chamseiddin, one of the Cherifs of Termed, with Aladdin Naib, lieutenant of the Chelk Coukeri, who had been sent embassadors to the town of Coutele, return'd from their embassy: they brought advice that Behader Nohar prince of these quarters, had willingly submitted to the emperor; and

and hop'd next friday to have the honor to Chap. 11.  
kiss the ground before his majesty, and offer  
him his services. Timur being encamp'd on  
the other side of Gehanma near Vezir Abad,  
the embassadors presented him two white par-  
rots, from Behader Nekar. These birds had  
liv'd ever since the time of Toglan Chah, and  
had been kept many years in the antichambers  
of the emperors of India. Timur took this  
curious present for a good augury; and contin-  
u'd his road six miles farther to a place call'd  
Mondala, having before cross'd the Jaom.

The twenty-fourth of Rabiulakher, he march'd Jan. 20.  
six miles and encamp'd at Kete, where Beha-  
der Nekar with his son Coultach had the ho-  
nor to kiss the imperial carpet, to offer a great  
many rich presents, and assure the emperor of  
their obedience. The twenty-fifth the army Jan. 21.  
march'd to Baghbour, which for its beauty is  
compar'd to the delicious garden of Durbehur,  
and to the magnificent temple of the idols of  
Fercar; which places are distant from each o-  
ther six miles. The twenty-sixth they march'd Jan. 22.  
also six miles, and encamp'd at Asar, situate  
between two rivers, where Timur said to re-  
pose himself.

## C H A P. XXII.

*Conquest of Myrthe. The Guibres are slain  
alive.*

THE town of Myrthe being one of the  
most noted places of the empire of In-  
dia, Timur resolv'd to make himself master of

Book IV. it: whereupon the twenty-sixth of Rabiulakher  
 Jan. 22. he sent thither from Afar the lords Rousslem,  
 Jan. 24. Tagi Bonga, Chamelil, and Allahdad. The  
 twenty-eighth these lords sent advice to the em-  
 peror, that Elias Ougani, and the son of Mou-  
 lana Ahmed Toghaneferi, with a Guebre nam'd  
 Sefi, had fortify'd the town, and were back'd  
 by a company of Guebres; that they had re-  
 solv'd to submit, and had not only declar'd that  
 they resolv'd to defend themselves, but even  
 dar'd to use some insolent expressions, saying  
 that the emperor Turmechirin Can once came  
 to besiege the place, but was oblig'd to raise  
 the siege; and that they hop'd the same wou'd  
 be our fate. This news disquieted Timur;  
 and their speaking contemptuously of Turme-  
 chirin Can, whom they tax'd with cowardice,  
 highly incens'd him. On Tuesday at the hour  
 of morning-prayer he took horse at the head of  
 ten thousand men; and in two days and one  
 night, march'd twenty miles.

Jan. 25. The twenty-ninth of Rabiulakher at morn  
 he arriv'd at the town of Myrthe, where he  
 order'd the captains of the companies to under-  
 mine the walls. At night they visited the works,  
 and found they had already advanc'd ten or fif-  
 teen cubits breadth to each bastion and coun-  
 tine; which so surpris'd the Guebres, that they  
 desist'd from defending themselves.

Next day the Emir Allahdad, with his re-  
 giment nam'd the faithful, consisting of the as-  
 sistant people of the Coutchins, attack'd the gate  
 of the town. A young lad, one of his domest-  
 ics, nam'd Serai, son of Calandar, boldly cast a  
 net upon the battlement, and mounted the walls.  
 He was follow'd by Rousslem Berles, and a  
 great many brave men, who rush'd into the  
 town sword in hand: they bound Elias Ougani,  
 and



and the son of Tchaneferi, governors of the Chap. 11.  
place, whom they carry'd to the foot of the  
imperial throne. The Guebre Sefi, one of the  
princes of this place, was kill'd in the assault,  
and his body cast into the fire which he ador'd.

The first of Jumazislevel they sla'd alive all Jan. 25.  
the Guebres of this place, and made slaves of  
their wives and children: they set fire to every  
thing, and raz'd the walls: so that this town  
was soon reduc'd to ashes, tho Tormechirin  
Can, a great emperor in Asia, cou'd not make  
himself master of it.

It is remarkable, that before the army's  
marching to this place, Timur had resolv'd to  
write a letter to the inhabitants, to reduce 'em  
by good-nature and promises: but the secre-  
tary being about to write these words, " Why  
" do you compare us with Tormechirin Can?"  
Timur reprimanded those who had order'd the  
secretary to write in such a manner, saying,  
" What am I to Tormechirin Can? He was a  
" greater lord than me, of stricter virtue, and  
" better conduct: but my design is to revenge  
" the affront these villains have put upon so  
" powerful and august a monarch." So with-  
out suffering the letter to be concluded, he  
march'd to exterminate 'em. This was Timur's  
modesty, which ought to serve as an example  
to others.



two miles further along the Ganges, and encamp'd. The third or Jumazmirel, he went towards Toeloepour, a town on the bank of the Ganges, twenty miles from the place whence they set out. When they had march'd fifteen, advice was brought the emperor, that a great number of Guebres were got together on the bank of that river. Timur immediately sent thither the Emir Mobacher, Ali Sultan Tavaehi, and other Emirs of Tumany, and captains, to the number of fifty thousand horse; and continu'd his road towards Toeloepour. At this time the emperor was seiz'd with a very troublesome swelling in his arm, which much impair'd his health; but this distemper did not continue long, thro the care and assiduity of his officers.

In the mean while advice was brought that a vast number of Guebres in forty-eight boats, advanc'd against us upon the Ganges. This news stir'd up the emperor's fury; and the pleasure of having an opportunity of acquiring glory and merit in this war against the infidels, made him forget his distemper. He took horse with a thousand of his particular officers, and march'd along the banks of the river. He had no sooner perceiv'd the enemy, than several of our brave men spur'd their horses into the water sword in hand, with their quivers fasten'd to their sides. The unskillful enemys only let fly their arrows upon 'em, with their bucklers laid over their heads; while our men continually advanc'd, and laying hold on their flat-bottom'd vessels, enter'd 'em, notwithstanding the resistance of the enemy, whom they cut in pieces, and cast their bodys into the Ganges, making their women and children slaves. When they were become masters of these great boats, they



Book IV. they went in search of ten others mann'd with  
 Guebres, who prepar'd themselves for fighting,  
 and fallen'd their boats to one another, that they  
 might the better defend themselves, and make  
 a kind of naval fight. Our soldiers, after hav-  
 ing discharg'd a vast number of arrows, board-  
 ed their vessels, giving praise to God; and  
 with their swords slew the remainder of these  
 unfortunate Indians.

## C H A P. XXIV.

### *Timur's three Gazies, or expeditions against the Guebres.*

Jan. 25.

**A**FTER the taking of the flat boats on  
 the Ganges, Timur dream'd for Toe-  
 loepour: and when he was arriv'd there, on the  
 fourth of Junazhulvel, a little after midnight,  
 two men came from the Emirs Allahdad, Ba-  
 jazzet, Coluchin, and Altoun Baccin, the leaders  
 of our scouts, who brought advice that having  
 found an easy passage where they cross'd the  
 Ganges, they had met on the banks of that  
 river a great number of infidels well-arm'd,  
 who had for their leader a king nam'd Moba-  
 rek Can, who was resolv'd to defend himself.

Timur on advice of these motions, took horse  
 before morning at the sound of drums and ket-  
 tledrums, being lighted by a vast number of  
 flambeaux and torches: he cross'd the Ganges,  
 and read the morning-prayer, after having  
 march'd a mile on the other side that river.  
 Then our soldiers, with their cuirasses on, ad-  
 vanc'd against Mobarek Can, who had rang'd

ten thousand horse, and some infantry, in order of battel, and expected us with his ensigns display'd, tho he risk'd his crown on this occasion.

Timur hereupon imagin'd that these Indians being far more numerous than we, and our two wings at a great distance, we cou'd use no precautions, but must entirely resign our selves to the will of God. And as he was thus disquieted about the success of the battel, five hundred horse of the Tomans of Mirza Charoc arriv'd, which had cross'd the water with Scid Coja and Gehan Male, to make inroads in several places; and they join'd us at so proper a time, that one wou'd have thought they had been appointed to meet us here, or that heaven had sent 'em express to succour Timur when he had such need of 'em. Whereupon he return'd God thanks for his kindness to him, and order'd the Emirs Chamellâ and Allahdad to attack the enemy with a thousand horse, and not to regard their number, or resistance.

Our brave men, in obedience to this order, and in resignation to the will of God, rush'd with fury upon the enemy, who thinking that our men were not alone, but only the vanguard of a great army, suddenly grew afraid, and fled like hinds before a roaring lion, and like Chacals \* hid themselves in the woods. Our warriors pursu'd 'em, and put a great number to the sword, carrying away captive their women and children, with a considerable booty of oxen and other animals. Timur encamp'd in

\* Chacal is an animal which partly resembles a dog, and partly a fox. It digs up dead bodies to devour 'em, and hath a languishing voice.

Book IV. this place; and at the same time receiv'd advice that a great number of Guebres were rendezvoun'd in the defile of Conpele, east of the Ganges. Whereupon he departed with five hundred horse for that place, leaving the rest to guard the spoils. The emperor at his arrival at these mountains, met a great number of Guebres. The Emirs Chameikh and Ali Sultan Tavachi, notwithstanding the enemy were superior to 'em in number, fell upon 'em sword in hand, giving praises to God. These infidels at first defended themselves: but our men put 'em to the rout, notwithstanding their great number, while the soldiers were employ'd in collecting the booty. Timur being left with only a hundred horsemen of his guards, a Guebre, nam'd Malek Cheika, fell briskly upon him with a hundred men, partly horse and partly foot. Timur oppos'd these rash fellows; but while the two partys were about to let fly a shower of arrows, one of our soldiers, thro' mistake, told Timur that this man was the Cheik Canker, one of his faithful servants. This false alarm caus'd the emperor to return to the bottom of the mountain: which the Guebre perceiving, he attack'd some of our men. Timur then return'd against this infidel, shot him in the belly with an arrow, and unhors'd him with a cut of his sabre on his head: he was then bound with cords, and drag'd after our men. Timur being willing to question him concerning the condition of the enemy, but he presently gave up the ghost. Some time after advice was brought that in the defile of Conpele, two miles from this place, a great many Guebres were assembled; that in the passages of these mountains were only thick woods, and trees twisted one within another, with roads

and



and came so large and strong that a man cou'd scarcely grasp 'em. *Chap. 16.*

Timur, who had already taken horse twice this day to fight, and was in great want of sleep, had no sooner heard this news, than preferring the treasures of eternal rewards to his quiet here, he march'd towards this desile at the head of some officers and Emirs of the vanguard. As he was oblig'd to go thro woods almost unpassable, and the Indians were far more numerous, Timur said to his men, "If my son Pir Mehemed and Solymán Chah should arrive here presently, they wou'd be of great service to us: but that cannot be: seeing it is but three days since I sent 'em to make inroads beyond the Ganges, which they have cross'd at Pirouznour." While Timur was thus speaking, on a sudden they perceiv'd these brave men, who were over-joy'd to meet the emperor in this place. The pleasure, as one may easily imagine, was not less on Timur's side. They march'd together against the Guebres, on whom they discharg'd showers of arrows; and then rushing on 'em sword in hand, they made a cruel slaughter: they took a vast quantity of booty from these infidels, as well camels, oxen, and other cattle, as gold and silver belts, which the enemys wore.

Thus Timur was in three battals the same day, which never happen'd to any prince before him, that we find mention'd in history. The field of battle being so strait, and full of woods and thorns, that it was impossible to encamp here, in the evening they were oblig'd to return to the place where the second Gaze was fought.

## C H A P. XXV.

*Timur exterminates the Guebres assembled in the famous defile of Coupele. Description of a marble statue of a cow ador'd by the Indians.*

THE defile of Coupele is situate at the foot of a mountain near the Ganges; and fifteen miles higher than this defile is a stone call'd in form of a cow, from whence springs this great river. For this reason the Indians adore this stone; and in all the neighbouring countrys, within a year's journey, when they are at prayers they turn towards it. One of their customs is to burn themselves alive, and to have their ashes flung into the Ganges, believing they shall merit salvation by it. They also cast into this river their gold and silver: and a chief part of their devotion is to wash themselves in it, and there shave their beard and head, upon which they pour water; which they esteem as useful as the Mahometans imagine the Ablution \* necessary, when they go in pilgrimage to Mecca.

Abounair Othi, in his book call'd Yemini<sup>†</sup>, gives a relation of the superstitions of these Indian idolaters, and of the ridiculous notions they entertain concerning this river. We are told in this book, that Nasareddin Sabucchin,

\* The ablution which the Mahometans are oblig'd to make before prayer.

† A famous history of the Sultan Mahmoud Sabucchin of India.

and his son the Sultan Mahmound, for several years made war on these idolaters of India, and by degrees conquer'd the towns and castles of this kingdom; that God bless'd their undertakings, and permitted the Sultan Mahmound at the end of these wars, to march into the kingdom of Cannouche\* with the mahometan army. The interpreter of the Yemini remarks, that this war in the country of Cannouche is the most celebrated of any that Yemin Eddole Mahmound was ever engag'd in.

But to return to our subject: we must know that when Timur took up a resolution to carry his arms into India, he sent several Emirs with considerable troops by one road, and with the rest of his army march'd himself another; that these two armies took all the citys, castles, fortresses, towns and villages, in their way; that they exterminated the idolaters; and met together before Deli, as we have already mention'd: and that after the reduction of Deli, they cross'd the Ganges. Thus Timur accomplish'd his undertaking in India, for the extirpation of idolatry in that country. But as there yet remain'd a prodigious multitude of Guebres in the mountains of Coupele, who possess'd a

---

\* A town and kingdom on the side of the Ganges. The geographer Abulstoda says that the Ganges runs towards the east of the kingdom of Cannouche, at forty leagues distance; and that the capital of Cannouche is in long. 104. lat. 25. Niterolsen Toulk says it is in long. 115. 30. lat. 26. 35; which is consistent with the former, because the one counts the longitude from Hercules's pillars, and the other from the Turkish Isles. Elmagishi remarks that Cannouche is 512 leagues east of Moulan.

Adam is a town of the kingdom of Cannouche, seven days journey from the day of the same name. Benfai tells us that Cannouche is between two arms of the Ganges.



Book IV  
 Jan. 12  
 1397-

great quantity of riches, cattel, and movable goods, he resolv'd to attack 'em. Whereupon the fifth of Jumaziulevel the army began its march towards this defile, where the infidels, who were destin'd to perish, dar'd to wait their arrival, and rashly prepar'd to sustain the attacks of our warriors, and make a vigorous defence. At sun-rising the mahometan army was rang'd in order of battel, and arriv'd at the defile in very good order. The right wing was commanded by the Mirza Pir Mehemed, and the Emir Solyman Chah; and the left by other Emirs of great reputation. The Emir Chame-lik and other captains famous for their valor, led the vanguard of the main body.

When the noise of the drums, the great and little kettledrums, and trumpets, accompany'd with the usual great cry, had echo'd in these mountain and narrow passages, the infidels were confounded, and lost all courage: fear got possession of their hearts, and wou'd not suffer 'em to wait the attack of our warriors, but oblig'd 'em to conceal themselves in the mountains, whither they were pursu'd by our men, and great part of 'em slain: some sav'd themselves, yet their effects, which consisted of furniture and other riches, fell to the conquerors.

This kingdom being thus deliver'd from these idolaters, the army return'd the same day, and cross'd the Ganges, on the banks of which Timur read the noon-prayer, returning thanks to God for the advantages and victories he had gain'd thro his goodness. Then he took horse, and after five miles march encamp'd towards the lower part of the river, pleas'd with the conduct of all the captains and soldiers of his army, to whom he gave rewards for their brave actions in this war.

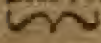
CHAP.

## C H A P. XXVI.

*Timur's resolution to return to the seat of his empire.*

**T**IMUR being satisfy'd with having march'd as far as the eastern frontier of the empire of India in one campaign, and having acquir'd the merit of the Gazie, departed from the bank of the Ganges the sixth of Jan. 31 Jummalowel, to join the baggage. Every one march'd in his respective post; and the quarter-masters and harbingers had orders to meet the baggage, and conduct it to the army. The seventh, they march'd six miles, and encamp'd Feb. 1 four miles distance from the baggage.

In the mean while advice was brought that in the mountain of Soualee, one of the most considerable mountains of India, which stretches over two thirds of this vast empire, there were assembled a great number of Indians, with design to insult us. Timur order'd the troops which accompany'd the baggage to decamp, and march towards Soualee, while himself went in person to a place but five miles from thence, where the Mirza Calil Sultan and the Emir Cholk Nouredudin join'd him with the baggage. The Emir Solymian Chah and the other generals on their knees besought the emperor to stay in the camp, and not continually expose his sacred person; while they would go and exterminate the Indians. Timur told 'em, the Gazie produc'd two considerable advantages; one was, that it procur'd for the warrior eter-

Book IV.  nal merit; the other, that he acquir'd by it worldly spoils and goods: that as they had these two advantages in view, they shou'd be willing that he might partake of 'em also, since his intention in all his fatigues and labors, was only to render himself well-pleasing to God, and so treasure up good works for his eternal happiness, and riches to bestow upon his soldiers, and do good to the poor.

Then he sent orders to the Emir Gehan Chah, who had been gone out a week to make incursions on the Jaoun, to come to the camp, that he might partake of the merit of this expedition as well as the other Emirs. This Emir accordingly obey'd the order, and return'd to join his majesty.

## C H A P. XXVII.

### *Timur's irruption on the mountain Soualer.*

Feb. 4.

**O**N saturday the tenth of Jamazielevel, Timur departed for the mountain of Soualer, where a Raja nam'd Behrouz had assembled a number of Guebres in a narrow passage; and confiding in the strength of the mountain, and a strong place he had in possession, which he imagin'd inaccessible, had resolv'd to give us battel. Our army advancing in good order, Timur went down to the entrance of this defile, where he stop'd. Our soldiers fell suddenly upon the infidels, who made but a weak defence; so that with their swords and half-pikes they slew a great number of 'em. Having reduc'd 'em thus low, they became masters of their cartel and effects, and took those prisoners who escap'd the sword: but as the



the booty was unequally divided, the rich and powerful having got four or five hundred oxen, Chap. 8.  
 Timur order'd the spoils shou'd be equally distributed, that the poor and weak might have their share. The following night Timur lay in the tent of the Mirza Pir Mehemed; and next day he went to Belra, near Beheri, commonly call'd Meliapour.

The twelfth of Jumazinlevel he march'd four miles, and encamp'd at Chacarsava. The soldiers were so laden with booty, that they cou'd scarce march four miles a day. Next day they went four miles, and encamp'd at Kender.

## C H A P. XXVIII.

*Several combats in the woods near Soualec.*

**T**HE fourteenth of Jumazinlevel Timur cross'd the Jounn, and encamp'd in another part of the mountain of Soualec, where advice was brought that a Raya nam'd Ratan had caus'd the crimpers to be sounded to assemble the people, and fall upon our army: that by this means an infinite number of Indians were got together under his command, and had retreated into thick and inaccessible woods.

Timur wou'd not stay till night was over before he began his march against 'em; but caus'd torches and flambeaux to be lighted, and order'd the captains to keep a constant march in order of battel. The soldiers employ'd all their strength in cutting down the trees to make roads, and the same night they advanc'd twelve miles.

Book IV.

Feb. 9.

The fifteenth before morning they arriv'd between the two mountains of Soualee and Coulee, where the Raya was prepar'd to give battle, having form'd two wings and a main body: but he had no more courage than the rest; for as soon as the noise of the drums, trumpets and kettledrums, with the soldiers cries, were heard in this mountain, they fled, and the Raya himself turn'd his back, and retir'd to the bottom of a wood. Our soldiers pursu'd the enemy, and cut in pieces a great number, enriching themselves with the spoils, and carrying away an innumerable company of captives.

Feb. 10.

The same day our right wing went into another defile of these mountains, where, after having exterminated the Guebres, they gain'd a considerable booty: the left wing also made inroads in another place, and massacred several Indians; but got no spoils. The following night the two wings return'd to Timur. The sixteenth, Timur quitted this narrow passage, and re-encamp'd the mountain of Soualee, where he encamp'd in a place fifteen leagues from Belkircout, all which country is full of forests and craggy mountains. Then he resolv'd to go in person into the most dangerous places; and sent back the left wing, compos'd of the troops of Corassana, to make inroads, because they were return'd without any booty.

In the mean while Sainte Maure, at the head of the scouts, arriv'd at nine in the morning; bringing advice that there were so many Guebres in these quarters, that it was impossible to number 'em. This news oblig'd Timur to stay in this place, while the left wing shou'd go out to make inroads.

Then


Then advice was brought from the body of Chap. 18.  
troops commanded by the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Ali Sultan Tavaachi, that several Guebres, with abundance of cattle, were got together in a defile on the left side. Timur immediately march'd towards this place, ordering the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Ali Sultan to fall upon the Guebres. They soon became conquerors, putting the enemys to the sword, in the emperor's presence, who had set up his imperial standard on the very brink of the mountain, to encourage his men. Some of the wounded sav'd themselves by flight; but all their effects and cattle fell into the hands of the victory. Timur staid upon the mountain till evening, and caus'd part of the booty to be distributed among those who cou'd get none; so that every one had as much as he cou'd well take care of. At night they encamp'd in this defile, where there were abundance of monkys, who came to steal away the soldiers goods.

Thus we may truly say, there were twenty battels fought in thirty days, during which time our men conquer'd seven of the most important fortresses of India, which wou'd not give place to Calber\*. These seven fortresses were at one or two leagues distance from each other, and the inhabitants were at continual variance among themselves. They had formerly paid tribute to the emperors of India; but were some time since brought to subjection to the Mussalmans, from whom they revolted, refusing to pay tribute to 'em; and thus they merited the punishment they receiv'd. One of these places, which

---

\* A strong place in Syria, inhabited by Jews, formerly conquer'd by the prophet Mahomet.



Book IV. belong'd to Cheikou, a relation of the Cheik  
 Couker\*, had willingly submitted to Timur, thro  
 \* Prince of  
 Labor.  
 the interposition of the Mussulmans who liv'd  
 with 'em; but this was mere shew; for they soon  
 gave us marks of their treason and malice, and  
 when the customary tax for the saving of their  
 lives was impos'd on 'em, they made use of tricks  
 and equivocations. In the mean while one of  
 Timur's officers invented a stratagem to oblige  
 'em to pay the money with less reluctance; which  
 was, that we shou'd buy up all their old bows,  
 which they accordingly sold out men upon their  
 offering a good price; so that they had scarcely  
 any more arms left. Then it was order'd that  
 forty Guebres shou'd be litted in the service of  
 Hendou Chah Cazen, one of the emperor's of-  
 ficers; which they wou'd not consent to, but  
 slew several Mussulmans.

This oblig'd us to treat 'em as enemies, and  
 besiege their place in form; which having taken,  
 we put two thousand Guebres to the sword, as  
 a punishment for their past crimes.

The place belonging to Malek Dinradge, and  
 five others, were taken with the same ease in a  
 very short time; so that this country was clear'd  
 of this generation of idolaters, their temples  
 were ruin'd, and the mahometan religion after-  
 wards flourish'd there.

## C H A P. XXIX.

*Timur's Gazies and expeditions in the province of Tchemon.*

**T**H E Gazies on the mountains of Soualee being finish'd to Timur's satisfaction, he departed from Manfae the sixteenth of Jumazilakher; and after a march of six miles, encamp'd at Bailla, a town of the province of Tchemon, where he was join'd by the Emirs Cheik Mahomed Aicmatmur, Mobacher, and Ismael Berlas, of the Toman of Mirza Calil Sultan. March 12.  
1399.

The inhabitants of this town were valiant men, and their forests very difficult of access: they had fix'd their bucklers round their woods, where they prepar'd for a vigorous resistance. Our soldiers were eager to fall upon 'em; but there came an order from the emperor to defer the attack till next day, because he design'd to be there in person.

The seventeenth Timur took horse, and having rang'd his army in order of battal, caus'd the great cry to be made, and the instruments of war to be sounded; but the enemy abandon'd the town, and fled into the woods, to hide themselves. Part of our soldiers were posted on the side of the wood, while the others enter'd the town without opposition, and made themselves masters of a great quantity of money, and ammunition; so that the army was furnish'd with all necessaries. March 13.

The same day the army departed thence, to encamp four miles further. Olais Timur, Toricator, and Coulad, as also the Mirza Roultom, and

*Book IV.* the faithful Zeineddin, who had been sent ambassador from Delhi into Cachmir, arriv'd at the camp with letters from prince Chah Eskender, from whom there likewise came ambassadors; who assur'd Timur that their prince, full of respect to him, had resolv'd to demand his protection, with all the submission that cou'd be expected from a subject, who was entirely resign'd to his orders; and that as a mark of his sincerity, he was upon his way to meet the emperor, being already arriv'd at a place nam'd Gelham, where he was rejoin'd by the doctor Noradin, one of his ambassadors, who told him that the Emirs of Timur's Divan had tax'd him at thirty thousand horses, and a hundred thousand Derests of gold, each Derest weighing two Medicals and a half. Chah Eskender immediately return'd to collect the money he was tax'd at, that he might the sooner have the honor to kiss the imperial carpet. Timur, on advice of this, disapprov'd of this order, because they had impos'd a tax upon Eskender, which he was not able to pay, since it was more than his little kingdom was worth: and as the ambassadors at the same time represented to the emperor how willingly Chah Eskender had submitted to him, Timur order'd that he shou'd be treated with civility, and sent to tell him that the payment of this tax shou'd not detain him from coming before him.

*March 11.* The eighteenth of Jumazilakher, the ambassadors of Chah Eskender and of Motamedzeineddin were sent back to Cachmir, with orders for Chah Eskender to come to the bank of the Indus in ten days. Then the army on their road pillag'd three towns: but Aratmour, officer of Timur's household, was wounded with an arrow.

*March 11.* The nineteenth of Jumazilakher, they encamp'd over-against the capital of Tchemou, after



after having march'd four miles. In their road Chap. 29.  
 they found four leagues of cultivated land, ready  
 for harvest; which serv'd for forage, and our  
 horses were let loose among the grass in this  
 pasture-ground.

The twentieth of Jumazulakhir, Timur enter'd the defile from whence the river of Tchemou springs, which the army had cross'd several times. It is situate at the foot of a mountain, on the left side of the city of Tchemou, having on its right the town of Menou. It was inhabited by strong and tall Indians, who were resolv'd to defend their lives, and having sent their wives and children into the mountains, had intrench'd themselves in almost inaccessible woods, upon a cragged mountain, having their king at the head; and like dogs barking at the rising moon, they howl'd, if one may so say, when they discharg'd their arrows.

Timur imagin'd it better to surprize 'em by artifice, than to attack 'em openly in so dangerous a place: whereupon he order'd our soldiers to leave 'em, and to go to pillage the town of Menou: which was accordingly executed. The troops also enter'd the town of Tchemou, whence they brought away ammunition and spoils enough for their pay and sustenance. Then Timur posted some regiments of active and resolute men in the woods where the enemy had fortify'd themselves; and in the mean while he departed with the cavalry.

The twenty first he cross'd the river of Tchemou, march'd four miles, and encamp'd on the bank of the Genave, in a plain of four leagues in length, full of pasturage.

As soon as the imperial army had quitted the defile of Tchemou and Menou, the Indians, like foxes coming out of their holes, when they imagin'd the  
 forests

Book IV. forests void of lions, came out of their mountain to re-enter their houses: but they were soon attack'd by our regiments who lay in ambuscade; and who falling upon 'em, cut 'em in pieces, not giving quarter to any one.

Delet Timur Tavachi, an officer of the Toman of Cheik Noureddin, assisted by Hussain Melik Contchin, took the king of Tchemou prisoner, with fifty officers of consideration, whom he brought to Timur. The emperor return'd thanks to God, and thus address'd these Emirs.

King of  
Tchemou  
taken prisoner.

"Blessed be the almighty King of heaven and  
"earth, who hath humbled these proud Guebres,  
"the enemys of his name, who but yesterday  
"insolently brav'd the faithful from their craggy  
"mountains, having no regard to any one: but  
"to day God has deliver'd 'em up to us, bound  
"like malefactors. To him be blessing and glo-  
"ry for ever." Then he order'd that the captives shou'd be loaded with chains, and left travelling upon the earth, except the king of Tchemou, who had been wounded in the fight: he was heal'd of his wound, and treated with civility, as well because of his character, as for that they imagin'd they might the more easily get the money due to the mahometan army for the town of Tchemou, and the saving the lives of the king and his men. In the mean while they treated this prince with so much kindness and respect, instructing him in the beautys of the mussulman religion, that he resolv'd to make profession of mahometanism, and quit his errors and idolatry. So he declar'd his belief of the unity of God, and eat the flesh of oxen with the Mussulmans, which is prohibited these miserable idolaters.

This change of religion caus'd him to be honour'd and caress'd by Timur, who consented to  
make

make a treaty with him, by which he was receiv'd under the protection of our monarch. Chap. 53.

The twenty third of Jumazulakhir the army staid on the banks of the Genuve, to wait for the troops which were gone to Lahor. March 19.

## C H A P. XXX.

*Relation of what pass'd at Lahor, with regard to Chicas Couker, prince of that city.*

**I**N the mean while advice was brought that the princes and Emirs, who had been sent towards Lahor, had made themselves masters of that city, and actually receiv'd the tax for redeeming the inhabitants lives, having made Chicas Couker prisoner of war.

Deceit, says the poet, may at first have a good appearance; but in the end it makes the person blash who practises it: wherefore Timur, who was an enemy to tricking, made use of the following words for the motto of his seal, *Safery consists in fair-dealing.*

But that every one may be sufficiently appriz'd of the affair of Chicas Couker, they must know that this prince of Lahor, at the beginning of this war, accompany'd Timur every where, from whom he obtain'd so much favor and respect, that if any of the Indians made use of his name, they were neither pullag'd nor made prisoners. When the army was between the two rivers of Ganges and Jamun, he beg'd leave to go into his own country, which was granted him: and he even agreed about the presents he shou'd make to the emperor upon his meeting him again at the bank of the Blah, which is also call'd the river of



Book IV. of Lahor. Thus Chicai Couker return'd into his own country, where he pass'd some time in plays and diversions, forgetting what he had promis'd before the august tribunal of Timur: and he not only neglected the performance of his promise, but even gave marks of his disregard to us; for several of our officers having pass'd thro his city coming from Transoxiana, as the doctor Abdallah Sedre, Hendouchah Cazen, and others, thro whose protection he might have advanced himself in honor and power, he did not give 'em a handsom reception, nor shew the least marks of civility, pretending ignorance of their being in the city. This procedure drew on him Timur's indignation, who order'd that his country shou'd be pillag'd, and his person seiz'd. Thus our monarch punish'd ingratitude.

March 22. The twenty fourth of Jumazulakher, Timur cross'd the river of Genave, and encamp'd after having march'd five miles. The same day officers arriv'd from Tauris from the Mirza Miran Chah, bringing news of the good health of that prince, his children, and principal Emirs. They also brought an account of the affairs of Bagdad, Egypt, Syria, Anatolia and Capcha; as likewise the condition of the fortress of Alengic.

The twenty fifth, several sick soldiers were drown'd in the river; which oblig'd Timur, who was the most merciful prince in the universe, to give those who were in want of 'em, proper horses and mules out of his own stable, upon which they cross'd the river. The same day the emperor sent Hendouchah Cazen to Samarcand, with advice that he was about to return home, to comfort the people who impatiently expected him. That day there likewise came an officer from Persia from the Mirza Pir Mehemmed,

med, son of Omar Cheik, who brought news of Chap. 12.  
this prince's health, and the state of his kingdom: he likewise presented Egyptian swords, damask'd blades, and other curiosities.

The twenty sixth of Junuzulakher the army decamp'd from the bank of the Genave, and after six miles march encamp'd in the desert; and the same day the emperor sent again to Samarcand one of the ambassadors who came from Tauris, to order the prince's son to come and meet him. Then Timur designing to cross the river Dindana before the rest of the army, set out before 'em.

The twenty seventh he march'd six miles, and encamp'd at the entrance of a wood: they saw a lion in a meadow, which every one attack'd, and the Emir Cheik Noureddin kill'd.

Then the Mirzas Pir Mehemed and Roustem, with the Emirs Solyman Chah and Gehan Chah, arriv'd at the camp from Lahor, after having slain several Indians, and taken a considerable booty. They kiss'd the imperial carpet, and made their presents to Timur, which consisted of nine pieces of each sort. Timur gave great largesses to these brave men; and particularly distinguish'd Mehemed Azad, to whom he presented a vest, a quiver, and a gold-belt. The greatest lords only sought to be favorably regarded by our monarch.

The same day Timur order'd that all the Emirs of both wings, the colonels of regiments, and the captains of companies, shou'd return home by the different roads mark'd out for 'em. Then he made presents to every one according to their rank and merit, beginning with the princes of the blood, the Emirs, dukes, foreign princes call'd Nevians; and then the Emirs of Iomans, the colonels of Hazzars, and the centurions.  
The

*Book IV.* The Mirza Pir Mehemed, son of Gelianghir, had a present made him of a belt and crown set with precious stones.

He also honor'd with his liberality the lords of India, the Emirs and Cherifs, who had the good fortune to accompany him; and giving 'em letters-patent for their principalities, he permitted 'em to return into their respective countries.

Timur assign'd the government of the city and province of Moulzan to Keder Can, who having been arrested by order of Sarenk brother of Meliou Can, and laid in irons in a citadel, had escap'd thence, and fled to Biana, a place dependent on Delhi, to the king Ahoudan a Mussulman; and who having heard of Timur's arrival in that country, had with an humble confidence fled for refuge to the foot of the throne, and had the honor to accompany his majesty from that time.

As in this country there was a plain, which for its richness, and the great quantity of game in it, seem'd to invite passengers to the chase, (for there were lions, leopards, rhinoceros's, unicorns, blue stags, wild peacocks, parrots, and other uncommon animals) Timur spent some time in that diversion. He sent several thousands of soldiers to form the great circle; and having first pursu'd the idolaters, he chas'd the wild beasts, and afterwards went a fowling. The falcons and hawks destroy'd all the peacocks, pheasants, parrots and ducks in this country. The soldiers took a great deal of game, and slew several rhinoceros's with their sabres and lances, tho' this animal is so strong, that it will beat down a horse and horseman with a single blow of its horn; and has so thick a skin, that it cannot be pierc'd but by an extraordinary force.



The twenty eighth of Jumazulakher the 28<sup>th</sup> Chap. 31.  
 my march'd eight miles, and encamp'd at Geb-  
 han, a delightful residence on the frontiers of March 24.  
 Cachmir.

## C H A P. XXXI.

*Description of the little kingdom of Cachmir,  
or Kishmir.*

**A**S Cachmir is one of the most noted coun-  
 try in the world, has so particular a  
 situation, and so few people ever see it, because  
 it is not the ordinary passage into any other  
 countrys; we will give a short description of it,  
 which we have receiv'd from the natives, and the  
 truth of which we are fully satisfy'd of.

Cachmir is a principality near Hae, to the  
 middle of the fourth climate, which according  
 to Ptolemy, begins at 34 deg. 37 min. of lat. its  
 middle is at 36 deg. 22 min. and its end at 38  
 54. The latitude of Cachmir is 35 degrees;  
 and its longitude from the fortunate isles 125.

The country is of an oval form, surrounded  
 with high mountains on all sides: it looks  
 southwards upon Dali and the country of India,  
 northwards on Bedakhan and Corassan, west-  
 wards upon the hords of the Ouganis, and east-  
 wards upon Tabbot or Thebet.

In the extent of its province are ten thou-  
 sand flourishing villages, full of mountains and  
 green plains: but the common opinion is that  
 the whole principality of Cachmir consists  
 of a hundred thousand villages, as well in  
 the plains as mountains. The air and water are  
 very wholesome; and the beauty of the Cachmi-

Book IV. *~* tian women hath pass'd into a proverb among the Persian poets and orators. They have vast quantities of good fruit; but the winter is hurtful, because of the great abundance of snows which fall there. The summer-fruits, as dates, oranges and citrons, never come to maturity; but are brought thither from the warm neighboring countrys. The flat country in the middle is twenty leagues in breadth from one mountain to the other.

The prince and court reside at the city of Nagaz, thro' the middle of which, as at Bagdad, runs a river as large as the Tigris: and what is very surprizing, this river is exceeding rapid, tho' it is form'd from a single fountain in the same country, call'd the fountain of Vir. The inhabitants have built upon this river more than thirty bridges of boats, with chains cross the chief passages: seven of these bridges are in the city of Nagaz, which is the center and capital of the country. When this river hath pass'd the limits of Caehmir, it takes different names, from the several countrys it washes, as Dindana and Jamad: above Moultan it joins the Genave, and both together having pass'd by Moultan, fall into the Rave, which runs by the other Moultan: at length the river Biah joins 'em, and near the town of Ontcha, they all fall into the Indus or Absend, which disembogues into the sea of Omman \*, at the end of the country of Tatta.

\* The Arabian sea.

The mountains which surround this country serve as fortifications against the insults of an enemy; the inhabitants being under no apprehensions of their being ruin'd, either by time, rains or storms.

There are three roads into this country: that of Corassana is so very difficult, that the inhabitants, who are accusom'd to that sort of labor, are

are oblig'd to carry bales of merchandize and other burdens upon their backs, which the beasts of carriage are not able to do. The road of India is equally difficult. That of Tobbet or Thebet is easiest; but for several days journey passengers meet with venomous herbs, which poison their horses.

Thus God has given this country natural defences; so that the inhabitants have no occasion for arms or armies.

The twenty-ninth of Jumazulakher, Timur departed from Gebhan, march'd four miles, and encamp'd on the bank of the river Dindana, which he cross'd on a bridg built by his order; and which was an ease to the fatigu'd soldiers, as well Turks as Tadgies'. The Emirs Chamelik and Gelalelislam had orders for conducting the army over this bridg.

March 25.

## C H A P. XXXII.

*Timur returns to the seat of his empire.*

ON the thirtieth of Jumazulakher in the morning, Timur departed for Samarcand before the army, that he might get there in good time: he march'd twenty miles on the Dindana, and encamp'd at Sanbasse, a town in the mountain of Joodis. The first of Regeb he encamp'd at the castle of Berouadge: he took horse after noon-prayer, and enter'd the desert of Gelasi\*, from whence he came out in the even-

March 27.

\* Gerasa.

\* The Turks are native Tartars: the Tadgies are inhabitants of conquer'd lands and countries.



*Book IV.* ing, and encamp'd in a cavern, where there yet remain'd some water of the Pechecals, or great rains of the last winter. This cavern is but three miles from Berouge.

The 2d of Regeb at ten in the morning, he came to the Indus, over which the Emirs Pir Ali Seldar, and others, who had the care of the frontiers of Nagaz and Banou, and of the roads of those quarters, had caus'd a bridge of boats to be built.

Timur having cross'd the Indus, Raid till noon on its banks; and then leaving the Emir Allahdad at the foot of the bridge, that he might cause the baggage, and part of the army which was behind, to pass over, he departed in the afternoon, and march'd ten miles before he encamp'd.


*March 29.*

The third of Regeb he stop'd at Banou, where the Emirs Pir Alitaz, Hussein Contehin, and others, who had been left there to keep the Ouganis in obedience, had the honor to pay their respects to him: having not seen him for a month, they presented him with nine horses and a thousand oxen. Timur gave 'em back their horses, and order'd that the oxen should be restor'd to the right owners: and then he commanded Pir Alitaz to stay in that place, till all the army had pass'd it.

*April 7.*

The 7th of Regeb, which is the first of Fervardin of the Gelahan epocha, as also the first day of the spring, he took the road to Nagaz, where he arriv'd next day.

The same day the officer of Muz Miran Chah was sent back into Aserbijana, with advice of the emperor's conquests, and the good condition of his troops. Mahmond, son of Berat Coja, and Hendoucha, were likewise sent to Cabul, to bring troops from thence, to destroy  
the

the Ouzbans, against whom the Emir Soliman Chap. 12.  
 Chah had caus'd the castle of Nagaz to be built   
 before the emperor's departure for India, to op-  
 pose their insults: which establish'd quiet and  
 security among the Mussulmans of that coun-  
 try.

On one side of the castle without the walls was  
 a delicious fountain, which Timur was desirous  
 shou'd be within the enclosure of the castle:  
 for which reason, notwithstanding his great de-  
 sire to see the princes his dear children, he pre-  
 fer'd the good of the public before his private  
 satisfaction, and stand in that place till the walls  
 of the castle and the building over the fountain  
 were finish'd. This lasted no longer than from  
 tuesday till monday evening, because every one  
 assist'd in it, and the Emirs themselves, to set an  
 example to others, carry'd the tiles to the ma-  
 sons. Then the emperor gave the government  
 of this castle of Nagaz to Nusrat Coomari, an  
 officer of the Mirza Pir Moheined, with three  
 hundred men of the regiment of Sama Aglen,  
 whose captain was Yarek Agull: to whom he  
 join'd four hundred deserters of the Uzbeks. He  
 gave the government of Irjeh and Schenontan to  
 the Cheik Hassan, nephew of the Cheik Noured-  
 din. Timur at length departed to encamp at the  
 dome of the Cheik Mobarefchah.

The ninth of Regeb he went to Kormadge, April 4.  
 where the Cheik Ahmed Ougani, prince of that  
 place, had the honor to kiss his hand, being in-  
 troduc'd by the great Emir: but Timur was  
 not pleas'd with the entertainment he gave him:  
 for these mountaineers are neither acquainted  
 with civility, good-breeding, nor even the laws  
 of hospitality.

In the evening they went to encamp at Ac-  
 fica, where the Cheik Abdul gave the emperor

Book IV. as handsom an entertainment as he was able, with which he was very much pleas'd.

April 5.

The 10th of Regeb, Timur encamp'd in the defile of Rame, and the same day sent the doctor Nimet to prince Charoe to acquaint him with his arrival. The 11th they stop'd at a town, from whence they departed the same day at nine in the morning for Cabul, where Timur left the empress Tchelpin Mule Aga, with some troops, whose hurses and mules were exceedingly fatigu'd: he also left Mobacher there, to conduct 'em leisurely. At night Timur arriv'd at the mouth of Joui Neu, a canal very full of fish, which he had caus'd to be dug. The 12th he went to encamp at Garban; where he built a great hospital of brick, because several roads meet at this place, which was soon finish'd.

April 6.


The 13th the court pass'd the mountain and defile of Cheberto, and went to encamp in a plain at two leagues distance. The same day the emperor being struck by some evil eye\*, or malign influence, fell sick, and had on his feet and hands painful ulcers, which hinder'd his taking any repose, and retarded 'em a whole day's march: and because of this accident this place was call'd the dry and unfortunate camp. The night following an officer arriv'd from Herat from prince Charoe, with very agreeable news.

Timur departed from this place on the third day in a commodious litter carry'd by mules, he not being able to ride on horseback: and as his sickness yet increas'd, the officers

---

\* The Turks, as well as the Italians, are so superstitious as to believe that certain persons being innocents to every thing they look upon; and that their eyes are so venomous as to kill children. The Italians call this, *il cattivo occhio*, the evil eye.



of his chamber fasten'd leathern straps to the Chap. 31.  
poles fix'd to the litter, and so carry'd him by   
the bottom of the river in a very narrow passage  
of the mountain Siapoutch, which they were  
oblig'd to pass. From the beginning of this  
defile to the mountain they cross'd the river  
twenty-six times; and twenty-two times from  
the mountain to the end of the defile.

The 15th of Regeb, the domestics of the April 10.  
empresses Serai Mule Canum and Toulman Aga,  
and of the other ladys and children of the em-  
peror, arriv'd at Samarcand, where they made  
presents to his majesty, assuring him of the em-  
presses and princes health. Timur sent Co-  
luc Timur, an officer of Toulman Aga, to the  
baggage; to bring from thence the elephants.  
In the mean while his majesty's indisposition  
disquieted the whole court, till the 17th of Re- April 12.  
geb, when they cross'd the river of the defile,  
at which time it pleas'd God to restore him his  
health.

The 18th he went in a litter from Surab to-  
wards Bacalan, and encamp'd at the town of  
Aker, where he staid a little to refresh himself,  
and afterwards encamp'd at Cara Bouiac. The  
ladys of the Mirza Pir Mehemet, and of the  
Emir Gehan Chah, with the Emirs and chiefs  
of Bacalan, came to meet the emperor, and  
make their presents.

The 19th at ten in the morning he arriv'd at  
Semenecan, whence he departed the same day,  
to encamp at Gaznic. The 20th he march'd to  
Culm; and setting out from thence at noon, he  
arriv'd at the Gihon before Termed at midnight.

## C H A P. XXXIII.

*Timur crosses the Oxus, and is met by the  
princes and princesses of the blood.*

April 15.

THE 10th of Regeb, at nine in the morning, Timur having cross'd the Oxus in a boat, met on the other side the Mirza Oulou-bek, the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, the princess Beghisi Sultan his daughter, with the empresses Serai Mule Camm, Tekil Camm, and Toman Aga, accompany'd by all the princes, Mirzas, Emirs, lords and Cherifs of Samarcand, with others who came to meet his majesty, who gave 'em a handsome reception. This charming company, and especially the ladies, congratulated him on his conquests, and sprinkled over him so great a quantity of gold and precious stones, that it seem'd as if the sand had been transferr'd into 'em.

The court staid at Termed two days, where they were entertain'd with a sumptuous banquet by the great Cherif Alai Mule, who made several handsome presents.

April 18.

The 13d of Regeb the court went to the Kachlac of Gohar Mule; and the 14th to the bath of Turki: the 15th they pass'd the non-gate of Coluga, and encamp'd at the river of Baric. The 16th they encamp'd at Tchekedalic; the 17th at Konzimondac; and the 18th they arriv'd at Dourbildgm, where the Mirza Charac, who was come from Herat, had the honor to kiss the emperor's hands: he congratulated him upon his victorys, made him presents, and sprinkled upon him, according to custom,

custom, gold and precious stones. The great Chap. 33.  
conqueror most affectionately embrac'd his dear  
son, whom he tenderly lov'd, and loaded him  
with favors and honors.

At this place likewise the Mirza Omar, son  
of Miran Chah, whom Timur at his departure  
for the Indian war had left at Samarcand, had  
the honor to kiss his majesty's feet, who gave  
him a very kind reception, because of the love  
and care he had always shewn to his people,  
and the justice he had so exactly render'd.

On monday the 19th of Regeb, Timur went April 21.  
to encamp on the bank of a little river \* and \* Tamar.  
the 30th, in the delicious fields of Kech. He  
immediately went to pay his devotions at the  
tombs of the great Saints, Chamseddin Kolar,  
and others; and at length at that of his illustri-  
ous father, the Emir Tugai, of blessed memory:  
and then he visited those of his noble children.  
Here he staid fifteen days, giving alms to the  
poor of that country.

He departed from this place the 14th of Scha-  
ban, to encamp on the bank of the river of  
Roudac. The 15th he encamp'd at Tchenar  
Rehar, or the town of plane-trees: the 16th he  
pass'd the mountain, and encamp'd at Cotiocy-  
urt. \* The 17th he went to Taz Caratchah,  
which himself had built: \* and the 18th he en-  
camp'd at the Kiokh \* of Gehannuma. The 19th  
he arriv'd at the pleasure-house of Dolet-Abad:  
and monday the 20th, at nine in the morning,  
he came to the Kiokh of the garden of Dilen  
Chah, the palace of which had been lately  
finish'd: and to consecrate that palace to joy  
and pleasures, a royal banquet was prepar'd, at

\* Kiokh is a building in form of a cupola.



Book IV.

which the empresses, the emperor's children, the princes of the blood, the Emirs or dukes, and the Nevians and foreign princes, assisted. They cast so much gold and precious stones upon his majesty, to congratulate him on his victorys and happy arrival, that the earth seem'd sown with 'em, and all the officers were loaded with riches.

The 21st of Schaban, Timur made his entry into his capital city of Samarcand, where, after he had been at the baths, to make his ablutions, he went to visit the tomb of the venerable San-ton Farcadearam, son of Abbas; and there he gave presents to the officers belonging to this mausoleum: then he went to the hospital founded by the empress Toman Aga. After noon-prayer he honor'd with his presence the garden of pleasure, and the palace of Nakhidgahan, where he was diverted with feasts and plays. From thence he went to the delicious garden of Baghi Behicht, which is indeed a true paradise, as its name imports. Then he came to the palace of Baghi Bolend, at which place the elephants and baggage arriv'd. The inhabitants of Transoxians, who had never before seen any elephants, were surpris'd at these huge animals of such an extraordinary figure, and gave praise to the Almighty, whose works are incomprehensible.

The emperor distributed the curiosities and riches he had brought from India, among the princes of the blood, the Cherifs, and chief persons of the kingdom, according to their different rank and quality: among which were precious stones, gold, beautiful male and female Negroes.

Timur sent Sarenk, eldest brother of Mellou Can prince of Moultan, with two chains of elephants, and other curiosities, to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan. He made other presents to the  
Emirs

Emirs who had been left in Transoxiana, that every one might partake of the benefits of his conquests. Then he permitted his son prince Charac, to return to the seat of his kingdom of Corassana, after having loaded him with favors.

## CHAP. XXXIV.

### *Building of the great mosque of Samarcand.*

THE Alcoran expressly assures us, that the greatest proof of a prince's faith is his erecting temples to the honor of God: whereupon our conqueror, being persuaded that this work of piety wou'd be the crown of the victories he had acquit'd in his wars and Gazies against the infidels, where he had destroy'd the temples of the false gods, and exterminated the idolaters, resolv'd to build a great mosque in Samarcand, large enough to contain all the faithful of that capital city, when they shou'd assemble at Friday-prayers; and to this effect he issu'd out his orders for the foundations to be laid.

The architects chose a happy moment to begin it, viz. on the 4th of Ramadan 801, which answers to the year of the Hart, the moon being then in Leo, going out of the sextile aspect of the sun, and entering the sextile aspect of Venus. The masons, brought from foreign countrys, as mention'd before, gave the greatest proofs of their art and skill, as well in the solidity and beauty of the angles, as in the strength of the foundations of this noble edifice. In the initials of the mosque were employ'd two hundred artisan froms Azerbijana, Persia and India: five hun-

*Book IV.* hundred men likewise work'd in the mountains in cutting and hewing of stones, which were sent into the city. Several other artificers, of different trades, perform'd their parts with the utmost application. Ninety-five chains of elephants were made use of in drawing large stones with wheels and machines, according to the laws of mechanics. The princes of the blood and Emirs were appointed to oversee the workmen, that not one moment might be lost in finishing this stupendous building.

In the mean while the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who ordinarily resided at Andekan, on the frontier of Gete, arriv'd with a great attendance of officers. He had the honor to pay his respects to the emperor in the hospital of Touman Aga, where he made his presents, and sprinkled gold and precious stones upon his majesty, according to the custom of the Tartars, Moguls, and indeed of almost all the nations of the Turks. Timur embrac'd this young prince with all the tenderness that cou'd be expected from so good a father. He then went to visit the works; to animate the workmen by his presence; and he did not stir either from the college of Canan, which is near this mosque, or from the hospital of Touman Aga; at which places he distributed justice, sat in council, and decided the affairs of religion and of the state.

At length, under his conduct, this great edifice was finish'd. It contain'd four hundred eighty pillars of hewn stone, each seven cubits high. The arch'd roof was cover'd with marble, neatly carr'd and polish'd; and from the architrave of the entablature to the top of the roof were nine cubits. At each of the four corners of the mosque without was a Minaret\*. The doors were of brass: and the walls, as well within

\* A kind of temple.



without as within, as also the arches of the roof, were adorn'd with waiving in relieve, among which is the chapter of the cavern, and other parts of the Alcoran. The pulpit, and reading-desk, where the prayers for the emperor were read, were of the utmost magnificence: and the nich of the altar, cover'd with plates of iron gilt, was likewise of perfect beauty. Chap. 34.

After the month of Ramadan was past, and the feast of Baktam come, Timur went to the palace of Dilcu Chah, where he order'd preparations to be made for the most sumptuous banquets, and all sorts of plays and diversions. The empress Rokia Canica on this occasion gave a noble entertainment, accompany'd with comforts of music and fine dancing.

---

*The end of the fourth book.*

---

BOOK

## BOOK V.

*Two wars of Timur in Georgia. The conquest of Syria and Mesopotamia. The famous war with Bajazet the Ottoman emperor, who after the loss of a battle is taken prisoner, and dies in the Tartars camp.*

## CHAP. I.

*The causes which oblig'd Timur to make war in the country of Iran, that is, in the western parts of Asia, from the river Gihon to the Mediterranean sea.*

An. Dom.  
1199.

**I**N the autumn of the year of the Hegira 801, which answers to that of the Mouse, the Mirza Miran Chah \*, conducted by his evil destiny, went to take the diversion of hunting in the neighborhood of Fauris, where the tomb of Pir Omar Nasir Chirban is to be seen.

\* Son of Timur, and victor of Meiss, which is call'd by the Persians Anzabana. The great Mogul of India was descended from him.

He met a roe-buck, which he was desirous to take with his hands: but as he was stooping down to that purpose, he fell off his horse, tho' he was one of the best horsemen of Asia; and the violence of his fall cast him into a swoon, in which he lay a long time. All the lords of his court were extremely concern'd at it, and got round him to comfort him. He continu'd in this for three days and nights: and his physician, being an ignorant fellow, or rather a knave, which has since been most suspected, sail'd in the application of remedies; by which means this prince was seiz'd with a giddiness in his brain, which impair'd his senses. Thus this great man, who till that time had possess'd the throne of Hulacou, and of the kingdom of Azerbijana, with so much applause and glory, by the administration of justice and by his liberality, was depriv'd of his understanding. Upon a bare suspicion he slew a man; and prodigally squander'd away the treasures of the state, destroy'd the most noted buildings, and did many things contrary to the good sense and dignity of a prince.

One of his actions, which plainly discover'd the alteration of his judgment, was, that at the beginning of summer, he departed at the head of all his troops to besiege the city of Bagdad: he march'd day and night, going two days journey in twenty-four hours, imagining that the bare rumor of his approach would strike a terror into the heart of the Sultan, and make him abandon the city. But affairs took a quite different turn: for when Miran Chah was at the dome of Ibrahim Lie, he receiv'd advice from Tauris, that a great number of the principal men of the kingdom were confederated against him: which nevertheless did not hinder his progress to Bagdad. But the Sultan Ahmed, knowing it was

not



*Book V.* not a proper season to besiege the place, because of the great dryness and heat of the weather, resolv'd to defend himself. In the mean while couriers came incessantly from Tauris with reiterated advice of the conspiracy, and even of the revolt of the principal inhabitants; so that the Mirza, two days after the arrival of the great standard before Bagdad, was constrain'd to return to Tauris with expedition: he was no sooner enter'd into that capital of Media, than he put all those to the sword who were accus'd of being in the conspiracy, of which number was the Cadi\*. During this autumn he suspected that the Chief Ali, prince of Chaki, of the tribe of Lersar, wou'd revolt from his obedience: for which cause, without examining into the truth of it, he march'd into the field at the head of his army, and went to pillage his country.

\* The  
only.

When the Georgians, who by their acts of hostility had already drawn on themselves Timur's anger, were inform'd of the Mirza Miran Chah's small application to public affairs, they became so insolent, that during Timur's expedition in India they revolted. At the same time the Sultan Taber, son of the Sultan of Bagdad, was with his troops in the fortress of Alengic, which had been besieg'd a long time, according to Timur's orders, by the Sultan Sendger, son of Hadgi Saifeddin\*. The besiegers, the better to carry on the siege, had built a great wall round the place, so that no one cou'd get in or out. This conjuncture caus'd the Georgians to get together a great number of troops: and even the Chief Ali, tho a good Mussulman,

\* An old general of Timur's army, and his favourite, who had married him ever since the beginning of his life.

join'd these infidels, to revenge himself for the Chap. 1.  
 Mirza Miran Chah's having pillag'd his country. The Georgians came before Alengic with a great army, being resolv'd to deliver the Sultan Taher, who had been so press'd, that his heart, as one may say, was in his mouth; and entering Azerbijana, they sack'd the country, pillag'd the Mussulmans effects, and committed all imaginable disorders.

Sultan Sendger, on advice of this, rais'd the siege, and march'd to Tauris to give an account of this strange accident to Miran Chah, who immediately order'd his son the Mirza Aboubecre to march with four or five Easies before Alengic, to repulse the Georgians, and put a stop to their disorders, which they cou'd not do with so much expedition, but that the Georgians got first to the place, from whence having made the Sultan Taher go out, they plac'd Alengic in the hands of Hadgi Saleh, and three famous Ornaours<sup>1</sup> of Georgia, and then return'd home, their design being only to deliver the Sultan Taher. Yet by chance they met the army of Tauris, which being far less numerous, endeavor'd to avoid 'em, but that being impossible, the Ornaours resolutely advanc'd as if assur'd of the victory: at the first onset they broke thro' the wings of the army of Tauris; and the Cherif Ali, perceiving Aboubecre, rush'd upon him out of the main body sword in hand, to revenge the ruin his father had brought upon his country: but this young prince, who was but eighteen years old, kept his ground, and let fly an arrow of walnut-wood against the

<sup>1</sup> The Ornaours are the principal lords of Georgia, as the Easies and Miras are with the Persians and Tatars.

*Book V.* Cherif, with so much skill, that he struck him near the collar of his helmet of gold, which he pierc'd, and the arrow stuck in his neck; so that the rash Cherif fell down dead on a sudden. This vigorous action of the young prince did not hinder the Georgians gaining the victory; for they totally defeated the army of Tauris, and then return'd into their own country, while the Mirza Aboubecre sav'd himself by flight.

These melancholy events were the consequences of the Mirza Miran Chah's being lunatic; which yet appear'd in a more shameful manner in his excesses and debauches; for he employ'd almost all his time in drinking and gaming. And as one vice is always attended by another, he fell into greater extravagances. As he was one day in conversation with his wife the princess Canzade, he reproach'd her with a fact which wounded her honor, with which this chaste princess was so sensibly touch'd, that she us'd all her endeavors to discover the source of this calumny; in which search the lives of several men and women were sacrific'd; and even the Mirza's Visier, Dolet Coja Elnac, was oblig'd to fly with his wife to Beyan Couchin at Rei, leaving all he had got during the time of his misadventure to be plunder'd. The aversion of the Mirza and Canzade so far increas'd, that the princess, being highly incens'd, was oblig'd to go to Samarcand, where she arriv'd just as Timur return'd from the Indian war, and had begun to take some recreation after the fatigues of that expedition, and inform himself of the present affairs of the empire. This was a favorable time for the princess to be reveng'd; for Timur had been already inform'd of the many disorders committed in the kingdom of Iran, and especially in Azerbijana, thro' the ill conduct of the Mirza.



Mirza, Cautious at her arrival had the honor to lift the imperial carpet in the halls of palaces, where she acquainted his majesty with her husband's disloyalty, assuring him that if he did not march towards that kingdom, the Mirza would not fail of revolting. Since he now made flight of the imperial mandates and prohibitions, and had squander'd away the treasures of Aserbajana in debauches and prodigality.

These reasons oblig'd Timur, before he had repos'd himself after the fatigues of the last campaign, from which he had not return'd above four months, to take up a resolution to carry his arms into the countrys of Iran, to put a stop to the disorders which had crept in there, to succour the weak, curb the insolent, and deliver those who were fallen under the weight of injustice and tyranny.

## C H A P. II.

*Timur's departure for a campaign of seven years.*

**T**IMUR, to whom the universal empire of Asia was destin'd, was no sooner on his return from India, where he had suffer'd the fatigues of a tiresome war with the infidels for a whole year, than he resolv'd to march towards the western parts of Asia, for the reasons given in the preceding chapter. The emperor immediately sent messengers into all the provinces, with orders for the officers of the army to assemble their troops, as well cavalry as infantry, for a campaign of seven years, and repair immediately to court to receive his

Book V. majesty's orders. Timur sent to Herat three Emirs of the court of the Mirza Charoc, to signify to that prince that he must march into Azerbaijan at the head of the troops of Corassana, and \* Charoc's that the Emir Solyman Chah \* should go before Villet. at the head of the vanguard to Tauris.

The Mirza Charoc having learnt the emperor's will from the Emirs, employ'd himself in getting ready the army of Corassana; and the Emir Solyman Chah departed at the same time with the Seld Coja, whom Timur had sent. As soon as the troops were assembled, the Mirza at their head took the road to Bellam and Dangan. When he was arriv'd at Jadgerou, he met Toukel Carcara, who was come from the imperial camp, which had already cross'd the Gihon, and who brought orders for the army of Corassana to take the road to Chasiman, Eserabad, and Sari, because the imperial army must pass by Bellam and Dangan. Whereupon the Mirza turn'd towards Chasiman; but many of his horses perish'd in their march, as well by reason of the difficulty of the ways, as for that the roads were full of poisonous herbs: and after a tedious journey he arriv'd at Firouzcogh. Timur before his departure gave the government of all the country of Touran to the Mirza Melsomed Sultan, whom he left at Samarcand, the seat of this great empire. He fix'd several Emirs in employments near the Mirza's person, whose business was to defend the frontiers; and he gave the government of Andecan to the Mirza Eshtender, to whom he entrusted the care of the limits of Turkestan. At length, recommending himself to God, he order'd the great imperial standard to be brought into the field: and at the beginning of autumn, the eighth of Muharrem 802, which answers to the year of the Hare,

this great conqueror departed for a campaign of Chap. 2.  
 seven years; the date of which day is found in  
 the letters of Pâch Carib, which signifies, easy  
 conquest. Timur went directly to encamp at  
 Caratoupa, which mountain he afterwards  
 pass'd, and went down to Kech, where he vi-  
 sited the tombs of the prince his father, and of  
 the Chirik Chamfeddin Kedar: here he distri-  
 buted alms, and then went to Termed, where  
 he did the same in the tombs of the Cherifs, as  
 well as in that of Coja Mehemed Ali, the great  
 philosopher of Termed, and in that of the  
 illustrious Aboubecr Verrac, and other famous  
 Sannons, imploring their intercession with God  
 for the good success of his arms.

He cross'd the Gihon, and went down to  
 Bale, where he encamp'd in a meadow situate  
 at the foot of the fortrefs of Hendouan: he  
 likewise visited at Bale the tombs of these holy  
 men, Coja Okia Chah, Coja Rommane, Sultan  
 Ahmed Kexrouye, Fdailayaz, Sehan Thazouri,  
 and others, whose assistance he besought: and  
 he did the Emir Yadghiar Berlas, governor of  
 Bale, the honor to lodge in his house. This  
 Emir was not wanting in performing his devoirs,  
 as well in sprinkling gold and precious stones  
 at the emperor's feet, as in preparing for him a  
 magnificent banquet and presents, and giving  
 him all the marks of a profound respect and per-  
 fect obedience. Timur departed from Bale, and  
 after several days march, came to Sarek Camich  
 Dgizan, where he was join'd by the Mirza Cha-  
 roc's household, and by the princesses Melket  
 Aga \*, and Ghioher Chad Aga \*, with their  
 children, who came from Herat.

The emperor took pleasure in seeing 'em, and  
 receiv'd their presents, and the precious stones  
 they sprinkled on him, with so much the more



Book V. satisfaction, in that they presented to him the  
 young Mirza Siorgatzich, who was born of  
 Messer Aga but four months before, under the  
 ascendant of Virgo, the eighth of Ramadan  
 901. The emperor was tenderly affected at the  
 sight of the Mirza his grandson, whom he load-  
 ed with blessings.

The Emir Acbonga came to the same place to  
 pay his respects to his majesty, making presents,  
 and sprinkling precious incense at his feet. The  
 emperor gave him a handsome reception, with a  
 vest, and permitted him to return to Herat.  
 Then he went to visit the tomb of the celebra-  
 ted Musli Ahmed Dgiam, where he distributed  
 alms as usual, to imply to the protection of this  
 famous Saint: and from thence he sent the  
 Mirza Roustem to his eldest brother the Mirza  
 Pir Mehemet at Chiraz, with orders that these  
 two brothers shou'd march together towards  
 Bagdad: and he commanded the Emir Sevindgie  
 to accompany him with a thousand horse. Ti-  
 mur then took the diversion of the chase in the  
 plains of Khergherd and Feragherd, where in  
 two days they slew an excessive number of  
 beasts: and afterwards he continu'd his road  
 by Nichabour and Belsam, and distributed sac-  
 rifice and ammunition among the troops: he  
 pass'd by the province of Rei and Khovar;  
 and being encamp'd at the town of Aivanic, he  
 was join'd by the Mirza Charot, who according  
 to his instructions had march'd by the road of  
 Mazendran.

## C H A P. III.

*The transactions of the Emir Solymán Chah.*

THE Emir Solymán Chah, who had taken the road to Tauris with the vanguard, being arriv'd at Rei, heard from Deyan Couchin, governor of that town, of the Mirza Miran Chah's being limited: whereupon, not trusting himself secure if he should go to wait upon this prince, he resolv'd to march to Hamadan. But the Mirza Aboubekr Laring, in a council with his father's Eunuch, they consented to write a letter to Solymán Chah, in which they invited him to come to Tauris, assuring him that he should receive all manner of satisfaction. On this promise the Eunuch went there, and with so much conduct wrought upon Miran Chah, that he persuaded him to set out two days after to meet the emperor, with a numerous retinue; while the Mirza Aboubekr gave this brave Emir a magnificent entertainment in the meadows of Comtous, without the city of Tauris; honoring him with a suit, and making him a present of several fine horses, to gain his good-will: as he did also Seid Caza, who accompanied the Emir Solymán Chah: and then they went together to Chehriz. When Timur had pass'd by Chehriz, the Mirza Miran Chah arriv'd at the imperial camp; but he could not obtain audience till the next day. The same day a messenger, nam'd Aman, arriv'd from Chiraz, and offer'd presents to Timur from the Mirza Omar Cheik: he had a handsome reception, and the honor to kiss the imperial carpet. Next

Book V. day the Mirza Miran Chah had also the honor to kiss the emperor's feet: he offer'd his presents on his knees; but he was not receiv'd by the emperor with any tokens of kindness, because of the faults he had committed. Then Timur sent to Tauris before the rest, Timur Coja son of Arbouga, and \*Golelellam, to carry information of the department of Miran Chah. These two commissarys, at their arrival there, caus'd the principal officers and lieutenants of this Mirza to be seiz'd and bound, and the registers of the Divan to be brought to 'em. And whereas the Mirza had squander'd away two parts of the revenues for four years belonging to the Divan, these commissarys wou'd not pass his accounts for the same. But as information was given the court, that the principal cause of the disorder of the province came from the Mirza's excesses, and he was buoy'd up in this evil passion by the instigation of certain profligate musicians, and others, who made it their business to excite him to pleasures and drunkenness; that these parasites never stir'd from the prince's person, but took care to furnish him with new subjects for debauches; the emperor issu'd out an order that they shou'd be all hang'd, not excepting one man, to serve for an example to others. Thus all the Mirza's favorites were seiz'd; and even the most ingenious men, who were of that number, were not spar'd, but serv'd as a warning to others; as the incomparable Moulana Mehmed Couhellani, so famous for all sciences, and so celebrated a poet: whose conversation and agreeable wit had render'd him the wonder of his age.

Timur, at his arrival at Soltania, gave audience to Muzaffer of Nerouze \*, who came

\* A town near Cachen.



from Ispahan; and presenting to Timur jewels Chap. 3.  
 and precious vessels, he kiss'd the imperial carpet. Timur continu'd his march towards Carabagh,  
 by the way of Caraderra and Ardebil: he  
 hunted in the plains of Moucam' and Aftam',  
 and encamp'd on the banks of the Arzua', which  
 he cross'd the next day upon a bridge of boats,  
 and went to Carabagh Arran. He distributed  
 the winter-quarters among his troops, which  
 were to be in the neighbourhood of Coutour-  
 kint, where the hord and lordship of Qazartaban  
 lay. At Carabagh the Mirza Aboubecre, and  
 the Emir Solyman Chah, had the honor to pay  
 their respects to the emperor; and all the Emirs  
 and chief lords of Miran Chah's court, and the  
 generals of his army, made their presents to his  
 majesty, according to their ability.

We have already related how the Cherif Ali  
 king of Chichu, of the hord of Erlar, had join'd  
 the Georgian army; that he came with 'em to  
 the gates of Alengic, and lost his life by the  
 hands of the young Mirza Aboubecre, son of  
 the Mirza Miran Chah. Since that time, his  
 son, the Cherif Sidi Ahmed, who had taken up-  
 on him the reins of government, fell into an ex-  
 treme inquietude, fearing lest his father's fault  
 shou'd justly draw upon him Timur's vengeance;  
 this reflection oblig'd him to seek the protec-  
 tion of the Emir Choik Ibrahim, king of Chir-  
 van, and to fly to him for refuge, because this  
 Emir was honor'd with Timur's particular favor,  
 who lov'd him because of his sincerity, and dis-  
 tinguish'd him among his greatest officers.  
 Wherefore this king of Chirvan, relying entire-

\* Towns of Azerbijan.

\* A city frontier of Azerbijan and Arran.

Book V. ly on the emperor's goodness, carry'd the Cherif  
 to the foot of the throne, designing to beg par-  
 don for him, and procure him the honour to lift  
 the imperial carpet. In effect, Sidi Ahmed kiss'd  
 the ground with a profound submission, and the  
 Cherk Ibrahim ask'd pardon for his faults. The  
 emperor full of clemency was willing to give  
 him that mark of his affection; and not only par-  
 don'd the Cherif on his account, but even gave  
 him a handsome reception, and moreover con-  
 firm'd him in the principality of Cherk, which  
 the Cherif Ali his father formerly possess'd.  
 The Cherk Ibrahim, in quality of king of Chir-  
 van, paid also his particular respects; and to re-  
 lish his joy at the emperor's coming into his  
 country, he prepar'd great banquets, and rais'd  
 so great a number of horses and sheep to be slain,  
 that all the cooks in the court were not sufficient  
 to dress 'em. Besides this banquet, he enter-  
 tain'd the court with all other pleasures, which  
 usually accompany any famous feasts; and after-  
 wards he offer'd his presents, which consisted  
 of curious animals, beautiful boys and girls, si-  
 ver, stuffs, belts of gold set with precious stones,  
 several sorts of curiosities and other arms; and  
 lastly, six thousand horses of great price and  
 beauty.

---

#### C H A P. IV.

*The arrival of good news from several parts.*

**D**URING these transactions, advices were  
 brought from all parts, which were very  
 advantageous to us: among the rest we were  
 inform'd of the death of Timur Coctuc Aglan,  
 who

who having fled for refuge to Timur, after the defeat and ruin of Tocatmich Can, had thro the protection of Timur been establish'd on the throne of the Cans of Capchac, and the empire of Touchi: and yet forgetful of all the favors he had receiv'd from Timur, thro an imparall'd ingratitude, had revolted, and declar'd war against him: they had advice, Hay, of the death of this ungrateful prince, as also of the miserable state of the kingdom of Capchac from seditions and intestine wars.

Chap. 4.  
~~~~~  
Death of the grand Can of Capchac.

At the same time we also heard that Malek Farrukh Barcoe, king of Egypt and Syria, had pass'd from this world into the other: that discord having crept among the Emirs and Mamluks, the affair had ended in a civil war, in which several of the principal Emirs had been massacred: that Farrudge, son of Barcoe, who was declar'd heir and successor to the kingdom, had neither credit nor authority: and, that the kingdoms of Egypt and Syria were entirely fallen into disorder.

Death of the Sultan of Egypt.

There came also advice, that Tangout Can, emperor of China, where he had reign'd a long time, professing idolatry, was dead: and that the Chinese who had revolted, had caus'd great confusion in that empire.

Death of the emperor of China.

They also learnt that Kezre Coja Agien, king of Gere, had paid the tribute to the angel H-rak: and that after his death dissensions arose among his four sons, Chamadgehan, Mehamed Agien, Chirali, and Chadgehan, thro the motions of some seditious people.

Death of the king of Gere.

The same day they also heard that the Mirza Eshender, son of Omar Cheik, was departed from Andrecan at the head of his Emirs and army, and had enter'd Mogolistan, where, thro Timur's good fortune, he had gain'd the advan-

tage



Book V. rage over the Moguls, whom he utterly de-  
 feated.

These advices, which were of so great importance to the designs of our conqueror, arriving the same day, fill'd the hearts of all the emperor's faithful servants with joy.

As the affair of the Mirza Eskender is of such great consequence, we have thought proper to give the reader a detail of it. Dissension having crept in among the people of Gete<sup>a</sup> after the death of Kezre Coja Agien, the Mirza Eskender laid hold on this favorable opportunity, and got together the troops of Andecan; and tho' he was but fifteen years old, he put himself at their head, accompany'd by the Emirs of his court, and by those who in compliance with Timur's orders, guarded the frontiers of Gete; and boldly enter'd into the lands of the Mogols.

When he was come near to Cachgar<sup>b</sup>, and the Emirs had join'd him, they advanc'd all together to pillage and ravage the town of Yarkent<sup>c</sup>: then they march'd on farther, and did the same to Sarel Camich, Kelapino, Alighenil, Yar Courgan, Tchiatric, and Keione Bagh<sup>d</sup>: they at length arriv'd at the provinces of Aumège in Mogolistan, and almost all the people, whose hords were in those quarters, came to meet 'em with submission and obedience. They took these prisoners who refus'd to obey, and carry'd 'em with 'em towards the citadel of Acsen, which they besieg'd, and with great difficulty made themselves masters of it. This citadel consists of

<sup>a</sup> The author seems to make no difference between the Gotes and the Mogols, either because the action is the same, or that the Mogols at that time inhabited the country of Gete.

<sup>b</sup> Capital of Turkestan.

<sup>c</sup> Town of Gete.

<sup>d</sup> All parts of Mogolistan.

three castles, which have a communication with Chap. 4.  
 one another, and is esteem'd so strong, that the  
 inhabitants of all the neighboring provinces  
 consider it as a sure asylum in time of war. The  
 Mirza soon encamp'd with his Emirs without the  
 place; and being prepar'd to attack it vigo-  
 rously with instruments for sapping the walls,  
 scaling-ladders, battering-rams, and other ma-  
 chines, he caus'd several assaults to be given  
 immediately after one another, for near forty  
 days, when the besieg'd were oblig'd to surren-  
 der: to which purpose they sent presents to the  
 Mirza, and made several very rich Chinese mer-  
 chants go out of the place, who had been shut  
 up there with their effects. Then the Mirza  
 sent men to make inroads at Bai and Crausan;  
 the former of which is a cool place fit for the  
 summer, and the latter a warm place proper for  
 winter. The scouts pillag'd these two towns,  
 and brought away captive the princess Hadgi  
 Melik Aga, wife of the Emir Kezre Chah, and  
 her daughter Han Melik, with other ladies. At  
 length they went to pillage the town of Taram,  
 whence they brought the inhabitants away pri-  
 soners.

After these conquests the Mirza Extender de-  
 parted from Afsou for Cotan \*, one hundred and  
 fifty seven days journey from Cambalee \*, capi-  
 tal of the northern China, call'd Catai, which \* Peking,  
 is a flourishing and populous country, with abun-  
 dance of water: for we count from Cotan to  
 Cara Coja thirty-five days journey; from thence  
 to Terczul, frontier of China, thirty-one days  
 journey, where there is a wall situate between two The Ch.  
 mountains, in which wall is a great gate, and wall

\* Capital of a kingdom of the same name.

Book V. several Yam Canes, or Inns to lodge passengers, and several soldiers are always at this place to guard the frontiers and entrance of the wall. From hence to Ghendgian Fou, a city of China, is fifty-one days journey; and thirty from that place to Cambalge. It is also forty from Ghendgian Fou to Nenuai. We are assur'd there is another road, by which to go from Cotan to the frontiers of China in forty days; but there is not one dwelling-place in it, the sands make it very tiresome; and tho' the water, which is drawn out of the wells in its deserts, is easily come at, yet in several places it is venomous, and kills the animals which drink of it: and what is very surprising, out of two wells at a small distance from each other, the water of one is poisonous, and the other perfectly good. From Cotan to Cachgar is fifteen days journey, and from Cachgar to Samarcand twenty-five. In Cotan are two rivers, Orackach, and Caracach, the stones of which being jasper, are carry'd to other countries. These two rivers have their source in the mountain of Gasingoutac.

To return to our subject: at the Mirza Eschender's arrival at Cotan, the inhabitants came out to salute him, and bring him presents; and he behav'd himself with so much moderation, that all the places and castles of this frontier-province were reduc'd to the emperor's obedience. He at length departed from Cotan, and came to Casingoutac, a very steep and rugged mountain into which the inhabitants of Cotan and the neighboring places fly for refuge in time of war. When the Mirza was fully inform'd of the strength and inaccessibility of Casingoutac, he did not judge it convenient to hazard his troops there, but chose rather to return, and spend the winter at Cachgar. He chose two



companies of Mogul young women; the most beautiful of Coan, nine in each company, whom he sent as a present to the emperor by the Chieik Yefroul: he likewise sent by the same person nine young women and nine horses to the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who being extremely incens'd against him, refus'd his presents.

The reason of this discord was as follows: the Mirza Melmued Sultan was come into Turkestan with an army to join the Mirza Eskender, and go with him to the war against the Gizes; but Eskender, instead of waiting for him as he ought, went before, and march'd directly into Mogulistan, that he might not serve under Mehemet Sultan. This excited Mehemet's hatred, so that he wou'd not accept of his presents: and he return'd to Samarcand with his army, without putting any designs in execution.

When spring was come, the Mirza Eskender return'd to Andecan, from whence he took the road to Samarcand, to visit Mehemet Sultan; but he learn'd at the mountain Achioteb, that the Mirza being highly incens'd against him, had a design to seize him. This advice made Eskender jealous; so he return'd to Andecan, and enter'd the castle: but the Emirs, Pir Mehemet, son of Tagi Bouga, and Pir Hadgi son of Melik, tax'd him with a design to revolt. They assembled the militia of Andecan, and besieg'd the castle, upon which the Mirza Eskender came out, and went to lodge in a garden built by the Mirza Omar Chieik, after having confer'd with 'em with a deal of good-nature. Then the Emirs seiz'd his domesticks, and bound 'em; of which they sent advice to the Mirza Melmued Sultan at Samarcand, as also of Eskender's entering the castle, and design to revolt. Mehemet Sultan dispatch'd an express to bring Eskender to Samar-

Book V. Samarcand, with the officers of his household. They deliver'd this prince to him at the bank of the river of Couhee; and having bound him, they put to death his Arabec\*, Boyan Timur, son of Bikidgek, with twenty-six of his domestics.

## CHAP. V.

*Timur marches into Georgia, and to the desile of Comcha.*

**T**IMUR designing to carry his arms into Georgia, in obedience to the precept of the Alcoran, which teaches us to wage war upon all who disbelieve the mussulman religion, he began to make preparations from the winter of 801, being then encamp'd at Carabagh Arran.

An. Dom.  
1395.

He gave a rest to the Cheik Ibrahim of Chirvan, and another to Sidi Ahmed of Cheli; and after having loaded 'em with his favors, he permitted 'em to return home. He chose three men out of every ten to serve as scouts, whom he order'd to take victuals for ten days; and he commanded the baggage and rest of the army to stay in this place. He went to join these scouts with the Mirzas his sons; and being arriv'd at the river of Cyrus\*, he cross'd it with his troops on a bridge of boats. Soon after he was join'd by the Cheik Ibrahim of Chirvan, and Sidi Ahmed, prince of Cheli, who came to follow the court.

\* Abec.

\* Arabec is a prince's governor.

The imperial army pass'd by Cheki<sup>a</sup>, and took Chap. 3.  
 the road to the defile of Comcha<sup>b</sup>, where the  
 infidels dwell: and as this defile was full of  
 thick woods, the trees of which were very close-  
 ly interwoven with one another, the soldiers had  
 orders to cut 'em down to facilitate their passage.  
 Accordingly they made a road with their axes  
 and saws ten days journey in length, and broad  
 enough for five or six companys to march in  
 front. At that time it snow'd exceedingly for  
 twenty days together; but that cou'd not hin-  
 der Timur from arriving with his army in  
 Georgia. Our men made the great cry, *Allah Ec-  
 ler*, and fell upon the enemy with so much fury,  
 that the surface of the mountain which the snows  
 had before render'd white, with the blood of these  
 infidels became as red as fields sown with tulips;  
 and no quarter was given to any they met. Com-  
 cha the chief of these infidels, who disbelieve  
 any future judgment, was oblig'd to abandon  
 his effects and family, and fly. Our soldiers pur-  
 su'd him as far as the defile of Afsen, and re-  
 turn'd with a great many oxen, sheep, and other  
 cattle. After Comcha's flight, and retreating  
 into the woods, they set fire to his houses, and  
 pillag'd and ruin'd all his villages. And as  
 wine was absolutely necessary for this people,  
 their men, women, and little children being so  
 accusom'd to it, that when they were on their  
 death-bed, they entreated that some might be  
 buried in their sepulchres with 'em, and order'd  
 by their wills that after their deaths their bodies  
 shou'd be wash'd with wine, and their coffins  
 made with vine-tree: for this consideration,

<sup>a</sup> A town on the South frontiers of Georgia near the Elaspis.

<sup>b</sup> A defile in Georgia, belonging to prince Comcha.



Book V. that they might do 'em the more damage, and  
 ~~~~~ entirely ruin 'em, the vine-trees were distributed  
 among the troops, who rooted up all of 'em, which they had with so great difficulty cultivated: they also cut down the other trees, and peel'd several. They afterwards raz'd the great edifices of this country, and especially the temples, where they paid their adorations, which were so disagreeable to God. And what is remarkable is, that in the winter of the preceding year, which was that of the Leopard, Timur destroy'd the Guebres of India, and ruin'd their temples at Deli, and upon the Ganges; and that this winter, which was the year of the Hare, he was carrying on the same war of religion in Georgia, and razing the temples of the Georgians. The poet says, that he had one foot on the eastern frontiers of India, and the other upon the western limits of the country of Arran.

## C H A P. VI.

*Timur's return from the desile of Comcha.*

TIMUR staid near a month in this desile; and his soldiers had made themselves masters of all the mountains, after having slain an infinite number of brave Osmans, whose prince Comcha was retir'd to so great a distance, that no advice cou'd be got of the place he was in: and the enemy's country was entirely ruin'd: besides all this, the cold was very violent, and the ways were clog'd up with snow, so that the horses had nothing to eat but the barks of trees, and even several of 'em died with hunger.

Where-

Whereupon Timur resolv'd to return, he repass'd Chap. 6.  
the river of Cyrus, and came back with glory to  
Carahagh, where he enter'd his imperial tent  
with the acclamations of all the lords and prin-  
ces of his court. The joy at his presence was  
augmented by the birth of a son to the Mirza  
Calil Sultan: this young prince was nam'd He-  
kul: and several days were spent in sprinkling  
gold and precious stones upon him: they had  
banquets and plays, accompany'd with music,  
to celebrate this happy birth. Soon after a se-  
vere order was issu'd out, for prosecuting those  
in a council of war, who had not behav'd them-  
selves as they ought in the battle fought by the  
Mirza Miran Chah against the Georgians, in the  
neighbourhood of Alengie. The Mirza Curoc  
was commission'd to see to the putting this or-  
der in execution: who having examin'd all the  
facts, in council with the Emirs of the Divan,  
they presented a memorial to the emperor, with  
the several interrogatories, informations and  
proofs: upon which Timur order'd the punish-  
ment due by the laws of Gengiz Can to be ex-  
ecuted. The bastinado was given to Haagi  
Abdalla Abbas, and Mehemed Calsan: Yumpe  
Harnai Aperi, who had fled first, was order'd  
to be put to death: but the Chah's Ladies, or  
emperor's children, obtain'd the favour of his  
being reprier'd after the bastinado before he  
was beheaded; and each of these three lords was fin'd  
thirty horses. They also fin'd the principal of-  
ficers of the Mirza Miran Chah, some at fifty,  
some at two hundred, and some at three hundred  
horses; which horses were distributed among  
the foot-soldiers.

Timur bestow'd many favors and honors on  
the Mirza Abouderre, because of the valor he  
had shewn in the fight, when he captur'd Sidi

Ali king of Chelki. At the same time the prince Barhan Aglen was likewise put to death, for having committed some considerable faults, very unworthy of his birth, in several skirmishes. His son was treated in the same manner; and his regiment, officers, and domestics were given to Roussem Foulad.

## C H A P. VII.

*Continuation of the history of the Mirza Roussem, who was gone from Dgiam to Chiraz. A great crime committed by his eldest brother, the Mirza Pir Mehemed.*

WE have said before that the emperor had sent the Mirza Roussem from Dgiam to Chiraz, and that he was accompany'd in his journey by the Emir Sevindgic at the head of two thousand horse. They happily arriv'd at Chiraz by the road of Yezd and Abreconh. The Mirza Pir Mehemed gave him a handsome reception, and a sumptuous banquet, in the garden of Carabagh\*, and presented him with a vest and a hundred thousand Dinars Copeghis. Some time after the Mirza Roussem, accompany'd by the Emir Sevindgic, his nephew Hassan Jandar, and Hassan Jagadaoul, who were at Chiraz, took the road to Bagdad, according to the emperor's order, and pass'd by Behbahan and Tollar; leav-

\* In Corassians remarks Bafulana: the same with Carabagh Dgiam.

\* A royal garden at Chiraz, different from Carabagh near Tania.



ing at Chiraz, to govern that city, the Emir Chap. 7.  
Said Berlas, and Abbek Aisa, a relation of the Emir Abbas, as Timur had commanded him. But the Mirza Mehmed, who had the same orders to depart at the head of this army, delay'd his departure, till a long time after; then pretending sickness, he return'd to Chiraz by Nobeugian in Chouleslan.

This did not deter the Mirza Roustem with his Emir from ravaging Lerasteret, in the country of Rzinhermez\*, from whence he brought a great quantity of booty: he made the same haste in passing by the village of the bridge, call'd Derfoul: he pillag'd in the plain of Dombat all the subjects of the princes Saki and Febli. From thence he went to plunder Bad† and Bacfa‡, whence he brought away several slaves; and in the month of Jumazilevel 802, he arriv'd at Mendeli§. The Emir Ali Calander, the governor of it for the Sultan of Bagdad, put himself in a posture of defence; but he being repuls'd at the first onset, they seiz'd on eleven of his men, whose heads they cut off, and then permitted the soldiers to pillage the place.

March  
1200.

In the mean while the Mirza Pir Mehomed, who under pretence of sickness had turn'd back, arriv'd at Chiraz, where by the instigation of certain Tadjicks, who had list'd themselves in his service, he fell into some extravagances: undertaking to compose poisons and laseinations, the designs of which he was utterly ignorant of. The Emir Said Berlas, governor of Chiraz, being inform'd of it by some of this young prince's servants, immediately made a strict search into

\* A town of Louslan, long 86. lat. 31.

† Town of Chuldra.

‡ A town of Arabia, dependent on Bagdad.


Book V. the matter, and learnt from his very officers the whole of it, even before the Mirza's face. Upon these incontestable proofs the Emir Said imprison'd Pir Mehemed in the inner towers, and lodg'd himself in the castle to guard him, leaving Alibec Aisa in the city to govern it in his stead; and he sent advice to court of what had pass'd at Chiraz. The messenger of the Emir Said gave an account of this to Timur in the winter-quarters at Carabagh, who immediately sent the Emir Allahdad to Chiraz, to prosecute those wicked Tadjics, who had taught the Mirza to make the poisons, that they might be put to death: he was likewise order'd to settle the Mirza Roustem upon the throne of Persia, in the room of his eldest brother, whom he was to bring bound to court. Accordingly the Emir Allahdad, at his arrival at Chiraz, put to death Moudana Mehmed Calife, Seid Dgerrah, and Roustem Corasani, who were convicted of having taught the Mirza how to compose the poisons; he caus'd Massaoui Couchtchi's legs and arms to be cut off: and put in irons Mobarez Goja, Muhib Cherberdar, and Cheik Zulei Ferid, who were accus'd of having been concern'd in the same crime. Allahdad then sent the emperor's letters-patent to the Mirza Roustem, in Irac-Arabi, by which he was install'd in the government of the kingdom of Persia. This prince receiv'd 'em at Mendoli, after he had gain'd the victory over Mir Ali Calmulek. As soon as he had read the emperor's orders, he departed for Chiraz: the Emirs Hassan Jandar and Hassan Jagadaoui, who accompany'd him, return'd back; and the Emir Serindgie took the road to Chepchemal, for Carabagh Arran, where the army lay then encamp'd.

Mir Ali Calander, who had fled from Mendel, being arriv'd at Bagdad, gave an account to the Sultan Ahmed, of what pass'd: this prince fell into a great inquietude, and order'd the gates to be shut, and the bridge of the city to be destroy'd.

About this time there happen'd a very remarkable affair, of great service to Timur. This monarch having given the government of Couristan to one nam'd Cherouan, this governor immediately gave himself up to the getting of money at any rate: he exacted great sums from Chamfeddin Dehdar, and other principal men of the country; he even put to death the governors of Haviza<sup>a</sup>; and what was worse than all this, he revolted, and with a thousand horse well-equip'd went to Bagdad, where he offer'd his services to Sultan Ahmed, who gave him a handsome reception, loading him with honors and caresses. Cherouan did not rest there; but endeavor'd to win over to him the Sultan's principal officers, and to that purpose secretly gave 'em considerable sums, from ten thousand to three hundred thousand Dinars of Bagdad. But it happen'd very unluckily to this traitor, that the memorandum of the sums paid to each of these lords was lost thro the negligence of his secretary, and fell into the hands of Cauri Behader, one of the Sultan's officers, who presented the note to his master, at a time when the affrighted Sultan had caus'd the gates of the town to be shut. This affair greatly increas'd his jealousy; and particularly a sum of ten thousand Dinars, set down to the name of Rase, whom the Sultan immediately caus'd to be arrested, and cut off

<sup>a</sup> A town in the province of Couristan, call'd also Almasa.



Book V.  his head with his own hand. In the mean while, as he had already sent Chetouan, with Coutoub Haideri, Mansour, and other Emirs, to ravage Oirat: he immediately dispatch'd Yadhgar Echiatchi, with orders to the Emirs to slay Chetouan; which was accordingly executed, and his head brought to Bagdad, where the Sultan in less than eight days put to death near two thousand of his officers. He sent to Vaser the lady Vesa Caroun, who had mur'd and educated Chetouan from his infancy; where she was smother'd by a pillow laid over her face. He slew with his own hand most part of the other ladies and officers of his household, whom he order'd to be cast into the Tigris: and afterwards he shut himself up in the Seraglio, not suffering any one to come to him; and even when the Bayerschis, or Stewards, brought him his dinner, they knock'd at the door, deliver'd in the dishes, and then return'd without entering. He spent several days after this manner, and then order'd six of his most faithful servants to convey secretly six horses out of his stable to the other side the Tigris, which river he cross'd one night in a boat, and with those six persons rode into the country subject to Cara Yousef prince of the Turcomans. In the mean while the Stewards, as usual, carry'd the king's dinner to the gate of the Seraglio, and deliver'd it to an officer who was in the secret, the people having no knowledge of the Sultan's absence. This prince join'd Cara Yousef, and persuaded him to come with his troops to pillage the town of Bagdad. When they were come there, he assign'd quarters on the other side of the water for the troops of Cara Yousef: the Sultan cross'd the river in a boat, and came to his palace; and he gave so much ready money, flints, arms, Arabian horses, gold

gold belts, and other riches, to Cara Yousef and his men, that those Turcomans were content with what they had got. The Sultan wou'd by no means permit 'em to insult the city; but as he very much fear'd being attack'd by the army of Zagatai, he sent out spys on all sides, who gave him a true information of the condition of Timur's affairs. Chap. 7.

In the month of Zillidjé 802, Timur being on his march to Sebasle, the Sultan of Bagdad imagin'd that if the formidable armys of this conqueror shou'd again enter Natolia and Syria, all the passages wou'd be block'd up, whilst he must be oblig'd to save himself by flight. He therefore resolv'd to leave Farrudge governor of the city of Bagdad, whence he design'd to go out with Cara Yousef, his wives and children, and his jewels, with whatever he cou'd carry away worth taking. So they cross'd the Euphrates, for Natolia; and being arriv'd at Aleppo, Temourtagh, who commanded there, came out with his Emirs to oppose his passage. A battel ensu'd: but those of Aleppo being defeated, the Sultan and the rest pursu'd their road, and came to Natolia. As they were on their march towards the city of Sebasle, capital of Roum, they were met by a party of Timur's army: but what pass'd between 'em we'll relate hereafter.

## C H A P. VIII.

*A diet in relation to the affair of Georgia*

AFTER winter was over, that is, in the beginning of the year of the Crocodile, Timur left his winter-quarters, at Carabagh. He assembled a diet, whereto the princes his sons, the Emirs, the lords and general officers did not fail of coming: he held a council with 'em, in which it was unanimously resolv'd that the war with the Infidels of Georgia was preferable to all others, as well for the good of religion, which ought to be the principal object of war, as for the increase of the power of monarchy, and the conjuncture of the present affairs. The usual feast was made after the diet; and the banquet, which was very sumptuous, was accompanied with all sorts of plays and pleasures. Timur, excited by a desire of liberality, distributed the treasures among the Chah Zades, his sons, the Emirs and all the soldiers of the army, and gave horses to those who were on foot. He afterwards inform'd himself of the roads and quarters of Georgia, where they shou'd encamp, and had 'em very exactly set down in writing; and then imploring the divine assistance, he departed from Carabagh, taking the road in Georgia, the country of Malek Ghourghin. In ten days he arriv'd at the plain of Berdaa, where he encamp'd, and gave audience to Taharten, prince of Arroudgian upon the Euphrates, who had already gain'd his majesty's favor by his good services. This prince kiss'd the earth before Timur; made a discourse in his praise,



ful of vows for his prosperity: and offer'd his Chap. 19  
 presence. Timur, being willing to distinguish him by very particular favors, not only gave him a vest, a cap and a belt, but he further honor'd him with a horse-tail, a standard, and two kettle-drums, which are the signs of sovereignty: and then he permitted him to return to Arzendjan, after having given him instructions concerning the application and care he ought to use in the government of the city in the present conjuncture: and expressly recommended to him to use circumspection to preserve his frontiers from the insults of the Ottomans; to which purpose he ought to be watchful, cautious, and liberal to his soldiers, and neglect nothing to protect himself from his enemy's artificers, who are very politic and dangerous.

Timur departed from Berdas, and after several days journey arriv'd at the frontiers of Georgia. He immediately dispatch'd an express to Malek Gheorghis, to send to the camp the prince Paber, son of Sultan Ahmed Gelair. The messenger acquitted himself of his commission: but the king of Georgia, Gheorghis, return'd him a very uncivil answer. The express came back without obtaining any thing, and gave an account to Timur of all that had pass'd in the audience. The rashness of this refusal kindled his wrath against these infidels: wherefore leaving the baggage, he went before, and order'd his troops to enter the lands of these Georgians, and to put every thing to fire and sword. The soldiers slew every one they met, ruin'd the houses of the Georgians, and even rooted up the trees: they destroy'd the vines, spoil'd the fruits, and brought a terrible desolation upon this country. The affrighted Georgians fled for refuge into their high mountains, where

*Book V.* where no one had ever yet conquer'd 'em; for here were fortify'd caverns, and houses upon craggy rocks, which it wou'd in vain to think any one cou'd enter by force of arms. They had entrench'd themselves in those places, and carry'd with 'em whatever they cou'd find worth taking. Timur's soldiers, without examining the dangers to which they were expos'd, and full of confidence in their prince's good fortune, ascended these mountains, and then laid themselves in buses, to which strong cords were fasten'd, and so were let down by their comrades from the tops of the mountains to the caverns of the Georgians; where discharging their arrows, they approach'd the enemy, and slew the most advance'd: then taking lances in one hand, and swords in the other, they enter'd the caverns, notwithstanding the vigorous resistance of the enemy, of whom they made a horrible slaughter. Among these craggy places there were some so well defended, that our men were oblig'd to call a great quantity of combustible matter, as well to dissipate the enemy, as to burn their wooden houses, and the entrenchments they had made. Thus by the assistance of heaven, tho' these infidels fought with all imaginable resolution, the musliman soldiers had the advantage over 'em, according to the promise of the Alcoran; taking fifteen noted places, on which they very much rely'd. Those who wou'd turn muslimans obtain'd quarter: but those who, thro' the temptation of the devil, stubbornly continu'd in the disbelief of the Alcoran, were beheaded.

Timur left several of the best troops of Corassana in the garrison of the city of Tetta, capital of Georgia, and then went to encamp in the plain of Moeran. The king Ghourghin being

being terrify'd at the success of the Mahommedans, fled into the deserts, and as a vagabond wander'd about the uninhabited mountains; but the greatest part of the Ormaours of Georgia, seeing themselves reduc'd to the utmost extremity, submitted: they came in a humble manner to the gate of the imperial pavilion, where they begg'd quarter and pardon of the victorious Timur, making divers excuses to avert his vengeance. When our troops had reduc'd this country, they raz'd the temples and monasteries, where the Georgians had for a long time exercis'd their religion; and erected ellappels and mosques, in which they proclaim'd the *Eam*<sup>1</sup>, and read the prayers of the musliman religion with the usual ceremony, to the glory of Timur.

## C H A P. IX.

*Timur marches against prince Jani Bec, a Georgian.*

AFTER the conquest and destruction of the country of Malek Ghicoghlin, Timur resolv'd to attack the other provinces of Georgia. He departed with expedition from the plain of Mooran, and leaving the baggage, march'd towards the defile of Jani Bec. When they were arriv'd there, the troops surrounded all the country, pillag'd it, and brought away a considerable booty. Jani Bec soon abandon'd

<sup>1</sup> *Eam* is the cry the Mahomedans make from the top of the minarets (or steeples) at their assemblies, to call the people to prayer.



Book V. his mountain and forts; and with an entire submission came before the emperor. In the mean while our soldiers ravag'd the villages, burnt the houses, and slew every one they met: they carry'd away the Georgians' effects; and while they enrich'd themselves in this world, they were laying up treasures of merit in the other. Afterwards they return'd to join the baggage; and Timur sent, by the way of Semave, the Scid Coja, son of the Cheik Ali Behander, to make incursions in other parts of Georgia: he order'd the Emir Geilan Chah to pass the defile with the troops of the left wing; and the main body, commanded by Timur, pass'd by Semave, where it was join'd by all the troops which were gone out to make incursions in the provinces, from whence they return'd laden with spoils, bringing away a great number of horses and sheep: and, to mortify the Georgians the more, our soldiers destroy'd all the standing corn, and ruin'd their temples and other edifices. At the mouth of the defile was a fortress nam'd Bil, which was very high and difficult of access: nevertheless our army was no sooner arriv'd there than they had orders to besiege it: and the siege and conquest of the place were almost perform'd at the same time. Having taken it, they raz'd it, lest it should be of use to the enemy on another occasion. From thence the army went to encamp in the most fertile Georgia: and Timur sent the Emirs into all parts in search of King Ghourghin, who, like wolves and chacals, wander'd as a vagabond in uninhabited woods and mountains: but not being able to find him, they return'd to join the imperial camp with a great quantity of spoils, and some of Ghourghin's officers whom they had taken. Timur at length decamp'd, cross'd the river of Cyrus, and happily encamp'd

camp'd on the other bank, loaded with good *Caupan*,  
fortune, and pleas'd with his victory.

## C H A P. X.

*The taking of the fort of Zerit, and the town  
of Samnit.*

**D**URING these translations, the *Spas* brought advice that a great number of *Qanaours* were retir'd into the castle of Zerit, situate on the ridge of a narrow mountain, which had never been taken by any conqueror. On this, Timur, to whom nothing appear'd impossible, march'd with expedition towards this place, and order'd it to be besieg'd. The machines and battering rams were got ready: and after several attacks necessary at a siege, a general assault was given seven days after Timur's arrival. The fort was taken sword in hand, and raz'd the same day, after putting all the Georgians to the sword. Then they went out to make inroads, and brought away a great number of prisoners bound, whom the emperor order'd to be put to death, because they wou'd not turn Mahometans. They afterwards receiv'd advice that king Ghourghin was in the town of Samnit. Timur order'd the roads to this town to be taken down in writing: and that the troops which were sent out to make inroads, shou'd return to the camp. He left one half of the army with the baggage: and with enlignes display'd march'd with the rest. But Ghourghin, who had his eyes about him, had advice of Timur's approach: he went out of Samnit,

Book V. *Suzmut*, and fled towards *Ablhaze* \*. The troops, at their arrival at *Suzmut*, carry'd it upon the first assault, and then went in pursuit of *Ghourghio*, several of whose officers they slew: but this prince, reduc'd to the greatest misery, cross'd the rivers of *Aigar* and *Corlan* †, and had the good fortune to save himself from the dangers wherewith he was surrounded. Then seeing himself, in a manner, ready for the slaughter, he found it was not far so weak a prince as himself to protect the son of the Sultan of *Bagdad*, against the powerful emperor *Timur*: whereupon he oblig'd *Taher* to seek an asylum in the country of the *Ottomans*, whither he had heard the Sultan *Ahmed* his father was likewise fled. At length *Gourghain* sent to the court of *Timur* an ambassador nam'd *Ismael*, who made known to him the great misery and extremity to which his master was reduc'd; deplo'r'd the ruin of his state, and destruction of his country; and with his face turn'd towards the ground, he spake thus to the emperor with all the submission that could be expected from a miserable and vanquish'd prince: " I have seen  
 " the evil success of the methods I have so un-  
 " fortunately taken; I have tasted the fruits of  
 " my imprudence, and the bitterness of the pu-  
 " nishment I have merited: but if the great  
 " emperor, whose generosity after victory, I  
 " may venture to say, surpasses the fury of his  
 " arms in battle, will take pity upon me, who  
 " am his servant, and confess my fault, and is  
 " willing to pardon me for what is past, and  
 " grant me my life, I will not only be intirely  
 " obedient to him, but my life shall always be

\* A town of Georgia on the frontiers of Circassia.

† Rivers of Capria.



"employ'd in his service. I will take great care  
 "not to hurt the Mussulmans in any manner;  
 "and moreover I consent to pay the annual tri-  
 "bute to the imperial treasury; likewise pro-  
 "mising to send what number of troops his ma-  
 "jesty shall order into his service, at the time  
 "appointed."

## C H A P. XI.

*Timur marches against the Georgian prince Aisani.*

**T**IMUR, upon hearing this discourse of  
 Ghourghin's ambassador, was touch'd  
 with the condition of this prince, and did not  
 doubt the truth of what he said; considering  
 the great misery and necessity to which he was  
 reduc'd, his sincere confession of his fault, and  
 his repentance for having dar'd to give protec-  
 tion to the Sultan Taher. These considerations,  
 join'd with the promises he had made, and con-  
 firm'd with an oath, to be always ready in the  
 emperor's service, and punctually to pay the an-  
 nual tribute, caus'd Timur to grant him the  
 pardon he demanded; who then went out of  
 his country, and march'd towards the lands sub-  
 ject to prince Aisani, one of the most power-  
 ful sovereigns of Georgia. The soldiers having  
 enter'd his country, ravag'd and pillag'd all they  
 met; and as there was no army to oppose 'em,  
 they dispers'd themselves up and down, ruining  
 the towns and castles, and destroying every  
 thing with fire and sword. After they had en-  
 tirely laid this country waste, they pass'd into  
 that of Caracalcanlic, the inhabitants of which,

Book V. which, arm'd with black bucklers, were skilful  
 mountaineers, and good horsemen. They were  
 not treated with more mildness than the others ;  
 for their country was ravag'd, and the places  
 raz'd whither they were retir'd, their houses  
 burnt, and themselves put to the sword, after  
 our soldiers had got what spoils they cou'd from  
 'em, which were very considerable.

---

## CHAP. XII.

### *Timur returns from Georgia.*

**T**IMUR being satisfy'd with the con-  
 quests he had gain'd, and having reveng'd  
 himself on the Georgians, gave orders for his  
 return. After several days march he encamp'd  
 at Yellac Menecoul; but having advice that the  
 enemy were again assembled in a place nam'd  
 Farasghard in Georgia, he sent the Emir Cheik  
 Nourreddin thither with his troops; and being  
 willing to be in person at the execution of all  
 important affairs, he decamp'd some days after,  
 and leaving the baggage, march'd to Farasghard.  
 In five days he made himself master of seven  
 fortresses of the Georgians, which he caus'd to  
 be raz'd, after having slain an infinite number  
 of these insidels; and from thence he return'd  
 with all his army to Menecoul, where he staid  
 several days.

About this time there came ambassadors from  
 an European prince, who brought with 'em the  
 son of the Emir Amurat, the Ottoman emperor,  
 whom they had taken prisoner: and by the in-  
 tercession of the principal Emirs of the court,  
 they were admitted into Timur's audience: to  
 whom they made known the high esteem their  
 master







maſter had conceiv'd his aſſions, and his deſire to enter into alliance with him, which he ſhon'd account great honor. Timur receiv'd the ambaſſis with all manner of civility, granted 'em at they deſir'd, and after having given 'em veſſels, diſmiſs'd 'em; and they return'd home by the way of Trebizond, pleas'd with the hon<sup>o</sup>r they had receiv'd at court. The army encamp'd two months in the meadow of Koul, that the horſes might have ſome reſt & their fatigue, and to wait the arrival of thiers and troops which were diſpers'd up and en the country.

## C A P. XIII.

*Reaſons which ig'd Timur to march againſt the city of Aſir, capital of Anatolia.*

**PHILOSOPHERS** tell us that the relation betwix a king and his kingdom is the ſame as betwix the ſoul and body; for when the ſoul and body reſonize in the rules of moderation, the body is in perfect health; but if the contrary happens, it is attack'd with diſtempers, and at length falls into corruption; and ſo when a king neglects to do juſtice, his kingdom falls into decay. This moral may with juſtice be apply'd to the caſe of the Ottoman emperor, and the Sultan of Egypt; for theſe two princes paſſing in their power, committed ſeveral violent actions, which drew upon 'em

\* Capital of the kingdom of the ſame name, in Anatolia, on the ſhore of the black ſea; long. 70. 30. lat. 42.

Doné V. Timur's anger, and caus'd the destruction of their country and the debolation of their subjects. Timur being irritated at their proceedings, tho' but newly return'd from a toilsom campaign, and notwithstanding the great distance of these Sultans dominions, did not fail of undertaking the conquest of their empires, which by the grace of God he brought into subjection, so that all the cities, towns and villages of these great countrys were pillag'd by his soldiers: which calamity was brought upon the poor innocent people thro' the bad conduct of their princes.

But to come to a particular detail of this history; we must know that Edurum \* Bajazet, surnam'd the Thunder, who was, then emperor of the Ottomans, surpass'd most of his predecessors in power, and the vastness of his dominions: he had brought into subjection a great part of the country of Roum \*, to wit, the provinces of Aidine, Menteche, Kermian, and Carmania, which his ancestors had never been able to do: and he had likewise extended his dominions the space of four months journey in Europe. After he had taken prisoner Cara Osman, son of the Cadi Barhaeddin, prince of Sebaste, and had put to death the Cadi, he brought an army into the field, and having made himself master of Sebaste, he push'd his conquests towards Malatia \*, a town on the Euphrates, and bordering upon the province of Aleppo. He even besieg'd and took the city of Malatia, which had been a long time dependent on Syria. He made the

\* Edurum signifies lightning or thunder.

\* Long. 71. lat. 37.



Emir Mustafa governor of Sebasie, to whose Chap. 14.  
 son he gave the government of Malatia. At  
 length, as if he cou'd find no one to dispute his  
 conquests, he return'd victorious and loaded  
 with spoils to the seat of his empire. He had  
 a great number of troops and officers belong-  
 ing to his household, and among the rest, near  
 twelve thousand dog-keepers. His magnifi-  
 cence, riches, and power, render'd him so proud,  
 that he forgot the sentence which teaches us,  
 that God, the creator of the universe, hath made  
 those who are superior to them who pride them-  
 selves in their strength. He had the boldness  
 to send an ambassador to Tacharten, to summon  
 him to his court, and send the tributes of Ar-  
 zendgian, Erzerden, and their dependences, to  
 his treasury; which order was in such haughty  
 terms, that it did not become him to use.  
 Tacharten sent advice of this to court: and  
 Timur was very much surpris'd at the design of  
 the Ottoman, who was not ignorant that Ta-  
 charten was under his protection: whereupon he  
 resolv'd to write a letter to him, to endeavor  
 to bring him to a sense of his fault by sweetness  
 and friendship.

---

#### C H A P. XIV.

*Timur's letter to the Caiser Ruum, that is, the  
 Ottoman emperor.*

**T**IMUR commanded a secretary to be  
 call'd to him, whom he order'd to write  
 a letter to Murrum Bajazet, mix'd with coun-  
 sels and reproaches, hoping by that means to  
 make him reflect upon what he had done. The  
 secretary began the letter in an eloquent manner,

Book V. with praises to God, and blessings on Mahomet  
 he made use of this passage of the Aleutan for the  
 subject of his letter, God bless those princes who  
 know what use they shou'd make of their power,  
 and go not beyond the bounds prescrib'd 'em, and he  
 continu'd it with expressions which were as dag-  
 gers to the heart of Bajazet, and ought to have  
 shewn him his duty. The letter was as follows.

*To the emperor of Roun, Bajazet the Thunder.*

“ After the usual compliments, we let you  
 “ know, that by the infinite grace of God,  
 “ the greatest part of Asia is in subjection to  
 “ our officers, which we conquer'd by our  
 “ strength, and the terror of our arms. Know  
 “ likewise that the most powerful Sultans of the  
 “ earth are obedient to our commands; that  
 “ we govern our dominions by our self, and  
 “ have even constrain'd fortune to take care of  
 “ our empire; that our armies are extended  
 “ from one sea to the other, and our guard con-  
 “ sists of sovereign kings, who form a hedge be-  
 “ fore our gate. Where is the monarch who  
 “ dares resist us? Where is the potentate who  
 “ does not glory in being of the number of our  
 “ courtiers? But for thee, whose true origin ter-  
 “ minates in a Turcoman sailor, as every one  
 “ knows, it wou'd be well, since the ship \* of thy  
 “ unfathomable ambition has suffer'd shipwreck  
 “ in the abyss of self-love, if thou wou'dst lower  
 “ the sails of thy rashness, and cast the anchor of  
 “ repentance in the port of sincerity, which is

\* This metaphorical way of expression is very common among the Orientals; but it sounds more proper in this place, because of the case of Bajazet being related to a sailor.

" the port of safety; lest by the tempest of our  
 " vengeance you shou'd perish in the sea of the  
 " punishment which you merit. But as we have  
 " learnt, that in obedience to the precept of  
 " the Alcoran, which orders us to wage war  
 " with the enemys of the Mussulman laws, you  
 " have undertaken a vigorous war with the Eu-  
 " ropeans; this consideration hath hinder'd us  
 " from making any insults in the lands which  
 " are subject to you: and the reflection that  
 " your country is the bulwark of the Mussul-  
 " mans, hath oblig'd us to leave it in a flour-  
 " ishing condition; for fear the passage of our  
 " armys into it shou'd raise a division among  
 " the inhabitants, and cause the Mussulmans  
 " to be disquieted, and the infidels to rejoice.  
 " Then take care of your self, and endeavor by  
 " your good conduct to preserve the dominions  
 " of your ancestors, not suffering for the future  
 " your ambitious foot to wander out of the li-  
 " mits of your power, which is but small.  
 " Cease your proud extravagances, lest the cold  
 " wind of hatred shou'd extinguish the flam-  
 " bean of peace. You may remember the pre-  
 " cept of Mahomer, to let the Turks remain in  
 " peace, while they are quiet: don't seek to  
 " wage war with us; which no one ever dar'd  
 " to do, and prosper'd. The devil certainly  
 " inspires you to ruin your self. Tho you  
 " have been in some considerable battels in the  
 " woods of Naxolia, and have gain'd advanta-  
 " ges upon the Europeans; it was only thro  
 " the prayers of the prophet, and the blessings  
 " of the Mahometan religion of which you  
 " make profession: don't be proud at these  
 " advantages, nor attribute 'em to your own  
 " valor. Believe me, you are but a pismire:  
 " don't seek to fight against the elephants; for  
 " they'll



Book V. " they'll crush you under their feet. The dove  
 " which rises up against the eagle destroys it  
 " self. Shall a petty prince, such as you are,  
 " contend with us? But your rodomontades  
 " are not extraordinary; for a Turcoman  
 " never spoke with judgment. If you don't  
 " follow our counsels, you will repent it. These  
 " are the advices we have to give you: do  
 " you behave your self as you think fit."

This letter was seal'd with the imperial sig-  
 net, and deliver'd to Bajazet by envoys who  
 knew how to carry on the intrigues of princes.  
 When they were come to Bajazet, they pre-  
 sented him the letter, acquainting him with the  
 reasons of their coming, and their master's pre-  
 tensions: but pride had taken too deep root  
 in the breast of the Ottoman, for a letter,  
 or the words of an ambassador, to have any  
 effect upon him: he gave 'em therefore a very  
 haughty answer. " It is a long time, said he,  
 " since we have been desirous of carrying on  
 " a war with you. God be thank'd, our de-  
 " sire has had its effect, and we have taken  
 " up a resolution to march against you at the  
 " head of a formidable army. If you don't  
 " advance against us, we will come to seek  
 " you; and pursue you as far as Tauris and  
 " Sultania. We shall then see in whose favor  
 " heaven will declare; who of us will be rais'd  
 " by victory, and who abas'd by a shameful de-  
 " feat."

## CHAP. XV.

*Timur marches to Sebaste, and takes that city.*

**T**HE eorays at their return from Nacolia, gave an account to the emperor's officers of Bajaret's haughty answer. Whereupon Timur, being incens'd against this Turcoman, caus'd his ensigns to be display'd, in order to make war on him; and he immediately march'd towards Nacolia. Being arriv'd at Axonic, he met the Emir Allahdad, who had been sent to Chiraz to bring from thence the Mirza Pir Mehamed bound like a criminal: which he accordingly did. Timur order'd that the Mirza should be interrogated by the council of war; and that after his prosecution, he should be punish'd according to his defects. Accordingly, after judgment was given, he receiv'd the blows of the bastinado, order'd by the laws call'd Yasa; after which his chains were taken off, and himself set at liberty. In pursuance of the same laws, the Cheli Zade Ferid, and Moharor Coja, who were then in irons, were put to death, for having corrupted the Mirza, and taught him magic.

Then the emperor sent to Salsania the empress Sorai Mule Canum, Canzade, and the wives of the princes his sons, with the Mirza Olouchah, and the other young princes of the imperial household, under the care of the Mirza Omar, and some Emirs. After that he caus'd the great imperial standard to be display'd, and march'd at the head of his army. At his arrival at Erzeron, he was saluted by Taharten prince of Arzendgiam. Two days after he decamp'd, and

Book V. march'd beyond Arzendgan, to enter the front-  
 ~~~~~~ tlers of the country of Roum, or Natolia, which  
 was then subject to the Ottomans.

Sept. 1.  
 1400.

The first of Muharrem 803, Timur enter'd the country of the Ottomans, and march'd against Sebaste. When he was come before the city, he encamp'd upon an eminence, to view its condition and situation; and the troops encamp'd round about it. He saw the place full of men lifting up their heads to heaven, and singing and rejoicing with musical instruments in their hands: the walls, whose marble foundations were at the bottom of a ditch full of water, lifted up their battlements to the very clouds: and the soldiers in garison, arm'd with cuirasses, rais'd a great cry towards heaven. Then advice was brought that the vanguard of Bajazet's army, commanded by his son Kerichtchi, and Temourtach, one of the greatest Emirs of the Ottoman empire, who had been sent to Sebaste, having learn'd the march of Timur's army towards that city, were fled, and return'd into the very heart of Natolia. The Emirs Solyman Chah, Gehan Chah, and others, were order'd to pursue 'em with expedition; which they did, and came up with 'em beyond Castanea in Cappadocia, where they briskly attack'd 'em, and cut 'em in pieces: after which, they made inroads, pillaging all the places near Cappadocia. They then return'd to the imperial camp before Sebaste, laden with the spoils of the Ottomans.

The city of Sebaste had walls of an extraordinary strength, being built of free-stone from the battlements to the very foundations; and each stone was three cubits long, and one thick. The wall was twenty cubits in height: ten in depth at the foot, and six at the top. There were seven gates, and those which open'd were



of iron. It was built by Aladin Keicobade\*, and surrounded on the east, north and south sides, with a great ditch full of water: so that it was impossible to sap the walls on those sides, for they had no sooner sapp'd a cubit than the water enter'd: but it was not difficult to sap on the west side. The place was commanded by Mustafa\* with four thousand horse, who prepar'd to make a vigorous defence, being furnish'd with all sorts of arms and machines for war. The besiegers rais'd a plat form higher than the town, over-against the gate of Irak, upon which they planted their machines to shoot stones. There were Arades\*, Mangenies\*, and Baselics\*: they likewise prepar'd battering-rams to beat down the walls. On the west-side the sappers kept continually at work: while arrows were discharg'd from both sides, which did a great deal of damage.

After the siege had continu'd eighteen days, the violence of the battering-rams, and the great stones which were shot, began to shake the walls, and make breaches. On the other hand, the sappers had work'd with so much diligence, that the towers were propt only by stakes, which Timur order'd shou'd be set on fire; and so the towers fell. This struck terror into the hearts of the besieg'd, who perceiving that the troops wou'd soon enter the city, and take it by assault, chas'd Mustafa the governor out of it;

\* A Seljukide king.

\* The Arabian history of M. Vazier Gays, that Solyman, son of the emperor of Bagdad, was governor of Sebaste; which is chink, a mistake.

\* Machines to cast fire.

\* Machines to hurl stones.

\* A kind of battering ram.

*Book V* and the Cherifs, Cadis, and doctors, full of hopes, came to cast themselves at the emperor's feet, begging quarter and pardon for them and the garrison. Their prayers, mingled with the cries of the women and children, soften'd Timur's heart: he granted quarter to all the Musulmans of the city, on paying the right of annually; but order'd that all the Armenians, and other Christians, shou'd be made slaves. And as the major part of the cavalry, which had so stubbornly defended the place for Bajazet, were Armenians, he gave orders, that four thousand horse shou'd be divided among the Tatars of the army, and slung into pits, and then cover'd with earth, to serve as an example to those who shou'd follow their steps. He afterwards caus'd the walls of Sebaste to be raz'd.

During the siege, advice was brought that Sultan Ahmed Gelair had fled from Bagdad, with Cara Yonset prince of the Turcomans, into Natolia. This oblig'd Timur to order some squadrons of horse to go in pursuit of 'em: which they accordingly did, and overtook their baggage, which they pillag'd, and brought away captive the Sultanel's Dilchade, eldest sister of Cara Yonset, with his wives and daughter. But he sav'd himself from our hands; and being come safe before Bajazet, our troops return'd to the imperial camp.



## C H A P. XVI.

*Timur marches to Abulestan.*

WHILE Timur was employ'd in the siege of Sebalto, some robbers of Abulestan, which is the country of Zuleaderia, were so daring as to come and steal away the horses of our soldiers, who were then busy'd in the siege. For which reason, after the taking of the city, Timur march'd to Abulestan, to revenge himself on these robbers. He then sent the lord Taharten to Arzendgian to guard his frontiers; and the Mirza Charoc set out in quality of chief of the scouts, accompany'd by the Emir Solymán Chah, and a select troop, which compos'd the vanguard. The name of the soldiers were register'd; and they had orders not to abandon the Mirza one moment. They soon arriv'd at Abulestan, from whence, on advice of their march, a great number of Turcomans fled into the mountains and deserts. The Mirza pursu'd 'em so briskly, that he overtook 'em: these miserable people seeing themselves closely press'd, endeavour'd to save their lives by fighting; but after a weak defence, they were all routed and slain, as a punishment for their rash enterprises. The Emirs return'd to the imperial camp laden with spoils, and a great many horses, mules, oxen and sheep. Afterwards Timur sent a courier to Masatia, to summon the inhabitants to submit to him. Mutata's son, who was governor of it, blinded with ignorance, which is an inseparable quality of the Turcomans, and especially of those of Natolia, imprison'd the messenger,



Book 8. Tenger. Timur on this was incens'd against the governor, and march'd towards that place. On the first advice these cowards had of the march of the imperial standard, Malatza's son fled out of the place with all his party. Timur at his arrival at Malatza, carry'd it the same day. The Georgians and Armenians were made slaves; but quarter was given to the Musulmans, after they had paid the tribute for an amnesty, which money was distributed among the soldiers: Timur order'd the Emir Gelan Chah to go, with other Emirs, to make incursions in the country of Malatza: he harangu'd 'em, and with the most charming eloquence set before 'em the excellence of good warriors above other men; he told 'em that they ought utterly to exterminate the enemy, to take from 'em all means of renewing the war; and he spoke with a great deal of force of the punishment they ought to execute upon those who after pardon us'd hostilities. After this discourse, he chose out of each Roman some good soldiers, whom he gave to the Emirs to strengthen their body of the army; and then he dismiss'd 'em. According to these orders they departed, and savag'd the country on all sides, not stopping in one place: they gave no quarter to any one, and left not one habitation unpillag'd; so that from Malatza to the castle of Kakhia\*, they made themselves masters of a great many places, some by fair means, and others by force; and after having constrain'd the natural princes of the country to submit to Timur, they return'd with a great quantity of riches, and join'd the imperial camp at Malatza, the government of which Timur gave to Cara

\* A castle in the country of Azer, frontier of Syria.

Osman a Turcoman. Thus the frontiers of the two kingdoms of Natolia and Syria were in a short time brought in subjection to Timur, whose fame spread it self thro all parts of the world; so that there was not one prince who was not struck with terror at the rumor of his conquests. Chap. 17.

## C H A P. XVII.

*The reasons of Timur's carrying his arms into Syria and Mesopotamia.*

**M**AHOMET has told us, that when God resolves to destroy any one, he deprives him of common sense; conceals from him the methods he shou'd pursue, to protect himself from his destiny; and permits him to commit imprudent actions, which become the causes of his destruction, that the will of God may not fail of an accomplishment. The truth of these words was apparent in the fate of the countrys of Syria; for the governors of the citys of this kingdom, being blinded with excessive pride, turn'd from the ways of peace and justice, and committed actions as infamous as extraordinary, violating the rights of nations, and trampling upon the laws. Thus in the year 793, Timur, having made himself master of Bagdad, and conquer'd all Irac Arabi, sent to the Sultan Barcoe in Egypt an ambassador, a doctor of Savé, whose learning, birth and genius distinguish'd him from the chief persons of the empire, as as we have said before \*. This Cheik being arriv'd at Raha-

An. Dom.  
1391.

\* Book III.  
Chap. 32.

*Baroc* V. *haba*\*, he was seiz'd according to custom, that advice might be given the Sultan of Cairo of the arrival of an ambassador on his frontiers. *Baroc*, being excited by the evil counsels of the Sultan Ahmed Gelat king of Bagdad, order'd this ambassador to be put to death, not reflecting on the consequences of so enormous a crime, nor the infamy of the action, since to insult an ambassador is to violate the right of nations. What is most surprizing is, that such a king as the Sultan of Egypt should be ignorant how Sultan Mehemet, king of Carazem, in the same manner put to death the ambassador and merchants of the great emperor Genghis Can; and what was the tragical end of so black and barbarous an action\*, which wou'd be too long to recite here. However the destiny, which caus'd the ruin of Syria, blinded the mind of *Baroc*, and procur'd the causes of his destruction.

\* See history of Genghis Can, Book II. Ch. 4.

Moreover, after the conquest of Azerbijan, and Irac Arabi, Timur being gone to make war in Capchaie, and in Russia, Muscovy, Circassia, and the northern countrys, there was a battle between Asilmich Contchin, governor of Avenic for Timur, and Cara Youlef, prince of the Turcomans, in which Asilmich was made prisoner. Cara Youlef loaded him with chains, and sent him to Sultan *Baroc* at Cairo, who without any reflection upon the matter, continu'd his hostility against Timur, and confin'd Asilmich in a very close prison.

Timur being on the frontiers of Malaria, sent an ambassador with the following letter to Farudge son of *Baroc*, who succeeded his father in the throne of Egypt and Syria.

\* A town upon the Euphrates, otherwise call'd Bahabat Mar; Ben Taour, frontier of Syria, long. 75. lat. 34.



" The Sultan your father hath committed se-  
 " veral criminal and odious actions against us:  
 " And among the rest, the murder of our ambal-  
 " ladors without the least shadow of a cause,  
 " and the imprisonment of Atilmich, one of  
 " our officers, whom he hath seiz'd instead of  
 " sending him back to us. As your father hath  
 " surrender'd up his life to God, which he had  
 " only upon trust, the punishment of his crimes  
 " must be brought before the tribunal of the ge-  
 " neral judgment: but as for your part, it is  
 " necessary you should have regard to the pre-  
 " servation of your self and your subjects: and  
 " to that effect you ought forthwith to send back  
 " Atilmich, lest, the effects of your wrath and  
 " vengeance, falling upon the people of Syria,  
 " and even of Egypt, our furious soldiers make  
 " a cruel slaughter of their persons, and burn  
 " and pillage their effects. If you are so sub-  
 " born as to reject our counsel, you'll be the  
 " cause of the effusion of the musulman blood,  
 " and the total loss of your kingdom."

The ambassadors, at their arrival at Aleppo,  
 were seiz'd according to custom, that advice  
 might be given: the Sultan on their arrival  
 Farrudge, to imitate his father's example, sent  
 messengers to bind the ambassadors, and put 'em  
 in prison.

It is not to be wonder'd at, that a plebeian  
 should commit actions of cowardice: what then  
 may we expect from a Circassian slave? Harenc  
 had been sold several times, and when his  
 power increas'd thro the kindness of his gover-  
 nor, who was also a Mamelke slave, he tra-  
 terously slew his benefactor, and usurp'd the  
 kingdom: and as there had never been any  
 king of his race, so he had not in him the least  
 appearance of royalty. Thus was Haroc, and  
 his

Book V. his son Farrudge was the crooked branch of an evil stock. He mounted his father's throne, tho' but a child, no one having taught him how he ought to live: he had neither suffer'd heat nor cold; and was ignorant of policy and the art of war. In short, the father was of an ill character, and the son without merit.

Timur being inform'd of Farrudge's rashness, was transported with anger; and the fire of vengeance, which had lain lurking in his heart since the crimes committed by Barce, did so far exasperate him, that he immediately resolv'd to enter the Sultan's kingdom, and destroy every thing with fire and sword: which resolution he the more easily took up, in that Bajazet, with all his pride and menaces, had not dar'd to appear in the field of battle: and this proud Ottoman quietly saw our army besiege, take, ruin and pillage Sobaste and Malatia, and all the cities and towns of his kingdoms, as far as Kahlta, without making the least defence. But these are all the hidden decrees of providence.

## CHAP. XVIII.

*Timur marches into the kingdoms of Syria and Egypt.*

THE heroes who are destin'd to execute great affairs, are also endu'd with a discerning spirit, which makes those enterprizes appear easy to 'em; and with resolution to carry 'em on with all the strength and power they are possess'd of: so that they easily compass those designs, which every one else accounts impossible. In effect, the Sultan of Egypt and Syria

Syria having added to his father's crimes, by *Chap. 18.*  
the arresting and imprisoning of Timur's ambal-  
sadors; on advice of it, the wrath of our em-  
peror was kindled, so that he resolv'd forthwith  
to chastise him for his fault: and tho' the execu-  
tion of this project appear'd impossible to the eyes  
of all politicians, or at least exceeding dangerous  
and difficult; yet the boundless zeal of Timur,  
made this great and perillous enterprize appear  
easy to him. The Emirs and principal lords of  
the state on their knees remonstrated to him, that  
it being but a short time since the troops return'd  
from the long campaign in India, they had not  
repas'd themselves, before they march'd to the  
Georgian war, where they had been extreme-  
ly fatigu'd, after re-iterated roads in the  
mountains and rocks, and the conquest of the  
towns of that country: that since then they had  
march'd to Natolia, and conquer'd Schirase, and  
all the cities and towns between that and Aleppo,  
where they had perform'd actions of the greatest  
valor: that therefore at present the expedition in-  
to Syria and Egypt appear'd very toilsom and diffi-  
cult, as well in that the country was full of towns  
and fortresses, with lofty walls and impregnable  
castles, as in that the army of the Syrians was very  
numerous, good warriors, and provided with  
arms and every thing necessary to a vigorous re-  
sistance: for which reasons they besought his  
majesty to have the goodness to disband the troops,  
and send back the soldiers into their own coun-  
trys, to repose themselves for some time; and  
that afterwards fresh preparations might be made  
intable to the greatness of this undertaking. Ti-  
mur answer'd them, that victory was a gift which  
God liberally bestows on the princes whom he  
loves: that the great number of soldiers and  
arms had nothing to do with victory, which he



Book V. had often prov'd: he put 'em in mind of the conquests he had gain'd with 'em, and the difficult enterprizes they had gone thro, tho they had believ'd 'em impossible: that it was requisite they shou'd have the greatest ambition: and then he wou'd answer for the success, provided they trusted in God. The Emirs perceiving the emperor firm in his resolution, loaded him with praises and applause, resolving to follow him, and thinking only of the expedition into Syria, and the means of making themselves masters of that kingdom.

Then Timur put his army in order; and causing the brass-drum to be beat, which is a sign of his departure, all the soldiers began their march, every one in his proper post; and they took their road towards Syria.

---

## C H A P. XIX.

*The taking of the castles of Behesna and Antapa.*

**T**IMUR order'd the Mirza Charex to depart with several great Emirs, as chief of the scouts. Being arriv'd at Behesna<sup>a</sup>, they encamp'd there, where they were soon join'd by Timur with the whole army, who encamp'd on an eminence near the castle, to view the situation of the place, which is in a defile where several torrents flow: its walls were high and strong, being built on the ridge of a steep mountain. The troops soon made themselves masters of the lower town, which they entirely ravag'd. The

---

<sup>a</sup> A fortress of Syria, between Aleppo and Malasia.

governor of the castle for the Syrians was nam'd *Chapter.*  
 Moebel, who relying upon the strength of the castle, put himself in a posture of defence. While Timur was examining the condition of the place, the besieg'd discharg'd a great stone from their machines against the emperor's person, which fell upon the ground near his tent, and roll'd into the very tent. This stir'd up Timur's wrath, who immediately order'd the siege to be form'd, and that'd the walls among the Tamans of the army, round which they erected twenty machines, and put of 'em upon the very spot where the stone fell. The first stone cast from this machine struck that of the besieg'd, and broke it to pieces, which was reckon'd as a good omen. Then the Mirza Roudem arriv'd from Chiraz with the Persian army, and join'd the imperial camp. The siege was continu'd, and the sappers follow'd their work close, while the Emirs and other brave men attack'd the place on all sides, and soon made breaches in several parts of the walls, propping the foundations with stakes. Moebel seeing himself reduc'd thus low, was seiz'd with fear, and resolv'd to surrender: he sent messengers several times to the emperor, to acquaint him with his weakness and want of power; and alledg'd as an excuse for not coming before him, the dread he had of his imperial majesty; beseeching Timur to grant him quarter, which cou'd not in the least prejudice him or his officers. Timur made answer, that he wou'd grant him his liberty, but not till after the taking of the place; because as this castle was esteem'd impregnable, if the army shou'd raise the siege, those who had but little insight into things, would imagine that our soldiers were not able to take it by force; and that a conqueror should not be thought to have spar'd his enemy.

The 7th of Seler 803, they were order'd to set fire to the breaches, and so the towers began to fall; which the besieg'd seeing, they were struck with fear, and Moebel lost all hopes. He sent the Cash, the beams and the Cheifs, with all the pearls and curiosities he had, as a present to Timur. They address'd themselves to the Mirza Charac, whom they brought to be their advocate and protector. These doctors let the emperor know that Moebel was the meanest of his majesty's servants, that he sincerely repented of his fault, humbly demanded pardon for it, and hop'd that the emperor wou'd not refuse him the favor of sparing his life. Timur, at Charac's intercession, pardon'd not only Moebel, but even all the garison; and the emissaries contentedly return'd back, praising the emperor, and making vows for the prince Charac. As soon as this good news was brought to the city, new gold and silver money was coin'd, and fridday prayers read in the name of the invincible Timur.

After this, the army decamp'd and march'd towards Antapa\*. The walls of this city were exceeding strong, being built of hewn stone, and surrounded with a ditch thirty cubits deep, and near seventy broad, with a draw-bridge: the counterfeart, which is of stone, has also a cover'd way, broad enough for 2 man to pass on horseback: which post was assign'd the archers. The Tartar army on their arrival at this place,

---

\* A town of Syria near Aleppo.

A Note taken from Arab. Chab.

Timur let Cazan-Erzan without striking; which he shou'd not do, because this place was very strong; and Nizam-Mahomed, son of Maoula, son of Selim, made some advantageous fall; upon Timur's army, and very much molested him.



found the principal persons gone out \*, and only a few poor citizens left, who had shut the gates upon 'em; but the city was full of goods and ammunition. When Timur came before the place, the gates were open'd, and the keys brought out to him: he fix'd a governor over it, and join'd it to his dominions.

---

## CHAP. XX.

### *The siege and taking of the city of Aleppo †.*

**M**AHOMET tells us, that the sole terror of his name made his conquests extend a month's journey: and we may with reason say, that Timur had the honor to resemble him in that, since the terror of his name was so great, that upon advice of the approach of his troops ‡, kings and princes were so terrify'd, that they abandon'd their dominions; fear blinded their eyes, and darken'd their understanding, so that all their actions tended to their destruction.

While the army was in the quarters of Behesna and Antapo, Temourach, § governor of Aleppo for the Sultan of Egypt, dispatch'd a con-

---

\* The Arabian of M. Vallerfey, that the governor of Antapa, nam'd Alqatmar, say'd not to defend himself; and being abandon'd and wounded, he fled to Aleppo, but was not pursu'd thither.

† A city of Syria in the province of Camassena, it is the antient Beroa; long. 72. 25. lat. 34. 35.

‡ The Arabian says, that according to the comparison of Caracem, Timur's conqueror, his army consisted of eight hundred thousand men.

§ Arab Chah says, that Temourach had agreed with Timur to betray the Sultan of Egypt.

Book V.

rier to Grand-Cairo to give advice of it to his master. Whereupon the Sultan sent orders to the troops of all the towns and countries of Syria, to march towards Aleppo, with all the arms and ammunition necessary for a vigorous defence. According to these orders, Chacour<sup>1</sup>, chief of the Emirs of Damascus, march'd to Aleppo at the head of a great army. The governors and generals of Heme<sup>2</sup>, Hama, Antioch, Tripoli, Napolis-Samaria, Balbec, Canaan, Gaza, Ramla of Rama, Jerusalem, Kerak, Calat-Erroum, and all the other countries and lordships of the kingdoms of Syria, came to the same place, well equip'd and arm'd cap-a-pie: and in a short time there were got together a very numerous army. Temontach, governor of Aleppo, who was esteem'd one of the most considerable lords, assembled the chiefs of all those troops, and made the following speech to 'em, in order to know their opinions of the matter: "We ought not, " *sirs*, said he, to regard this affair which is " coming upon us as a slight thing; and it is " requisite we shou'd reflect seriously upon it be- " fore it happens. The prince who is this day " come against us, is exceeding powerful: he " and his officers have perform'd such extraor- " dinary actions, as are no where recorded in " antiquity. Wheresoever he hath march'd, he " hath always conquer'd the towns and fortref- " ses: and who ever attempted to resist him, " always repented in the end, and suffer'd the

<sup>1</sup> M. Vauet calls him my lord Sodon.

<sup>2</sup> Principal city of Syria.

<sup>3</sup> The Arabian tells us, that Timur sent an ambassador or Herald to Aleppo, to summon the inhabitants to surrender; and that this herald was immediately put to death by Chacour's order.

most rigorous chastisement. Consider, sir, Chap. 20.  
how in a very short time he has reduc'd many  
vast and flourishing empires: as those of Ca-  
rezem, Turkestan, Corassan, Zabulestan, and  
India, as far as the great river of Ganges: the  
kingdoms of Tabarestan, the two Iracs, Per-  
sia, Coubeistan, Georgia, Azoffjana, and  
Diarbekir, with all their dependences, which  
he has wrested out of the hands of the most  
powerful Sultans, and the most illustrious em-  
perors of the universe. He has establish'd  
himself in those places with such an absolute  
authority, that one of his lieutenants, with a  
few officers, maintains a whole city under  
his obedience: so that in the vast extent of  
the countrys of Iran and Touran, there is not  
a soul who dares act the least thing against his  
orders. It seems as if the great rise of this  
prince was owing to the peculiar protection  
of Heaven; if so, we ought not to tempt God.  
My advice therefore, in this conjuncture, is to  
treat with him by the ways of submission and  
obedience; to coin our money, and to say the  
public prayers in his name; and to make use  
of the Cherifs, Imams, and doctors, as our  
mediators with him; seeing there are none but  
men vers'd in the law, and pious persons, who  
have any access to him, or whom he in the  
least regards. At the same time we'll send  
him presents and jewels, the most nota-  
ble to his grandure; that we may endeavour  
to keep him from coming near us, and by that  
means preserve the repose of the city, and per-  
haps of the whole kingdom. He is a prince  
favor'd by fortune, powerful, active, glorious  
and ambitious: his wrath burns and consumes  
a thousand times fiercer than fire; and if  
it is kindled, the sea it self won't be able to




Book V.

" quench it. Therefore now conclude upon  
 " something: shall either peace or war, quiet  
 " or misery."

Temourtsch having finish'd his speech, those who had most experience applauded his sentiments, and agreed that it was the best method they cou'd take: but the majority, and especially Chadein governor of Damascus, were of a contrary opinion. Pride and presumption were rooted in their hearts, and ignorance had so flourish'd 'em, that they gave no heed to what Temourtsch had said: and were so far from applauding him, that they made use of some haughty expressions, and tax'd him with cowardice, saying, that he who is afraid, is already frustrated of his desires. " What comparison," say they, is there between this kingdom and all those you have mention'd? Their towns were built only of mud and brick: but ours are all of solid stone, cut out of the almost impentrenable rock: they are fill'd with good garisons, and furnish'd with plenty of ammunitions of war and victuals: so that it wou'd require a whole year's siege to force a single one. " Why therefore has fear got possession of your hearts? Is it the great number of their cavalry and infantry, or of their arms and equipages, which terrifys you? Only view ours, and you'll see the difference: our bows are of Damascus, our swords of Egypt, our lances of Arabia, and our bucklers of Aleppo. In the registers of this kingdom are sixty thousand villages: out of each of which taking but a few brave men, we shall complete an army, which our vast plains won't be able to hold. The houses and walls of these Tartars are only of cords and canvas; while we live in good fortresses, which are of hewn stone from the bar-  
 " elements

"elements to the very foundations." Thus fate, having resolv'd upon the destruction of these unfortunate Syrians, inspir'd sentiments of pride into 'em: and these obstinate people persisted in their error, notwithstanding what Temourtsch, and other men of sense, cou'd say to divert 'em from the evil steps they had resolv'd to take; who represented to 'em that the way of peace was always the most secure, considering the inconstancy of fortune, and the small hopes they cou'd reasonably expect of gaining the advantage over their powerful enemy. The others on the contrary said, they need only have courage and resolution; which if they had not, all sorts of disorders and losses wou'd happen among 'em. After a great struggle on both sides, the latter carry'd it by a plurality of voices; and it was resolv'd and concluded, that no one shou'd go out of the city, but that they shou'd fortify it with intrenchments, and with arrows and stones hinder the enemy from approaching the walls.

Timur departed from Antaps with joy, and made two days journey of six or seven leagues each: he afterwards gave orders that they shou'd march but half a league a day, and at each encampment dig a trench round the army, and make a kind of rampart with their bucklers; so that in a whole week they march'd but one day's journey, and that with extraordinary precautions. The Syrians, ignorant of the art of war, attributed the slowness of their march to fear, believing the Tartars mistrust'd their own strength; at which they became haughty and insolent; for abandoning their first resolution of not going out of the city, and which indeed was the least dangerous, they rang'd themselves in order of battel, and pitch'd their tents in the open plains.

Book V.  
  
 Nov. 8,  
 1400.

The 9th of Rabiallevl 803, which answers to the year of the Serpent, the army of Timur arriv'd in the neighbourhood of Aleppo; and the Mirza Sultan Hussein, with some great officers, met the enemy's scouts: he fell upon 'em, tho' superior to him in number, and at the first onset unhors'd a cavalier, whom he collar'd, and carry'd prisoner out of the field of battle. His officers also perform'd some glorious actions, and took two prisoners; the rest of the Syrian army fled into the city.

The same day the Mirza Aboubecere advanc'd with sixty men; and a great number of the enemy made a sally to repulse him. After a sharp skirmish, the two parties return'd to their several camps. The next day some brave Tartars advanc'd to skirmish; and having shewn themselves to the enemy, not one dar'd to attack 'em. The third day at sun-rising, Timur order'd the whole army to take horse, and with ensigns display'd, and at the sound of drums and kettledrums, to march towards the enemy's camp. Every one having on a coat of mail, a cuirass, and a helmet, they advanc'd in order of battle. The right wing was commanded by the Mirza Miran Chah and Charoc, accompany'd by several great Emirs, as Solyman Chah and others: and the vanguard of this wing was led by the Mirza Aboubecere. The Sultan Mahmoud, whose lieutenant was the Emir Gehan Chah, had the command of the left wing; and his vanguard was brought up by the Sultan Hussein. The main body was commanded by Timur himself, who had before him a rank of bulky elephants, which had been taken in India, equip'd and caparison'd in the most magnificent manner. They serv'd as a rampart to this body of the army; for the towers on their backs were fill'd with archers  
 and



and singers of wild-fire : and these animals had Chap. 20.  
drawn in their snouts like serpents. When the  
army was rang'd in order of battel, a Toman  
of the best horse of the army was order'd to post  
themselves on an eminence on the right side  
of the field of battel, and to keep their ground  
there, when the Syrians shou'd be put to the  
rent, and fly.

The Syrian army was likewise rang'd in or-  
der : It was compos'd of a right and left wing,  
and a main-body ; and advanc'd with its ensigns  
display'd. The kettle-drums and trumpets were  
the signal to begin, and both partys made the  
great cry of Allah Echer \*. The battel began  
by the skirmishers, who rush'd furiously out of  
their squadrons into the middl of the enemys,  
and who after some brave action, as either the  
slaughter of some noted person, or the taking a  
prisoner from the middl of the opposite batallion,  
return'd glorious to their post. Our right wing  
immediately fell upon the enemy's left with so  
much vigor, that it was routed, thro the valor  
of the Mirza Aboubeere, who enter'd the field  
of battel like a lion, and forc'd many of the ene-  
my to sling away their arms, and abandon their  
ensigns ; while others were slain, and the ground  
soon cover'd with helmets, head-pieces, and  
sabres, mix'd promiscuously among the dead car-  
casses. Our left wing likewise defeated the Sy-  
rian right, and entirely dispers'd 'em, some  
crying out for quarter, and others saving them-  
selves by flight. Our main-body did not in the  
least yield to the other : and the elephants enter'd  
into the midst, and with their trunks toss'd some  
up into the air, and trampled others under their  
feet, no one being able to stop them.

Chadoun and Temourtach having seen the  
strange manner of our soldiers fighting, quitted  
their

\* God is  
the great-  
est.

*Book V.* their former fierceness: they trembled at the sight of the dreadful slaughter which was made in so short a time; and seeing no other remedy, they fled, and enter'd the city by the gate of Mancoula. The soldiers, perceiving their generals measures, likewise fled and dispos'd themselves: the major part took the road of Damascus, and were pursu'd by our men, who slew a great number, taking their arms and horses from 'em: so that out of this prodigious number of Syrians there escap'd but one horseman, who fled to Damascus to carry the news of the defeat.

After the rout of this army, part of 'em enter'd the city. The disorder was so great in the chief street of Aleppo, and the gates so crowded, that one cou'd hardly pass. Here was the greatest slaughter ever mention'd: for to avoid the fury of the sword, they flung themselves upon one another into the ditches, which were soon fill'd with men and horses. On the other hand, our men with a single pike often run three or four of the enemy thro' at a time, in the throng at the gate: so that the dead bodies were pil'd upon one another to the very plinth of the walls; and at length a passage was made over the ditch upon those bodies, level with the draw-bridge. There one might see the horses and their riders mix'd promiscuously together, and cover'd with blood and dirt: some pierc'd with arrows, and others with their brains dash'd out; one with a coat of mail, his head bending beneath the blow of a war-club: another falling without his head, with his sword fast clasp'd in hand.

During this horrible slaughter, a body of the army was sent to pillage the Syrians camp, wherein they found the governor's pavilion, with his tents, furniture, arms, and several beautiful horses

horses richly harness'd. Each of the soldiers took Chap. 11.  
 his share of the spoils, of which there were 1722  
 great abundance. At length all the army  
 march'd with so much vigor to the general at-  
 tack, that they enter'd the city the same day,  
 which was the 11th of Rabiullevl 803. Timur Nov. 11.  
 permitted 'em to pillage the city of Aleppo; 1722  
 and they spar'd neither the markets nor any  
 of the houses: they carry'd away the women  
 and children, the horses, mules, and all the  
 cattle: besides a prodigious quantity of gold  
 and silver, arms, curious furniture, precious  
 stones, pearls, vessels of gold, the women's rich  
 habits and ornaments. All these were taken by  
 the soldiers, who render'd no account of 'em to  
 any one.

## C H A P. XXI.

*The castle of Aleppo attack'd and taken.*

**C**HADOUN and Temeinrach, not ima-  
 gining themselves secure in the city, en-  
 ter'd the castle: which was a fortress upon the  
 ridge of a high steep rock<sup>\*</sup>; surrounded with  
 a ditch thirty cubits wide, and so deep  
 that there is a sufficient quantity of water  
 to carry a boat<sup>\*</sup>. From the surface of the  
 water to the bottom of the walls of the castle,  
 which is the shelving of the mountain, is about

<sup>\*</sup> The castle of Aleppo is not built on a rock, but on a mountain of earth cover'd with free-stone.

<sup>\*</sup> The author seems not to have seen the ditch any more than the castle; for if the ditch was full of water, a vessel might sail in it.





a hundred cubits; and it is so smooth and steep, that 'tis impossible to ascend it on foot, because this shelving is cover'd with flag-stone and flat polish'd bricks. The strength of this place render'd these two governors insolent; they undertook to make a vigorous defence, resolving to die rather than surrender: they made great crys in token of their resolution; and ran upon the walls and towers, to give orders to the garison. They caus'd the great and little kettle-drums to be beat, and in good earnest began to insult the besiegers: they cast a great quantity of wild-fire, and pots fill'd with sulphur, which in their effects resembled a thunderbolt; as likewise stones and arrows: by which they let us know that they were in a condition to defend themselves.

Timur having enter'd the city as a conqueror, encamp'd over-against the castle, ordering his troops to range themselves round about the ditch; for the out-parts consisted only of a single key unguarded: then there were nothing to be seen but showers of arrows, which the besiegers incessantly discharg'd with so much vigor, that none of the besieg'd dar'd to get upon the walls. In the mean while the sappers went down into the ditch, and favor'd by the archers, cross'd the water upon floats; and being come to the other side, they began to work upon the bottom of the mountain, and to shake the stones of the walls: but the besieg'd having perceiv'd their design, five of their bravest men went out by the great gate, and being resolv'd either to lose their lives or succeed in the design, they ty'd a cord to their waste, the end of which others held from the top of the walls, that they might descend and get up again, notwithstanding the steepness of the shelving, without fear  
of

of falling. These five men accordingly went down, and ran sword in hand upon the ladders; but the Tartars, who had orders to back the sappers, sallied out of their tents, and slew 'em with their arrows. The being'd on this were afraid, and drew up again the five dead bodys with the cords. From that time no one dar'd so much as look thro the loop-holes of the walls, so far were they from making sallies. Then Timur, whose advantages were consider'd rather as the scourge of God, than as an effect of human power, sent by an ambassador the following letter to the being'd, who now began to conclude that obstinately resisting him wou'd in the end produce repentance: "The Almighty having reduc'd under my command the greatest part of the kingdoms of Asia, my army's can't be stop'd either by walls or fortresses: the great number of soldiers or arms are not able to oppose the just effects of my wrath, nor ward off the deadly blows of my vengeance. I believe the best way you can now take, is to have pity on your own lives; otherwise you'll be the murderers of your selves, your wives and children, and must answer for the crime of having shed their blood."

The being'd seeing no other refuge, were constrain'd to give way to force. Chaldoun and Temourtach took the keys of the castle, treasury, and magazines; and being accompany'd by the Cherifs, Cadis, Imams and nobles of the country, open'd the gate, and in an humble manner came to cast themselves at Timur's feet. Chaldoun, Temourtach, and other chiefs, with a thousand soldiers, were shut among the Tomans, and put in iron. Soldiers were sent to the castle, who brake down the battlements of

Book V. of the wall. Timur sent in embassy to Grand-Cairo, to the son of Barcoo, Eßen Bougai Davandar, whom they had seiz'd in the castle, with advice that he had laid Chaddoun and Temour-tah in ruins, by way of reprisal for Arilmich, and that he would not set 'em at liberty till he shou'd come back to him; that he must send Arilmich immediately, if he was willing to preserve the lives and liberties of these two governments, and of all the other states he had detain'd. Timur he'd the place where Eßen Bougai was to meet him at his return: then he went to the castle of Aleppo, to take the direction of a very beautiful prospect, and also to view the situation of the city and country; and he staid there two days. He order'd the Emir Gouhan Chah to guard the gate of the castle and the riches within it, which consisted of the treasures which several kings had amass'd there, and an infinite number of jewels and furniture which the raias had carry'd into it to preserve 'em from pillage. The whole amounted to immense sums, part of which he distributed among the souldiers and soldiers. He afterwards left the baggage and cumbersome things belonging to the army, with his treasure, in the castle of Aleppo: and he nam'd eight considerable Emirs for governors of this strong place, and as guardians of the treasures he left there. Then, after sixteen days residence at Aleppo, he began his march, to continue his conquests in the rest of Syria.

CHAP.

\* A note taken out of the history of Tamerlane by Arab-  
Chah his enemy.

During the sixteen days that Timur staid in Aleppo, he order'd his doctors to come before him, to propose 'em with hard questions, and from thence got an opportunity to put 'em to death. His son Ali Ben Arab Chah (author of the  
Arabic



## C H A P. XXII.

*The taking of the town and castle of Emessa and Hama.*

**W**HEN Timur lay encamp'd without the city of Aleppo, he sent the Mirzas Pir Mehemed and Aboubeere, with the Emirs Solyman Chah, Serindjic and others, as scouts, towards Hama\*. These lords soon made themselves masters of the lower town; but they cou'd not take the castle, because it was exceeding

Arabian history of M. Vaini). These have lately been slain some of our men, and some of yours; which of the two is martyr? The question, said Arab Chah, was formerly propos'd to Mahomet by an Arabian poetess; and I'll return the same answer as he did. Timur demanded what answer he gave. The poetess answer'd Arab Chah, said to Mahomet, Lord, spittle of God, some fight thro' chance, others thro' valor, others thro' a zeal for religion: who is the martyr? He who fights for religion, answer'd Mahomet, and for the honor and advantage of the word of God. Very well, says Timur, you cou'd not have given a better answer: and then he ordered to bury all his victims. I have one foot, says he, in the grave, but yet I have employ'd my life to a good purpose; for I have conquer'd, &c. Arab Chah then said, in gratitude for the favor you have receiv'd from heaven, pardon these men of learning. I never put any one to death, answer'd Timur, purposely; you are the cause of your own death: but from God I grant you quarter. Then every one had liberty of speaking, and endeavor'd to answer first, at in the college.

When Timur, says the Arabian, design'd harm to any one, he did it without delay: but when good, he remitted the execution of it to another.

Timur cut off several heads to erect a trophy.

\* A town of Syria, of which the geographer Abulfeda was piece 1. long. 70. 42. lat. 35.

Book V. strong. After the affair of Aleppo was finish'd to Timur's satisfaction, he went to Hama, and in his way took three or four castles. At the arrival of the great imperial standard before Hama, those who were in the castle, seeing this innumerable multitude of troops from the top of their walls, imagin'd it wou'd be best for 'em to go out immediately with what presents they had, to offer the keys of the place, and submit to Timur. They accordingly did so, and addressing themselves to the Mirzas who were come before as scouts, they besought 'em to intercede and obtain quarter for 'em. The Mirzas promis'd 'em this favor, and quarter was granted 'em; but their spoils were given to these scouts. Timur staid twenty days at Hama, for the refreshment of his troops and horses; during which time he had apartments built for himself, the Mirzas, and principal Emirs of his court, and a magnificent Divan-Cane, where the councils of the state were held: so that this place in less than two or three weeks became a second city.

In the mean while the Emirs made another attempt, to persuade the emperor to stay at this place, representing, that for two years past the troops had been either on the march, or employ'd in a battle, that the enemy had a great number of cavalry, whose horses were fresh and not fatigu'd, and being in their own country, had vast advantages over us, and that if his majesty approv'd of it, they wou'd go and repose themselves on the sea-shore at Tripoli in Syria, where they wou'd take up their winter quarters; so that the horses might have some rest after their fatigues, and at the beginning of the spring they might march with vigor to exterminate the enemy. Timur wou'd not hearken to their

their

their reasons, tho they were plausible; but answer'd, that they ought to make dispatch, that the enemy might have no time to recover themselves. Whereupon he order'd 'em to take horse, and march towards Emessa\*. One of our great Emirs went thither first as a scout; and had the good nature to advise the inhabitants, telling 'em that their resistance wou'd serve only to ruin 'em, and it wou'd be pity so many shou'd be destroy'd; that if they wou'd go meet the emperor, and submit to him, he wou'd answer for the success, and their lives and even their effects shou'd be spar'd. These words, which on one hand caus'd fear, and on the other hope, in the people of Emessa, made an impression upon 'em; so that the principal men of the city took up a resolution to obey Timur: they came out loaded with presents, and ran to meet him; they cast themselves at his feet, kissing the earth, which they cover'd with gold and precious stones: they presented him with the keys of the town; upon which Timur had the goodness to prohibit any one's insulting 'em either in their persons or goods. He gave 'em for their governor Ali Erber, whom he order'd to have a singular regard to 'em, and to be their protector on all occasions.

\* Emessa or Hama, a town of Syria near Hama.





## C H A P. XXIII.

*Conquest of the town of Halbec.*

**T**IMUR decamp'd from Emessa; and continuing his road towards Halbec, he march'd a day's journey, and encamp'd near a salt-pit, from whence he sent out a body of the army to make inroads towards Seid and Bann, and to pillage the country along the shore of the Mediterranean. When the Imperial standard was arriv'd at Halbec, all the army admir'd the beauty of the walls of this town: the towers are of a prodigious size, and there is one at the corner of the castle, which looks towards the gardens, twenty-eight cubits long, sixteen broad, and seven high. This town is very famous, as well for the beauty of the walls, as for the height of its buildings; and it's believ'd to have been built by Solomon's order, by demons and genti, over whom he had an absolute command. Notwithstanding these advantages, it was reduc'd by our troops as soon as ever they appear'd before it. There were in it so great a quantity of fruits, pulse, and goods, that our soldiers were furnish'd with all manner of necessaries for a long time. Then Timur order'd the Emirs Cheik Nonraddin, Chamelik, Serindgie, and others, to advance towards Damascus at the head of thirty thousand horse.

## C H A P. XXIV.

*Timur marches to Damascus, capital of Syria.*

THEY staid not long at Balbec, because it was situated near a mountain, which render'd the air exceeding cold; and it being the beginning of winter, there fell abundance of snow and rain.

The 3d of Jumazinlevel, the sun being in the sixth degree of Capricorn, Timur departed from Balbec; and after having march'd a day's journey, he halted to visit the tomb of the prophet Noah, whose blessings having besought, he set out for the conquest of Damascus. The body of the army, which had been sent out to make incursions towards Seid and Barut, return'd, after having ravag'd all the maritim country of Syria; and join'd the imperial camp, loaded with the spoils of that country. As Syria was at that time under the dominion of the Sultans of Egypt, the Syrians were continually sending couriers, to carry the news of our army's march, to Fadrudgo son of Baroc, their king; whom they continu'd to press so assiduously to come to oppose Timur, that at their persuasion he rais'd an army, which he equip'd with great expence and magnificence, and above all, the cavalry, which was the best in the world. In this condition he took the road to Damascus; which he was no sooner enter'd, than he us'd all his precautions to examine the fortifications, to post guards and centinels every where, to put the walls in good order, and to augment the entrenchments as well of the city as of the castle.

Jan. 5.  
1400.

*Book III.* In fine, he took all needful precautions: and using policy with strength, he sent to Timur, in quality of ambassador, an eloquent and perfect villain, who the better to cover his intentions took the habit of a poor religious. He order'd him for his companions two young assassins, to each of whom he gave a poison'd dagger, with orders to use their endeavours to murder Timur during the audience of the ambassador. At Timur's arrival near Damascus, these villains join'd the court, and came to the foot of the imperial throne to pay their compliments: they had several times the honor to approach his majesty, and very favorable opportunitys to execute their design: but the Almighty, who was always Timur's guardian and protector, wou'd not suffer 'em ever to come to perfection. Coja Malsoud Semnani, one of the great secretaries of the council, imagin'd by the proceedings of these rascals fellows that they had some evil intention: wherefore he communicated his thoughts to some, who related 'em to the emperor, who order'd 'em to be search'd, and they found in their boots poison'd daggers. The chief of the villains perceiving himself and his companions discover'd, declar'd the truth, and the resolution they had taken to assassinate Timur. The emperor return'd thanks to his sovereign protector: and said, "It is not the maxim of king to murder ambassadors; yet it wou'd be a crime to suffer this rascal, or his comrades, to live, who tho cloth'd in the habit of a religious, is a monster of corruption and perfidy." Then he order'd, that according to the passage which tells us that treason falls upon the head of the traitor, he shou'd be slain with the same dagger with which he wou'd have committed



mitted this abominable action, and his infamous carcass to be burnt for an example to others. His two assassins had their nose and ears cut off; but were not put to death, because Timur wou'd send 'em back with a letter to the Sultan of Egypt.

Timur took horse, and having fix'd his troops in good order, march'd towards Damascus, near which he encamp'd at the foot of a hill near Cobbei Seiar: a trench was dug for precaution round the army, and fortify'd with bucklers and palisades. Then Timur ascended the hill to examine the situation of Damascus and its out-parts. He sent scouts to skirmish with the enemy, and to keep 'em in play: the Emirs Serindge, Sainte Maure, and others, advanc'd, and were back'd by the Seid Coja of the right wing, and the Mirza Roustem of the left, at the noise of kettle-drums, hautboys and flutes, mix'd with the soldiers crys. By next morning they attack'd the enemy's scouts, whom they put to flight, after having slain several, and taken others prisoners. Then Timur, to revenge himself for the scandalous action of the Sultan of Egypt, order'd Chadoon and the other prisoners brought from Aleppo, to be put to death.

The same night there happen'd an affair as ridiculous as extraordinary. The Mirza Sultan Hussein, after a debauch, was excited by some seditious Persians to revolt against the emperor his grandfather; and he accordingly went to the city of Damascus, and list'd himself into the Syrian service: which adventure gave the Syrians a great deal of satisfaction, imagining it wou'd produce to 'em considerable advantages. They conducted the prince into the city with a great

Book V. deal of pomp and ceremony \*. Farrudge, imagining the union with the prince wou'd deliver him from all troubles, and cause a calm after the storm was over, treated him with all possible respect. The officers of this Mirza, Adouc, and Hussein son of Barat Coja, gave advice of what had pass'd to the Emir Chamelik, who inform'd the emperor thereof. At break of day they decamp'd, and after a league's march towards the south-side of Damascus, which looks upon the country of Canaan, Egypt, and the desert of Arabia, they encamp'd again, and built a wall about the height of a man round the camp, and dug a trench round the wall. The scouts went out to ravage the country in the neighborhood of Damascus: and Timur plac'd both infantry and cavalry round the walls of the camp to guard them in the night.

Two days after Timur sent Padi Chah Baouram ambassador to the Sultan of Egypt, with the following letter. " You are not ignorant  
 " of the effects which circumspection and ex-  
 " asiness produce; and know that emulation and  
 " jealousy, mix'd with ambition, are the mo-  
 " tives which oblige conquerors to raise armies,  
 " undertake the most dangerous wars, and  
 " make themselves masters of countrys and king-  
 " doms: and that by this means they preserve  
 " the honor of their crown, and acquire eternal  
 " fame. All this great noise of the world is not  
 " so much to heap up riches, as to acquire ho-  
 " nor; for half a loaf every day is sufficient for

---

\* The Arabian records, that the Mirza Sultan Hussein had a handsome head of hair, which they shav'd off; and having honor'd him with a robe, dress'd him after the fashion of that country: and that he had quitted Timur, being assur'd to find him with his army in so miserable a condition.

the nourishment of a man. We have several  
 times demanded Atilmich of you, and you  
 have not once offer'd to send him to us;  
 but have always started some difficultys,  
 and delay'd an affair of such consequence.  
 This hath oblig'd us to make war in your  
 country, which will bring ruin and desolation  
 upon your subjects. If rocks could speak,  
 they wou'd tell you that this action of yours  
 pretends no good to you. Yet, notwithstand-  
 ing your unreasonable proceedings, if you'll  
 cause the money to be coin'd, and the public  
 prayers to be read in our name, that shall stop  
 our fury. This you ought to do, if you have  
 any compassion for your self or subjects.  
 Our soldiers are like roaring lions, which  
 want their prey: they seek to kill their ene-  
 my, pillage his effects, take his towns, and  
 overturn his edifices to the very foundations.  
 There are but two ways to chuse: either  
 peace, the consequences of which are quiet  
 and joy; or war, which produces disorder  
 and desolation. I have set both before you: it  
 is your part to follow *uno* or other. Consult  
 your prudence, and make your choice. Fare-  
 well."

The ambassador having carry'd this letter,  
 they receiv'd him with very particular honors,  
 contrary to their usual custom: at which re-  
 ception they practis'd all the ceremonies us'd  
 towards the most illustrious men. And as fire-  
 works are very often made in this country, they  
 assembled a great many persons of this trade,  
 who pass'd in review before the ambassador, to  
 shew their strength and power: but they were  
 not ignorant that these were no more than atoms  
 in comparison of the court of Timur. After  
 they had endeavor'd to please the ambassador by  
 about






## C H A P. XXV.

*Timur gives battel to the Sultan of Egypt, and gains the victory.*

AFTER ten days encampment, an account was taken of the state of the army: upon which Timur order'd they shou'd depart from thence directly to encamp at Gouta, that the horses might feed in that delicious place. The army had no sooner began this motion, than thro' their ill-fortune, the inhabitants of this country imagin'd that this march proceeded from weakness, and that our troops were fled towards the Levant. They likewise thought that so numerous an army cou'd not decamp without falling into some disorder, and that if they laid hold on this opportunity to attack the rear of the Tartar army, they cou'd not fail of defeating 'em; that the surprize wou'd so embarrass the soldiers, that they must be constrain'd to disperse and fly; and that this action wou'd be a great honor to 'em in all future ages. In this hope the whole army of Syria took horse, and made a sally out of Damascus: the populace join'd with the soldiers, some having swords, and others sticks and stones in their hands; and as there were prodigious numbers of 'em, they had the rashness to fall on our rear. There came so great a multitude out of the city, that the whole plain was cover'd with horse and foot. The cavalry were arm'd with cuirasses, and were perfectly well equip'd; the infantry were arm'd with bows and arrows, swords, bucklers and axes, presuming in victory: and there were never

Book V.  never seen before so great a multitude assembled together.

Timur being inform'd of this ridiculous rash action, knew that fate had resolv'd on the Syrians destruction: he implor'd the assistance of God, and reflected seriously upon the conduct he ought to use in this conjuncture. He gave orders that the whole army shou'd face upon the enemy, and that all the cavalry shou'd dismount to encamp: he caus'd a kind of wall to be made with the bales of the baggage, prop'd up with great stones; and being thus entrench'd, they erected their tents and standards. Then Timur got upon an eminence with fifty of his favorites, and according to custom, on his knees address'd himself to God in prayer: he order'd his cuirass and other arms to be brought him, and then he took horse full of confidence, commanding the drums to be beat, and the great cry made. In the mean while the troops of our left wing arriv'd all in good order; and as the Syrians were already very near us, Timur sent instructions to the Mirzas Miran Chah, Charoc, and About-beke, who commanded the right wing, to attack the enemy on one side; while the Emirs of the left wing shou'd fall upon 'em on the other. In this order they advanc'd against the enemy, and gave 'em battel. The Emirs Seviudjik, Chamelik, Seid Coja, Sainte Maure, and others, as well of the vanguard as of the rear, began the fight: being back'd by the main-body. And as the two wings fell furiously upon the unfortunate Syrians, there was so great a slaughter, that the whole plain was cover'd with blood. After an obstinate battel, victory inclin'd to Timur: the Syrians were defeated, and repuls'd as far as to the gates of Damascus, having above half their soldiers slain, and a great part dispers'd;



dispers'd; but this part was afterwards over-  
 taken by the Tartars, who slew vast numbers of  
 'em. There was nothing to be seen but heaps  
 of dead bodies, and rivulets of blood, armor,  
 and standards mix'd together. Scarce any escap'd  
 the fury of our soldiers, except those who en-  
 ter'd the city. This signal victory was gain'd  
 the 19th of Jumazilevel 805, which answers to Jan. 14  
 the year of the Crocodile. During the heat of 1400  
 the battle, the Mirza Selman Hussain, who com-  
 manded the Syrians left wing, was sent against  
 the Mirzas Mirza Chah and Charoc; but Topalic  
 Goutchin, an officer of the Mirza Charoc, fell  
 upon him, and having seiz'd his horse's bridle,  
 brought him to his master, who gave advice of  
 it to Timur. His majesty being incens'd, gave  
 orders that Hussain shou'd be put in prison, and  
 loaded with chains, as a punishment for his treason:  
 but he was shortly after set at liberty, thro the  
 intercession of the Mirza Charoc, yet not till  
 they had given him the bastinado, as order'd by  
 the law of Yafac. This was not so much a pe-  
 nishment to him, as the shame and continual re-  
 proaches he receiv'd from the whole court: and  
 he was never permitted to enter the emperor's  
 hall.

## C H A P. XXVI.

*Taking of the city of Damascus.*

THE next day our army decamp'd, and  
 went to erect the standard near the city at  
 the foot of a hill, while the news of the late  
 victory spread it self every where. At length  
 they departed at the noise of drums and trumpet:  
 and.

Book V. and Timur order'd that the army shou'd march in order of battel, and place before 'em a great rank of elephants, as well to augment the magnificence of the army, as to strike terror into those who had never seen such things. It is remarkable, that from one end of the right wing to the extremity of the left, the Tartar army took up between three and four leagues of ground. Then having their elephants at their head, the army got upon a rising-ground, from whence there was a prospect of the city, that the enemy might see their power, and be dishearten'd. By this means all the inhabitants of the country, as well soldiers as others, were satisfy'd of the multitude of this army, of which before they had had but an imperfect knowledge. All the cavalry being upon this hill, the drum was beat, and the whole army made the usual great cry: and then they advanc'd nearer the city, to encamp on the bank of a deep rivulet, which serv'd instead of a trench: and with their great and little huchlers they made a sort of rampart round the camp. After these precautions, both the cavalry and infantry cross'd the rivulet: and the army, according to custom, rang'd themselves in order of battel in sight of the enemy. There was a vast number of Syrians, but the disadvantages they had had the preceding-day had so discourag'd 'em, that they dar'd not advance. The Sultan of Egypt held a council with his great Emirs, as Norouz Hafezi, Yach Bec, Chadeuntaz, Choiki Hajeki, and others, upon what they shou'd do in this conjuncture. Some, who were attach'd to the inhabitants interest more than to the Seltan's, said, that tho' they had receiv'd a great shock, the city and walls were entire: that there yet remain'd a vast number of soldiers, who were dispos'd to fight: that  
the

the best way wou'd be to make a second sally, Chapter 6  
 and afterwards to defend the city and fortress. The others who had greater experience, and were more attach'd to the Sultan's interest, were of another mind: they thought that men of sense shou'd not be prepossess'd with chimeras: that when the Tartars were disorder'd by a decampment, without precaution, or lying upon their guard, and not in the least expecting a battel, the Syrians with their great numbers, and in good order, went to surprize 'em, and attack their rear, with all possible diligence and artifice; yet every one knows what the secret was: from whence they concluded, that the best remedy wou'd be for them to take the road of Egypt in the night, under favor of the darkness, according to the proverb, which tells us, That he who gains his life, gains all: that in the town and castle there were a great number of soldiers, as well as inhabitants, who were capable of defending themselves, and wou'd use all their efforts to preserve their lives, their wives and families; that if fortune favor'd 'em, and they sav'd the city, the king wou'd always continue master of it: but on the contrary, if the Tartars took it, and burn'd and destroy'd every thing, the king and court at least wou'd be secur'd from the public desolation.

The whole Egyptian council was of this opinion; upon which Farrudge sent an ambassador with presents to Timur, and a letter in these terms. "The affair which happen'd yesterday was a popular sedition, in which we had no hand: a number of ignorant young fellows of the common sort, had the rashness to sally out of the city, and receiv'd the punishment they merited. For our part, we have no other design than to keep our words, as we promis'd be-

fore:



Book V. "fore : and if your highness is willing to grant  
 " a cessation of arms for this day only, to mor-  
 " row we will execute whatever you shall or-  
 " der, and endeavor to repair the fault com-  
 " mitted against our will, and obtain pardon  
 " for it."

The ambassador acquainted himself of his instructions : and after he had made known to the emperor the subject of his coming, he order'd the army to return, and encamp a second time.

When night was come, the Sultan of Egypt took horse, accompany'd by the principal lords of his court : and having dispos'd every thing in a proper order for his departure, he went out of Damascus at midnight, and took the road to Grand-Cairo. A Tartar deserter nam'd Thacmac, came with expedition to find the Mirza Charoc, to whom he gave an account of all that had pass'd. This Mirza ran to inform Timur of it, carrying Thacmac with him. He order'd that the troops of the right wing, under the command of the Mirza Aboubecre, shou'd invest the city on one side, and those of the left wing, commanded by the Emir Gehan Chah, on the other, that no one might get out. At the same time Timur sent some of the most famous Emirs of his army, with a great body of cavalry, in pursuit of the Sultan. These brave men march'd with so much diligence, that they overtook him : they slew several of his men, and oblig'd the others to abandon their horses, mules, camels, and all their equipage, to save their lives : so that the ways were cover'd with goods which they had cast away to fly the better. On break of day, Timur took horse, and order'd the suburbs of Damascus to be pillag'd. Next day, Jan. 23. the 23d of Jumazilevel, after sun-rising, the whole army were commanded to march in order

of barley; and after having pass'd the gardens, Chap. 16.  
and suburbs, to inveil the city. This order was  
exactly executed; and Timur went to lodge in  
the palace of Castrabac; situate over-against the  
fortress, and built by Malek Ezzaher, formerly  
Sultan of Egypt. The Mirzas, Emirs, and sol-  
diers took up their quarters in the suburbs; where  
they found a great quantity of furniture, arms,  
money, and all sorts of merchandize.

Timur, who never omitted any opportunity  
of paying his devotion, visited the tombs of  
Oumme Seïma and Oumme Habiba, two of the  
wives of Mahomet; and afterwards that of  
Belalhabachi, whose intercession he implor'd;  
and then he return'd to his camp. As soon as  
the inhabitants of Damask saw themselves be-  
sieg'd inform, they were so seiz'd with fear, that  
all the Choriss, the Cadis', Imams, doctors,  
and other lawyers of the city, open'd the gates  
themselves, and with an entire submission went  
out, and carrying with 'em presents, cast them-  
selves at the foot of the imperial throne. They  
represented their misery, and the great displea-  
sure they had at what was pass'd; and they be-  
sought the emperor to have pity on the Mussul-

*A description of Arab Cooks.*

The chief of this depuration was the Casti Velodlo, son of  
Uchdon, who very much pleas'd Timur in his discourse with  
him: this prince made him, and the others who were with  
him, sit at his own table. And as Velodlo had arriv'd from  
Africa, Timur was desirous of hearing him discourse concern-  
ing the Kings of that country; for Timur was well vers'd in  
the history of princes and Queens, and was not ignorant of  
what pass'd either in the east or west.

Timur gave robes at home to these lawyers, and sent 'em  
very contented.

He esteem'd him who came to see him, according to the  
value of his presents, and presently after gives him up at a prey  
to death.

Book 4. *mans, and only grant 'em quarter for themselves, and for their family's. They made several presents to the officers; and after having submitted to pay the tribute for ransoming their lives, they return'd home. Timur gave a commission to the Emirs for receiving the tax, and sent 'em into the city. These Emirs were Cheik Nourddin, Chamelik, and Allahdad, accompany'd by the comptrollers Coja Malsoud Semnani, and Gelselislam, who enter'd into Damascus, and according to custom wall'd up seven gates of the city, leaving open only the gate of El-seradis, without which they kept their office. The receivers having drawn from the city the sums agreed upon, brought 'em to the Emirs \*. The Friday following the Courbe, or prayer for the king, was read in the famous mosque of the commemorated Califs, in the name and titles of the august emperor Timur.*

## C H A P. XXVII.

### *Taking of the castle of Damascus.*

**T**H O the condition of the city was as bad as we have represented; yet Yezdar Coudat, governor of the castle, confiding in the strength of this place, which was one of the most noted fortresses in the world, resolv'd to defend himself. Its walls were of great pieces of rock, very high and regularly built. It had round it a ditch of about twenty cubits; and

\* Timur caus'd some of his soldiers to be crucify'd, for having us'd violence after the publication of quarter.



the place was supply'd with all sorts of ammunition. The garrison began first to cast stones out of their machines, as also arrows, and pots full of naphtha and wild-fire, to hinder our approach. Nevertheless orders were given to all the generals of Tatars and Hozars to advance towards the castle, and besiege it in form. The necessary preparations were made, and the battering-rams and machines to cast stones were got ready; and the soldiers rais'd three platforms of such a height, that they commanded the castle. They afterwards entirely drain'd the ditch: then the sappers advanc'd to the foot of the wall, and began to work with all imaginable diligence, notwithstanding the great stones the besieg'd continually shower'd on 'em; which were answer'd by those from the machines cross'd on the platforms, and which hinder'd the besieg'd appearing so often in view. From our machines were likewise cast pots fill'd with wild-fire like theirs, besides the arrows which constantly fell upon the place like hail. The siege being divided among the Emirs, every one shook the walls on his side with battering-rams and other machines.

During these transactions, Timur order'd the Mirzas Miran Chah and Charoc, and the Emirs Solyman Chah, Gehan Chah and others, to go and take up their winter-quarters near Canaan, that their soldiers might refresh themselves, and their horses might get some pasture. The rest of the army advanc'd in the siege with a great deal of vigor: they heated great pieces of the rock by putting fire underneath, and casting vinegar there; and then with their hammers they broke 'em, and took 'em out of the walls: and when the wall and battlements were ready to fall, they prop'd 'em up with great stakes lest they shou'd fall on a sudden. In this manner they soon

finish'd sapping the bastion of Tarima, which was the largest of any: and the place which Al-toun-Bicchi inspected was soonest finish'd. This being done, orders were given to set fire to 'em: and at the same time this high and famous tower fell, and made a vast breach by its fall. The soldiers ran with their bucklers on their heads to enter by this breach: but on a sudden another part of the wall fell, which rais'd a prodigious dust, and crush'd to death eighty men of the troops of Ceraslana and Sistan. This misfortune stop'd the ardor of our men, who wou'd advance no farther: and the besieg'd laying hold on the occasion, clos'd up the breach, and fortify'd themselves behind. These breaches struck terror into 'em; and they had willingly surrender'd, if they had not despair'd of pardon. The other props were then order'd to be set on fire: and great part of the castle soon fell. This accident entirely taking away all hopes from the besieg'd, Yeadar governor of the place caus'd the gate to be open'd; and being constrain'd to go out, he came full of grief to deliver up the keys of his castle, and of the treasury and magazines within it. The other sides of the walls, which had been prop'd up with stakes, were not set on fire.

Timur gave orders that the governor Yeadar shou'd be put to death, because he had waited too long before he surrender'd. They found in the castle great quantitys of riches, jewels, curious stuffs, and raritys which had been kept there for many ages. There was a famous granary full of corn, being the revenues of the two renown'd citys of Mecca and Medina. Timur, who was sincere in his religion, prohibited any one from touching 'em: and Herimulc, one of the Tavatchis, having taken a hundred Batmans

of barley, he was bastinado'd both before and behind, and the money he had receiv'd for em taken from him. Timur order'd the intendant of this magazine to sell him some corn at the price of three Dinars Copeghus for each Ratman or pound, because the war had render'd provisions extremely dear. This intendant got a great sum of money for the corn; and the whole sum was distributed among the officers of the above citys, who were sent back to Jerusalem, after having receiv'd a great deal of civil treatment from Timur.

The garison were made slaves, and distributed among the Mirzas and Emirs: it was mostly compos'd of Circassians, Mamalukes, Ethiopian slaves, and Zanghebars: all the women, children and old men had the same fate. The tradesmen were separated from the rest, and shar'd among the Emirs, with those who had been taken out of the city, to be conducted to Samarcand. Moniana Jumaledin, and Moulana Sulleman, two celebrated physicians, were also carry'd with 'em. Then Timur went from the palace of Casrablac to lodge in the house of Boutekach, one of the great Emirs of Syria, which house was the most charming and noble of any in that country. At the sight of all this magnificence, Timur cry'd out, "Is it not  
 " a shame that in a kingdom of so large an extent, where men give themselves up only to  
 " pleasures, they shou'd build all these fine edifices to please their senses: and not have the  
 " charity to erect a single mausoleum of four walls for the holy wives of Mahomer, who  
 " lie underneath these tombs?" Whereupon he immediately order'd that two magnificent domes shou'd be built over the sepulchres of these holy ladies. The commission was given to the



Book V. Mirzas Alcaubeere and Cahil Sultan, and to the Emirz Cheik Neureddin, Ali Sultan, and Mengheli Coja, who made the workmen proceed with so much diligence, that the whole was finish'd in twenty-five days. These two domes were of white marble, full of sculptures and chisel-work.

As the Syrian money was of a base alloy, Timur caus'd new money to be coin'd both of gold and silver, which was refin'd by the coppel: there were pieces of a hundred, of fifty, and of ten Medicales, which were all honor'd with the name and titles of the august emperor Timur. The money was so common among the soldiers, that the Divan got about six hundred thousand Dinars Copeghu out of the single revenue for monys.

Timur commanded the principal secretaries of state to prepare letters of conquest, to send to Samarcand, and all the capital cities of the kingdoms of Iran and Touran, which were subject to his empire, with advice of the reduction of Syria; and to command the governors to make public rejoicings for his victories. These letters were dispatch'd by couriers, who likewise carry'd with 'em several of these new-coin'd pieces of gold and silver, to be distributed among the emprefses, the princes of the blood, and chief lords of the kingdoms of Iran and Touran.

Timur sent Coja Hassan to the Mirzas Mirancha and Charoc, that they might order the Emirz Soliman Chah and Gehan Chah to make inroads along the coast of the Mediterranean, as far as the town of Akkia. These Emirz having departed according to order, made havock in all this country, from whence they brought away a great quantity of booty, and return'd to Camad.

During

During these transactions, Timur was attack'd with a dissemper, which proceeded from a flux of humors which fell upon his back, and turn'd into an imposthume. He was very bad with it: and one of the Emirs who attended his person, nam'd Aratmur, was sent into Canaan, to order the princes of the blood and the Emirs to return with expedition; but at their arrival the dissemper went off, and the emperor recover'd. Then Timur reflecting upon the history of Syria, assembled his privy-council to communicate his sentiments to 'em. " I have heard, says he, " that in the wars which the Meronavian Om- " miades Califs wag'd against the children of " Mahomet, and particularly with Ali, his son- " in-law, nephew, and lawful heir, where they " exercis'd all the massacres and crueltys they " cou'd invent, the Syrians kept an intelligence " with 'em, encouraging 'em in all these abomi- " nable actions. Nothing shou'd be more won- " der'd at than this: for how can a nation be " thought to be of the sect of a prophet, and " be drawn from the abyss of error and infi- " delity by the light he has afforded 'em, when " it becomes so far the enemy of his family as " to unite with its most cruel adversaries, and " suffer all sorts of cruelty and injustice to be " us'd towards 'em? This is what I can't com- " prehend. We ought not to disbelieve this " tradition: for if it were false, so rigorous a " sentence wou'd not have come from the tribu- " nal of God's justice, in consequence of which " they have suffer'd so cruel a punishment at this " time, notwithstanding all their strength and " power."

Timur having related this piece of history, with which he was perfectly acquainted, they explain'd his highness's thoughts among one ano-  
ther;

Book V. ther; and the officers of his household were constantly reasoning on it. It was so insinuated into the minds of the warriors, that on the first  
 March 28. of the moon of Schaban the troops forcibly enter'd the city without orders, and made a terrible slaughter, committing all manner of violences: they made both men and women slaves, took from 'em their jewels, and pillag'd their goods, which consisted of an infinite quantity of gold, precious stones, curious merchandizes, rich stuffs, and all sorts of rarities. They got so much riches, that all the horses, mules, and camels, which they had taken from Sebaste as far as Damascus, were not able to carry 'em away: so the soldiers were oblig'd to sling away a great part, and especially several pieces of gold and silver stuffs, and curious belts of Egypt, Cyprus and Russia, which they had pillag'd at the beginning of the campaign. This circumstance I have heard from several credible persons who were eye-witnesses of it.

The first floor of the houses of Damascus are built of stone, and the two upper ones of wood; and most of the ceilings and even of the walls of 'em are varnish'd; which renders 'em very inflammable: so that when any place has took fire, the judges and governors, notwithstanding all their precautions, are not able to stop it; and it commonly burns a great way. This often happens in time of peace.

March 29. The 12th of Schaban, the city took fire by an accident; and every one strove in vain to quench it: it increas'd so much, that no place was free from the scent occasion'd by the ebony and sandarac, of which the varnish was compos'd; and the houses became exceeding black.

Timur, whose regard for religion was unparalleled, sent the Emir Chamelik to preserve the



the famous mosque of Omniades from the fire: but tho the roof was made of wood cover'd with lead, instead of being varnish'd, God made his wrath appear against these people: for notwithstanding the soldiers endeavors to quench it, they cou'd not hinder the eastern Minaret of this mosque's being reduc'd to ashes, tho it was built of stone: whereas the Minaret of Arcus, otherwise nam'd Moumar Beiza, remain'd safe, on which the Mussulmans believe, that the lord Messiah Jesus, on whom, as on our prophet, may blessings and salvation be shower'd, will descend from heaven, when he shall come to judg both the living and the dead. And what was most miraculous is, that this latter Minaret, tho built of wood, and plaster'd over with lime on the out-side, remain'd intire, while all Damascus was burnt down, and the immense riches within it pillag'd and sack'd, as well as the rest of Syria.

Then Timur took up a resolution to return back: and to give the inhabitants of Syria some marks of his clemency, after having made 'em feel the effects of his wrath, he order'd that all the slaves of Damascus and the rest of Syria, men, women and children, shou'd be set at liberty. Gelalelislam had the commission for executing this order, and conducting all the slaves to the city of Damascus, which was exactly observ'd.

## C H A P. XXVIII.

*Timur returns out of Syria.*

March 21.  
1101.

**T**HE fourth of Schaban 803, which answers to the beginning of the year of the Serpent, the sun entering Aries, Timur decamp'd from Conbalbar, and march'd to Gouta, where he encamp'd. He there caus'd two orders to be drawn up; the one to the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, to leave the government of the frontiers of Megolistan, to the Emirs Codadad Hussein, Birdi Bei, Sarbouga, and others, and to come forthwith to the foot of the throne, to receive the crown and investiture of the empire of Hurlacou Can, which was granted him in consideration of his merits and services. The second order was, that the august empress Toulman Aga, and the young princes his children, shou'd come to meet the emperor. These two orders were seal'd, and sent by Danè Coja.

Timur being departed from Goutz, pass'd by Carzoun Bec: and in three days he arriv'd at Emessa, the inhabitants of which had continu'd firm in their obedience, for which reason the troops did not molest 'em in their passage. Then a council was held, and Timur order'd the Mirzas Rouslem and Aboubecre, with the Emirs Soliman Chah and Cheik Noureddin of the right wing, to march with ten thousand horse to the town of Tedmir, built by the prophet Solomon, the houses of which were of free-stone: and to pillage the subjects of Zulcader, who were in the territorys of this town. He commanded the Mirza Sultan Hussein, and the Emir Beren-

dae of the left wing, to march to Antioch at the Chap. 8.  
 head of five thousand horse: and he sent the  
 Mirza Calil Sultan, the Emir Roustem Tagi  
 Bouga Berlas, Temour Coja, Arbouga, and o-  
 thers, with fifteen thousand horse of the main  
 body, against the Turcomans of Coubec, who  
 were encamp'd on the banks of the Euphrates.

Those of the right wing soon arriv'd at Ted-  
 mir, from whence they brought away about two  
 hundred thousand sheep belonging to the Zulca-  
 darians, who were constrain'd to fly into the  
 deserts of Arabia with their horses and camels.  
 After this the troops return'd, pass'd the desert,  
 and came to the banks of the Euphrates, along  
 which they advanc'd.

Those of the left wing being arriv'd near An-  
 tioch, cou'd scarcely enter it, because of the  
 great waters, sloughs and marshes: they pillag'd  
 the city and country, and then turn'd towards  
 Aleppo, where they join'd the troops selected out  
 of the main-body, and commanded by the Mir-  
 za Calil Sultan: with these they march'd into  
 the neighborhood of Calat-Erroum, towards the  
 Euphrates. Here they met the Turcomans, who  
 had the boldness to wait their coming, and pro-  
 pare for battel: they were briskly attack'd, and  
 as courageously defended themselves; but the  
 Cheik Hussein, son of Coubec, their leader,  
 being slain, his brothers and the rest of the chiefs  
 were constrain'd to fly to the desert. Several  
 of 'em were kill'd; and abundance of horses,  
 camels, sheep and other spoils taken, which be-  
 ing join'd to the other booty of our soldiers,  
 they counted above eight hundred thousand  
 sheep; and the soldiers were so fatigu'd, that  
 they cou'd not carry away the rest of the cat-  
 tle.



When Timur was arriv'd in the neighborhood of Hama, the evil destiny of the inhabitants excited 'em to commit acts of hostility against our men: they destroy'd the edifices our soldiers had built when they were there the first time. This action inflam'd Timur's wrath, who permitted 'em to be pillag'd: the inhabitants were made slaves, and their houses set on fire, after they had taken from 'em their best effects.

The army march'd from Hama to Aleppo, from whence to Damascus are seventy leagues. After some days journey they came near Aleppo; and the Emirs Seid Azeddin, Hezaregheri, Chah Chahan, and Moussa Tui Bouga, who were in the castle belonging to that city, raz'd the walls, burnt the houses, as well of the castle as of the town, and join'd the imperial camp. After four days journey the army arriv'd at the banks of the Euphrates; and the Mirza Roussem and Aboubecere, with the Emirs of the right wing, arriv'd there at the same time, coming from the lower part of the river. The Mirza Calil Sultan and Hussein Sultan, with the Emirs of the main-body, came there also by water: and they had all the honor to kiss the imperial carpet, and offer presents of the booty they had taken in their inroads. There was so great a number of cattle in the camp, that a sheep was sold for a Dinar. As the Mirza Sultan Hussein had perform'd several brave actions, and done the duty of a good subject in the last inroads, he obtain'd a pardon for his former fault, and kiss'd the emperor's feet, who promis'd to restore him his best favors, and take care of his advancement.


## CHAP. XXIX.

*Timur crosses the Euphrates, and hunts in Mesopotamia.*

AFTER all the Mirzas and Emirs had join'd the imperial camp, orders were given to repass the Euphrates: and accordingly two boats were brought from the town of Bire, on the east side of this river, to transport the emperor's baggage. The Mirzas, Emirs and soldiers swam over, and encamp'd near Bire, the governor of which came out to salute the emperor, bringing him presents: and in acknowledgment of his services, his highness confirm'd him in his government, and the inhabitants receiv'd no damage from our troops. Cara Osman arriv'd at this place, and kissing the imperial carpet, made his presents; and he had a handsom reception.

The army being departed thence, Timur had a desire to hunt in Mesopotamia: the soldiers of the right and left wing form'd the great circle of five days journey in circumference: and the circle growing less and less, they found so much game of all sorts near the fine fountain of Raselain, that they took the beasts with their hands. After the chase, tables were erected for a general banquet, to eat the game which had been taken, wherein the most delicious wines were serv'd up: and as an incentive to drinking, they eat roe-bucks and antilopes, whose flesh is very tender, and the best-tasted of any creatures of the desert.

Then

Book V.  Then they decamp'd from Bire; and when they were come to the town of Edessa\*, the principal persons came out with presents to salute Timur, who treated 'em handsomly, assur'd 'em of their lives; and sent 'em back contented. Passing farther, they found a castle inhabited by Armenian robbers. Timur gave orders for their being exterminated; and they were accordingly put to death, their goods seiz'd on, and the place raz'd. During these transactions Hendou Chah Carandgi arriv'd from Samarcand: he had an audience of the emperor, to whom he gave an account of the good state of affairs in Transoxiana. There also came an officer from the empresses Tonkel Canum and Touman Aga; and another from Sultania, from the empress Serai Mule Canum, with presents of furs and jewels: and all these messengers inform'd the emperor of the good health of the princes his sons.

---

## CHAP. XXX.

*Timur marches to the town of Mardin.*

**T**HEN the army march'd towards Mardin. Timur sent back Hendou Chah Carandgi, and the officers of the empresses, giving 'em presents, and letters full of affection for the princes his children. To the same place came the Sulcan of Hufni Keifa\*, and the Sol-

---

\* The same as Rahha and Orpha.

\* Commonly call'd Hasen Keif, a town on the bank of the Tigis between Amud and Moussa.



tan of Arrine, with the other princes and lords of those quarters. They brought presents and precious stones to lay before the emperor, and they had the honor to kiss the imperial carpet.

As to the Sultan of Merdin, we have already remark'd, that he being reduc'd to obedience, had been imprison'd by the emperor's order in the castle of Sultania; that Timur in compassion to him had pardon'd him, and given him a vest, with much civil treatment; and that he had promis'd to become a faithful servant as long as he liv'd, and let slip no opportunity of giving marks of it, that so he might render himself agreeable to the emperor, and merit his favors. After this it became him to follow our army into Syria with his troops: or if thro the nearness of the enemys, there was any difficulty in that, he ought at least to have sent one of his sons or brothers. But as he had fail'd in this particular, he was conscious of his fault: and dar'd not come to meet his highness. Nevertheless Timur, being arriv'd near his frontiers, had the goodness to ask after him, ordering him to come before him in very obliging terms: but this unhappy prince, giving way to his evil destiny, had the insolence to refuse to come, and dreamt of defending his town, being persuad'd that it cou'd not be taken by force. In effect, as a long siege was necessary to the carrying it, tho in the neighborhood were abundance of fertile plains full of pasturage, and proper to encamp in; Timur was contented with ruining and burning

---

\* Timur cou'd not take the castle of Merdin, which was situate upon an inaccessible rock, large enough to contain much

*Book V.* burning all the houses of the lower town, as well as the markets: and he order'd Cara Osman, governor of Malatia, after having honor'd him with a vest, to form the blockade of Merdin, and shut the inhabitants up to close, that no one might be able to escape.

Timur wd abundance of civility to the Sultans of Hulin Keisi, Arzine, and the other neighboring places, who were come to pay their devours to him at his arrival. He gave to each a robe wove with gold, a belt set with precious stones, and a sabre with a gold handle: and he permitted 'em to return to their own countrys. Then Timur sent the Emir Allahdad to Samarcand, with orders to march afterwards to Achpete, to take care of the frontiers of Gete.

---

## C H A P. XXXI.

*Timur sends troops into Georgia, and to Bagdad.*

**T**HE army being departed from Merdin, Timur order'd the Mirras Sultan Hussein, Pir Mehmed, Omar Cheik, and Aboubecre, as also the Emirs Gehan Chah, Temour Coja, Seid Coja, and others, to march with a great body of the army to Alengio by the way of Amied,

---

much plough'd lands. Here are great springs of water: and the garrison stand in no need of the cam-pans to entertain 'em.

The Arabian says, that to be desirous of taking Merdin, is to seek the friendship of an envious man, or to make a sign to the blind.

to make themselves masters of Alengic, and Chap. 15.  
 from thence to pass into Georgia. The Mirzas  
 and Emirs departed according to order: but as  
 Alengic had been besieg'd already two years  
 by others of our troops, (for when the army  
 march'd towards Sebaste, the Chelk Mohamed  
 Deroga, with the troops of the Mirza Miran  
 Chah, Firouz Chah, and the Mirza Casroc,  
 went to besiege it, and press'd it so closely,  
 that most of the inhabitants died of hunger;  
 they being in so great want of victuals, as to  
 be oblig'd to eat old leather, skins and such like  
 things, to appease their hunger; and even these  
 things failing 'em at last, constrain'd 'em to go  
 out and deliver up the place) Alengic, I say,  
 having been besieg'd two years, when the Mir-  
 zas and Emirs came near Alengic, and heard of  
 the reduction of Alengic, instead of marching  
 to it, they turn'd towards the right for Geor-  
 gia. They made great haste to surprize the  
 Georgians, whose country they ravag'd. This  
 exceedingly disturb'd Malek Gourgchin, who  
 sent an ambassador to the Mirzas, to acquaint  
 'em with the great surprize he was in at their  
 coming into his country, seeing he was one of  
 the emperor's most faithful servants, and to assure  
 'em, that as soon as his highness shou'd come into  
 those quarters, he wou'd not fail of paying his  
 obedience to him. The Mirzas sent an express  
 to court with advice of Gourgchin's submission:  
 they ceas'd ravaging his country, and staid at  
 Mencool, which is a place proper to pass the sum-  
 mer in, to wait the answer of the court, and  
 know whether the emperor wou'd grant quar-  
 ter to Gourgchin. The same day an order was  
 issu'd out for the Sultan Mahmood Can, the  
 Mirza Roustem, the Emir Solyman Chah, and  
 other Emirs, to march at the head of their



Book V. *Timur and company's towards the city of Bagdad.* These lords set out immediately, and after several days' march arriv'd at Bagdad, and encamp'd on the south-side. Farrudge, of the Mogul hord of Gelzir, was governor for the Sultan Ahmed. The vast multitudes of Turks and Arabians, who were assembled in this city, render'd Farrudge insolent; and confiding in the strength of his walls, and the number of his soldiers, he even dar'd to sally out to oppose the Tartar army, and rang'd his men in order of battle in the view of ours.

As soon as the rumor of the arrival of our army was spread, the Emirs Ali Calander of Mandeli\*, and Dgian Ahmed of Bacou\*, began their march against us, and pass'd the Tigris at Medaine. On the other hand, Faruk Chah of Hille, and Micaïl of Sib, also departed with the same design, and join'd together at Serier; and with three thousand men well arm'd advanc'd to fight. The Mirza Roulsem, the Emir Soliman Chah, and others, immediately took horse with their troops, and surrounded the enemy. They repuls'd 'em as far as the Tigris, and a bloody battle ensu'd near the castle of the Emir Ahmed. Dgian Ahmed was there slain, with a great number of his bravest soldiers: many cast themselves into the river and were drown'd, while the rest escap'd with a great deal of difficulty. After the defeat, one wou'd have thought Farrudge shou'd not have held out any longer; but this peasant, who had never before been master of a government, and had attain'd this only by cowardly intrigues, cou'd not resolve to quit his new dignity of governor, but found a pretence to excuse himself. "The Sultan Ahmed my master, says he, made me swear, that if Timur shou'd come in person,

" I wou'd surrender the city, for fear of bring-  
" ing the people into misery: but if that em-  
" peror shou'd not come in person, whatever  
" number of troops approach'd, I wou'd make a  
" stout defence, and not deliver up the place:  
" and I must obey my master's orders."

Under this fly pretence, he gain'd over the inhabitants and militia, whom he posted upon the walls to defend the city. There he us'd all his efforts; for he excited the soldiers upon the walls, and advanc'd upon the water in a boat, discharging a shower of arrows on our men in the rear.

In the mean while Timur advanc'd towards Tanris: he pass'd by Nasibene<sup>1</sup>, a strong place, which he gave orders to besiege and raze; but the inhabitants coming out with presents, and bringing the keys of the fortress, Timur gave 'em quarter; and they receiv'd no damage from the passage of our troops. The army being arriv'd at Moussel<sup>2</sup>, they built a bridge over the Tigris, which all the troops cross'd in a week.

## C H A P. XXXII.

*Timur besieges and takes Bagdad.*

**T**HE Emirs who were before Bagdad, sent an express to the emperor, to acquaint him with Farrulge's sentiment, and the pretence with which he color'd over his obstinacy in defending the city. On this advice Timur

<sup>1</sup> A town of Comissia, long. 75. 30. lat. 37.

<sup>2</sup> A town of Mesopotamia, long. 77. lat. 36. 35.

Book V. chose the bravest men of his army; and leaving the empress Tchelpin Mule Aga, with the rest of the troops and baggage, under the care of the Mirza Charoc, accompany'd by the Emir Chamelik, whom he order'd to march to Tauris by Tchinaran and Calaghi, he departed in person for Bagdad, by the way of Alroun Cupruc<sup>a</sup>; where being arriv'd, he encamp'd at the lower part of the river, over-against the gate of Carriet Ulucab; and all the troops encamp'd round the city. He immediately order'd the sappers to begin to work. The Mirzas and great Emirs of the Tomans, Heraves and Couchens, fix'd the sappers each before his post, and some bodys of the troops to sustain 'em. Farrudge being desirous to know whether Timur was there in person, sent one to him whom he had confidence in, in quality of ambassador, because this person knew him, having had the honor to see him before. The ambassador met with a handsom reception; and after his audience was honor'd with a vest, and at length dismiss'd. At his return he gave Farrudge an exact account of what had pass'd; but this governor, tho' he well knew he spoke the truth, accus'd him of dissembling, and put him in prison, lest others shou'd likewise know the truth from him: and then giving out that Timur was not there in person, he continu'd to defend himself, and committed hostilities, not considering what the consequence wou'd be. Then the Cojas Masood Semuani, and Mengheli, who were employ'd in building a platform, which might have a prospect upon the city of Bagdad, were wounded with arrows, and soon after expir'd.

<sup>a</sup> A bridge on the river of Alroun Souj near Moushi.



Timur sent Locman Tavachi to the Mirza CHAPTER  
Charoe, to order him to return to Bagdad with  
the baggage and the rest of the army. Locman  
join'd the Mirza at Calaghi, and accompany'd  
him in his way to Bagdad. When this great  
army was assembled together, Timur review'd  
it: and the astonish'd inhabitants no longer  
look'd upon their city as the house of peace\*,  
but as the palace of hell and discord. The  
troops encamp'd on both sides the river, and  
surrounded the city, tho it was more than two  
leagues in circumference. A bridge of boats  
was built over the Tigris below Carnet Ulaab:  
and several skilful archers were laid in ambu-  
cade down the river, to hinder any from flying.  
The care of the upper part of the river, was  
given to the Mirzas Miran Chah and Charoe,  
who encamp'd over-against Souqs Essultan. On  
the other side of the Tigris were Mehemed Azad,  
and Tangri Birmich Coja, to guard the fore-  
part of the city, that no one might get out that  
way. In fine, it was so block'd up and envi-  
ron'd on all sides, that tho the Tigris pass'd  
thro the middle of it, and there was a great  
number of boats, yet it was impossible to get  
out. During these transactions, Ahmed Ogoul-  
chai, governor of the castle of Alengic, who  
was seiz'd after the taking of the place, was  
brought to Timur, who order'd that he shou'd  
be put to death, and the castle committed to  
the care of Malek Mehemed Aoubchi. The  
execution of this order was given to him who  
had brought Sidi Ahmed to court.

At the same time the Emir Mousla arriv'd  
from the Mirza Mehemed Sultan at Transoxi-


\* Bagdad is formerly'd Babel, that is to say, the house of  
peace.

Book V. 201, and gave the emperor an account of the good state of affairs in that kingdom. He presented him with a piece of a balas ruby, weighing one hundred and twenty Medicales, dug out of the mine of Bedakshan.

In the mean while Farrudge and the inhabitants of Bagdad were struck with fear; so that they fought not so much out of bravery as from despair: they perform'd actions of the greatest rashness, which almost exceeded human power; for as soon as the Tartars having made a breach, had set fire to it, and a side of the wall was about to fall, the besieg'd immediately repair'd the breach with mortar and brick, and entrench'd themselves behind. It was then summer, the sun being in Cancer: and as Bagdad was situate in a country near the tropic, the violence of the heat was so great, that the birds fell down dead; and as the soldiers had on their cuirasses, one may say they even melted like wax: nevertheless they rais'd a high platform, which commanded the city, from whence they incessantly cast great stones out of their machines. The Mitzra and Emins fell several times on their knees before the emperor, begging leave to make a general assault, that they might take the city sword in hand: but Timur wou'd not consent to it, saying, perhaps the besieg'd may come to a sense of their fault, beg pardon, and deliver up the place, that they may save themselves from being slain or made slaves, and that the kingdom may not be entirely ruin'd. But fate had fix'd it otherwise: for these unfortunate people continu'd in their stubbornness, notwithstanding the dearth and scarcity of provisions, the siege having already lasted forty days.

The 17th of Zilcade 803, at noon, when the inhabitants by reason of the heat of the sun, nor being able to stay upon the walls, had retir'd into their houses, and fix'd their helmets upon sticks which they had erected in their places, our army undertook to give a general assault. The Mirras and Emirs furiously advanc'd, and having fix'd their scaling-ladders against the walls, the Emir Chesh Nouredin mounted first, and erected his horse-eal upon the wall, crown'd with a half-moon. He caus'd the trumpet to be sounded, and the drums and kettle-drums beat: immediately all the captains in their respective posts mounted the walls, and then call them down into the ditch: the troops enter'd the city sword in hand, and Timur advanc'd to the foot of the bridge which had been built below Bagdad. The soldiers being in the place, the inhabitants endeavor'd to get out by all the ways they cou'd, but in vain: so they were constrain'd to cast themselves into the Tigris, where escaping the swords of the Tartars, they became the prey of the fishes. Several got into boats, and others swam, to gain the lower part of the river: but they were no sooner come to the bridge than they were shot by the soldiers arrows, who lay in ambuscade. Farnidge embark'd with his daughter, and found means, notwithstanding all Timur's precautions, to escape by water. He was pursu'd along the banks of the Tigris by our soldiers, who discharg'd upon him a vast number of arrows: whom not being able to resist, he was constrain'd to cast himself and daughter into the water, where they were both drown'd, and the boat sunk to the bottom. The boatmen had orders to fish up Farnidge, and having drawn him up out of the water, they cast his unfortunate



Book V.  nate carcase upon the bank. As there had been several Tartar soldiers slain in the general assault, each soldier was order'd to bring one head \* of the men of Bagdad; which they accordingly did, and spar'd neither old men of fourscore, nor children of eight years of age. No quarter was given either to rich or poor; and the number of the dead was so great, that no one could count 'em up, tho' the Tavachis had orders to register it. Towers were made of these heads, to serve as an example to posterity. Some learned men found means to cast themselves at the feet of the emperor, who granted 'em pardon and quarter, and even gave 'em vests and horses, with a convoy to conduct 'em to what place of security they desir'd: all the rest of the inhabitants were exterminated. Afterwards Timur gave orders that there shou'd not remain one single house in the city unraz'd; but that the mosques, colleges and hospitals shou'd be spar'd. Accordingly they ruin'd the markets, caravanseras, hermitages, cells, monasterys, palaces, and other edifices. Thus, says the Alcoran, *The houses of the impious are overthrown by the order of God.*

---

\* Azabekah says two; and that there were thirty thousand inhabitants of Bagdad slain in cold blood. They hung away the bodies, and made trophies of the heads put together. There were one hundred and twenty towers made of the heads for trophies.

## C H A P. XXXIII.

*Timur's return from Bagdad, and march towards Tauris.*

AFTER the Tigris was grown red with the blood of the inhabitants of Bagdad, and the air began to be infected by the dead bodys, Timur decamp'd from that city the beginning of Zilhadge, and march'd a league towards the upper part of the river. He encamp'd near the tomb of the great Imam Abou Hanifa, chief of one of the four orthodox sects among the Mahometans, to implore the intercession of this saint. Then he sent a messenger with letters and orders to Moulke, who was come from Transoxiana; which messenger he order'd to be accompany'd by Nemede, Deroga<sup>1</sup> of Khivak<sup>2</sup>, that this Nemede might have the care of the government of Caracem in the absence of Moulke, and till his return to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan.

Timur order'd the Sultan Mahmoud Can, and the Mirza Caleb Sultan, accompany'd by several great Emirs and a good number of troops, to make inroads in the neighbouring places. They hasten'd to obey this order, pass'd by Hille, and went as far as Mehad Nedge<sup>3</sup>;

<sup>1</sup> Deroga is the particular governor of a town.

<sup>2</sup> A town south of the Gihon, in the kingdom of Cassem.

<sup>3</sup> A place in late Arabic near the Euphrate, where Hussein, grandson of the false prophet Mahomet, was slain by the soldiers of Yazde, son of Murvise. To this place they go to pilgrimage from all parts of Asia.

Book V. But instead of attacking that holy place, they paid their devotions there: then they ravag'd Hille and Vafet, and return'd to court laden with booty.

Timur took the road to Chelirezour and Calghi; and leaving the care of the baggage and main of the army to the great Emirs, he order'd 'em to march slowly behind, while no one shou'd separate from his Teman or company. The emperor made haste, accompany'd by the Mirza Miran Quli, Charoe, and Calil Sultan: but while they were on their march, the Comrdes were so rash as to attack those who were separated, tho at ever so small a distance from the army, and rob 'em. Timur being inform'd of their boldness, plac'd soldiers in ambuscade round the roads; and as soon as these villains appear'd, our men sallying out of their ambuscades, seiz'd 'em, and hang'd 'em upon the spot on the chestnut trees which grew in the roads. As to these chestnut-trees, I have heard it reported by very credible persons, that one year they produce chestnuts, and the next gall-nuts\*; which appearing so very extraordinary, I thought fit to mention it. Timur being arriv'd at the river of Jagatou, the empress Serai Mule Canum, Canzade, and the other wives of the Mirza, with their children, among whom was the Mirza Oulouc-Bec, came to meet his highness, and kiss'd his feet at Sinsper, congratulating him on his conquests, and sprinkling upon him precious stones and pieces of money. After having offer'd their presents,

---

\* I believe the author is mistaken, supposing the oaks which produce gall-nuts alternately with acorns, to be chestnut-trees, which are very uncommon in Syria.



they decamp'd, and being arriv'd at Acziaret, encamp'd there. The Cherifs, doctors and principal lords of the empire of Iran, cloth'd with scarfs of Ilibrane which they wear in the mosques, came as far as this place to meet Timur, who gave 'em a handsom reception. They staid twenty days at this place; and the baggage and remainder of the army soon arriv'd. And as the most learned Imams, and doctors were assembled in this place, Timur, who was extremely desirous of being enlighten'd upon any questions of religion, invited 'em to dispute upon some point of doctrine, for the better clearing up of the truth: he employ'd himself in this exercise as long as he continu'd at Acziaret. Afterwards he gave leave to the Mirza Roustem to return to Chiraz, with order, as soon as he shou'd arrive there, to send to court Hassan Yandar, and Jasan Jagadaoul.

---

#### C H A P. XXXIV.

*Timur sends the Mirza Charoc to Arzendgian.*

**D**URING Timur's stay in Syria, Bajazet, surnamed Ilgurum or the Thunder, the Ottoman emperor, thro the instigation of Sultan Ahmed Gelair and Cara Yousef Turcoman, who had fled for refuge to his court, brought an army into the field; and to revenge himself for the ruin of Sebaste, he march'd to besiege Arzendgian, which he made himself master of, having routed Taharten. Mochel, Taharten's lieutenant, was kill'd in the battle; and Bajazet sent the disconsolate wives and children of Taharten to Broussa; and then return'd

Book V. turn'd himself. When Timur was departed from Acrizer, had pass'd by Oudgian<sup>1</sup>, and was encamp'd at Hechtrood, that is to say, the eight rivers, he receiv'd advice that Bajazet was again marching towards the east: upon which he order'd the Mirza Charoc forthwith to fall upon the Ottoman, and make him repent of his boldness: he appointed the Emirs Solyman Chah, Chamellik, and other chiefs of Toman, and colonels of Hezars, to accompany the Mirza. He then sent orders by the Emir Mezrab, to the Mirzas and Emirs who were gone out to make incursions in Georgia, and had stop'd in Meneoul, to depart directly to join the Mirza Charoc, which they accordingly did. The Mirza being set out from Avenic, and arriv'd at Nevine, met the Cheik Ali, nephew of Taharten, who brought advice that Bajazet, fearing the success of his bold undertaking, had besought Taharten to intercede for him with Timur, that he might obtain pardon for his hostilities, on condition of his future obedience; that he wou'd send ambassadors with letters to make a treaty of peace, and a sincere alliance between the two empires, that so the Mussalmans might live quietly; and that he promis'd that if the peace shou'd be concluded by the intercession of Taharten, he wou'd send back his wives and children, whom he had carry'd to Erussa. The Mirza Charoc sent the Cheik Ali to the emperor, to give him an account of this affair; and staid himself some time where he was. Timur having decamp'd from the eight rivers, went to Oudgian, and staid some days in the Kiochik of Argoun.

<sup>1</sup> A town of Azerbaijan near Tauris.

## C H A P. XXXV.

*Arrival of the second empress Teuman Aga,  
and the young princes, from Samarcand.*

WE have said before, that when the army decamp'd from Damascus, orders were sent to the empress Teuman Aga to repair to court with her children. As soon as the princess receiv'd that letter, she hasten'd thither. When she arriv'd at Bexara, she went to visit the tombs of the saints, and among others that of the Cheik Seifeddin Bacerxi, whose intercession she besought. She cross'd the Gihon at Amouye, and passing the desert, came to Macan; and then going thro' the desert of Pügen, she went to Machhad of Tous, where she visited the tomb of the great Ali, making vows, and distributing alms. When she was arriv'd near Oudgian, Timur went to meet her, and had the pleasure of seeing and embracing his dear children the Mirzas Ibrahim Sultan and Saï Vaccas. He return'd thanks to God for his favors; and afterwards gave audience to the empress Teuman Aga, and his daughter the princess Beghisi Sultan, as also his cousin Sadekin Aga, who paid their respects to him. After having staid several days at Oudgian, Timur took the road to Tauris, hunting in his way. When he was arriv'd there, he went into his imperial palace, where he inform'd himself of the affairs of all his people, and did justice to those who had been oppress'd by his officers. Then the Coja Ali Seiwani arriv'd from Herat, and the Coja Seifeddin from Sebzuar; they saluted the emperor,



Book V. peror, and made their presents. Timur gave  
 ~~~~~ em a place in the Divan, in consideration of  
 their services.

## C H A P. XXXVI.

*Timur marches into Georgia, and to Carabagh  
 Arran.*

**T**IMUR having staid some days at Tauris, resolv'd to march into Georgia: he went to encamp at Comtouna, where he order'd the Coja Ismael Cavasi to be hang'd before the market-place of the camp, to punish him for the tyrannys he had exercis'd upon the people. He afterwards cross'd the river Araxes, and went to encamp with all the army at Nakehivan. And as the castle of Alengic was near Nakehivan, he was desirous to see that strong place, which had been taken by his foldiers in so short a time: and carrying with him the empresses, with the prince his son, and his favorite Emirs, he carefully examin'd the place, and return'd to his camp.

About this time Taharten arriv'd at court, where on his knees he presented Bajazer's letter, gave an account of his repentance, and begg'd pardon for him; which he did with so much eloquence, that he appeas'd the emperor's wrath, and obtain'd his desire. Timur staid some days at this place, during which time he sent an ambassador into Georgia, to Malek Ghourghin, to demand the tribute of him. Then the Mirzas, Pir Mehemed son of Omar Cheik, Sultan Hussein and Aboubecere, with the Emirs who had been sent to Menconl, to join

the Mirza Charoc, arriv'd at court, and saluted the emperor. The army decamp'd from the meadow of Nahchivan, went to the defile of Chahbaz, and enter'd into the mountains. Timur being arriv'd at Ghenkteheyronkez, had a desire to take the diversion of hunting; and when the circle began to close as usual, they took a very great number of flags. After this chase they encamp'd, and the Mirza Charoc return'd with his Emirs, and had the honor to salute the emperor at that place. Afterwards they departed; and when they were encamp'd at Chemkour\*, which is a delicious place, Idecoe, son of Coja Seifeddin Berlas, arriv'd there from Kirman: he kiss'd the imperial carpet, and made his presents. The commissary, whom Timur had sent into Georgia to receive the tribute impos'd on Malek Gheorghin, likewise return'd to the same place. That prince sent with him his own brother, loaded with curious presents, among which were horses and animals proper for the chase. he also sent the tribute impos'd on him. He had an audience of the emperor, by the intercession of the great Emirs; and having offer'd his presents, related the subject of his embassy. He said that the king his brother had resolv'd to continue obedient to the laws of the emperor of the Malsulmans; that if he had committed any fault, he sincerely repented of it; and if his highness wou'd pardon him, he wou'd not let one opportunity slip of rendering him his services; that tho' he wou'd faithfully pay his annual tribute, and always keep troops ready to march where his highness shou'd please to order 'em.

---

\* A town in Georgia, long. 47. lat. 42.

Timur pardon'd Malek Ghourghin; he look'd upon his brother with a favorable eye, and giving him a vest, permitted him to return home. He order'd him to acquaint his brother that he forgave him, and wou'd quit his country, on condition that he kept within the bounds of his duty; that he treated the Mussulmans of Georgia civilly, and protect'd 'em from all insults and oppressions; and that he rais'd an army, which he shou'd send directly to the imperial camp.

Then Timur sent to Samarcand Temour Coja son of Acbouga, with other Emirs, to serve under the Mirza Omar, in quality of lieutenant-general in the government of Transoxiana. The army departed from this place, and went to encamp at Caraultopa, where they receiv'd advice that the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who had orders to return from Samarcand to court, was arriv'd at Nichabour, and that the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, his lieutenant-general, was dead. Timur was sensibly touch'd with this news, and melted into tears, because of the good services he had always receiv'd from that faithful servant.

---

## C H A P. XXXVII.

*Timur passes the winter at Carabagh. Arrival of the Mirza Mehemet Sultan from Samarcand.*

AFTER a month's stay at Caraultopa, Timur departed; and having pass'd by Ghendige and Berdsa, went to encamp at Carabagh Arran the 22d of Rabiulakher 804, which answers to the year of the Serpent, the sun being



in the middle of Sagotarius. They built houses of reeds for Timur and the Mirzas his sons; and within the inclosures they erected tents and pavilions. And as Timur's intention was to make war in Capchat in the spring, the face of the pavilions was turn'd towards Derbend; and every one took up his winter-quarters, after Timur had distributed the money in his treasury among the soldiers and Emirs. But at this time ambassadors arriv'd from Capchat: they obtain'd an audience by the intercession of the great Emirs, and on their knees assur'd the emperor of their Can's submission and perfect obedience. The respectful terms they us'd appeas'd his anger, who granted 'em pardon, and assur'd 'em of his friendship.

Then advice was brought that the Mirza Mehemed Sultan had pass'd by Ardebil, and was arriv'd at Acram, at the head of his army. The Mirzas Miran Chah, Charoc, and others, accompany'd by all the great Emirs, hasten'd to meet him: they cross'd the bridge of the Araxes, and join'd the Mirza on the bank of the river Agsoue. The Mirzas embrac'd their brother with tenderness and affection, testify'd their joy, and congratulated him on his happy arrival. The Mirza Mehemed Sultan went to cast himself at the emperor's feet, with the ordinary ceremony. Timur embrac'd him, discours'd with him on the fatigues and length of his journey, and gave him a thousand benedictions. The Mirza offer'd his presents, as did also the Emirs of his court. For joy of this happy arrival the emperor made a great feast for several days, where the empresses and ladies appear'd with extraordinary splendor.

Timur particularly distinguish'd the Mirza Mehemed Sultan; he plac'd a crown of gold on his head, and gave him a belt of the same ma-

Book V. tal, with nine sets of Arabian horses, with saddles of gold. When the feast was over, Timur again took upon him the care of the public affairs; and the first thing he did was to finish the process against the Mirza Iskender, whom the Mirza Mehemed Sultan had bound for a fault he had committed: he was interrogated in a full Divan, and being cast, receiv'd the bassinado appointed by the laws of Yafa; but at length his chains were taken off, and he set at liberty.

### C H A P. XXXVIII.

*Timur sends troops to make incursions in divers places.*

WE have before remark'd, that the Sultan Ahmed Gelair, for fear of Timur's troops, had fled from his city of Bagdad for refuge into Natolia to Bajazet. Upon the rumor of Timur's march, the same Sultan departed from Bajazet in the neighborhood of Cesarez in Cappadocia, and went towards Chaldez, which is call'd Irac-Arabi: he pass'd by Calat-Erroum, and along the banks of the Euphrates; he went to Hir, and thence to Bagdad, which city he endeavor'd to rebuild, tho entirely ruin'd; and he got together all those of his party who were dispers'd, and wander'd about as vagabonds in the deserts. Timur being inform'd of this, resolv'd to exterminate 'em before they shou'd be able to gather to a head: to which purpose he held a council with the Mirzas and Emirs, and order'd four bodys of the cavalry to march each a different route. The Mirza Pir Mehemed, son of Omar Cheik, had

had orders to go towards Lorestan, Comestan and Vaser; the Mirza Aboubeere, with several Emirs of Tomans, was to depart for Bagdad: the Mirza Sultan Hussein and Calil Sultan were order'd to go with several Emirs into certain places of Chaldea; and the Emir Berendac was nam'd to march with a good troop, to pillage Gezire, and endeavor to exterminate the rebels. And as the Courdes had dar'd to commit insults against our army, on its return from Bagdad, and had rob'd some of our soldiers who were scatter'd; the emperor order'd that the first of these robbers they met shou'd be destroy'd without mercy.

Tho it was winter, and the cold exceeding violent, because of the snow, so that it was impossible to pass without laying felts before one; yet the Emirs readily obey'd their instructions. This execution was begun upon the Courdes robbers, who, forc'd by the snow and violence of the cold, were come down from their mountains, and had encamp'd in the plains of Derbend Tachi Catoun: an infinite number were put to the sword, some wou'd have fled into the mountains, but were hinder'd by the snow and cold, and constrain'd to submit and beg quarter, which was not granted, because their own wickedness had brought upon 'em the wrath of Timur.

The Mirza Aboubeere, having the Emir Gehanchu for his lieutenant-general, took the road to Bagdad, and blocking up the ways on all sides, arriv'd there in the evening, when the Sultan Ahmed least expected him. The Sultan was so surpris'd and press'd, that he cast himself into a boat in his flurr, pass'd the Tigris, and accompany'd by his son the Sultan Taker, and



Book V. *W* Some officers of his household, took the road to Hille. Our troops repos'd themselves that night at Bagdad; and next morning, when they were assur'd of the Sultan's being gone to Hille, the Emir Gehan Chah was detach'd in pursuit of him, and went as far as Hille; but as the Sultan, who had caus'd the bridge to be broken, was gone towards the lower part of the Euphrates, into the illes of Khaled and Malek, Gehan Chah wou'd not march so far, but staid at Hille, and sent a horseman to give advice of it to the court.

The Mirza's Sultan Hussein and Calil Sultan pass'd by Chepeliemal, and pillag'd Mendeli, from whence the Emir Ali Calander, who was governor of it for the Sultan Ahmed, fled, pass'd the river, and having got together some fugitive troops, posted himself on the bank of the Tigris. The Mirza Calil Sultan sent by the upper part of the river the son of Gehanghir Berlas, at the head of five hundred brave men, with orders to swim over the river, and attack 'em in the rear, while himself, with his army, lay in their view to amuse 'em. This detachment cross'd the Tigris, attack'd the enemy's rear, while the Mirza's troops swim over the river, charg'd the enemy on both sides, and having defeated 'em, pillag'd and brought 'em away prisoners of war, after having burnt alive their commander, who had had the boldness to defend himself.

The Mirza Pir Mehemed, with his lieutenant-general the Emir Solyman Chah, pillag'd at Doubender the hords of Saki and Fih. He was join'd by the Mirza Roustem, who, according to his instructions, was come from Chiraz to pass the winter at Chuchter; and they went together

cher towards Abada<sup>\*</sup> and Vaser. The Chieft  
Avis, a Courde, offer'd himself to be their  
guide, and advis'd 'em to ford the Tigris at Con-  
peler; they afterwards march'd all night, and  
came to Mabedia, where they visited Sidi Ab-  
med Kebir. From thence they march'd two  
days journey to plunder the Arabians of Abada,  
from whom they brought away great spoils of  
horses and camels. They went no farther; but  
repassing the Tigris, return'd to Chuchter, the  
government of which the Emir Solzman Chah  
confirm'd to Doncom, and that of Dexshah to  
Mehemed Aojah Chir, as his wife that of Ha-  
viza to Temour Coja, and that of Conzellan with  
its finances to Chamleddin Dendur; but by  
way of retaliation he exacted of 'em great sums  
of money. Then the Mirza Roustem departed,  
in order to return to Chiriz.

All the Mirzas and Emirs, who were gone to  
make incursions into divers parts, staid the whole  
winter in Chaldea, where they several times  
beat the enemy, and brought away a great  
quantity of booty: and in the spring they took  
the road to the imperial camp; and being all  
join'd at the bridge of Calk near the mountain  
Dgebethamiri, twelve leagues from Bagdad, and  
four from the dome of Ibrahim Lic, they march'd  
together to court, to give an account of what  
they had done.

<sup>\*</sup> A town in Arabia, frontier of Chaldea, on the Persian  
gulf, near Basra or Bassora.

## C H A P. XXXIX.

*The causes which oblig'd Timur to return to make war on Bajazet the Ottoman emperor.*

AS Cara Yousef, prince of the Turcomans, had begun afresh to commit disorders in the Mussulman country, robbing all passengers of whatever quality, and even insulting the great caravan which goes yearly to Hiddjaz and Mecca<sup>a</sup>; and afterwards fearing the just indignation of our monarch, was fled for refuge to the country of the Ottomans, which was a sure asylum to all the robbers of Asia: Timur, who made it a point of conscience to quell the disorders which affected the Mussulmans, resolv'd to make war upon Bajazet. This prince receiv'd the news with indignation; and all the people of Natolia were so seiz'd with fear, that the principal men of the state, as well lawyers as Clerics, waited upon him, and gave him the following advice.

The Ottomans  
could not  
Bajazet.

"The prince who designs to march into our  
country, is so formidable and powerful, that  
"he has destroy'd all who have refus'd to obey  
him. Whatever his armys undertake, they  
"easily accomplish: and they have never yet at-  
tack'd a province, city or fortress, which they  
"have not soon reduc'd. It is impossible,  
"mighty emperor, to execute so great designs  
"without the favor of God: which makes us  
"presume that to wage war with such an enemy,

<sup>a</sup> Every Mahometan kingdom sends yearly a caravan for the pilgrims to Mecca.



“ is against the rules of prudence. We believe it Chap. 39  
 “ best to act with him in the ways of peace and  
 “ mildness; and that your highness shou’d use  
 “ all your efforts to do what he desires of you,  
 “ and to maintain a good correspondence with  
 “ him.”

The fear which had possess’d Bajazer made  
 all this appear reasonable to him. He wrote  
 a letter to Timur, full of submission and obe-  
 dience, which he sent by a Cadi of the law,  
 accompany’d by an eloquent Emir skilful in ne-  
 gotiations, who went in quality of ambassadors  
 to our conqueror. They arriv’d in the imper-  
 rial camp at Carabagh Arran: and by the inter-  
 cession of the Mirzas and great Emirs were ad-  
 mitted to an audience: they fell on their knees,  
 and having kiss’d the imperial carpet, presented  
 their letter, and gave an account of the subject  
 of their embassy. The letter importeth, “ That  
 “ since by the infinite favor of the great ruler  
 “ of heaven and earth, your highness has been  
 “ rais’d to the throne of the empire of Asia,  
 “ we willingly resolve to be entirely obedient  
 “ to you: and if for the time past, we have  
 “ acted contrary to our duty, we assure your  
 “ highness that we will repair the fault by our  
 “ zeal in embracing all opportunitys of paying  
 “ our homage and services.”

Bajazer’s  
letter to  
Timur.

Timur having heard the ambassadors harangue,  
 and read Bajazer’s letter, answer’d ‘em in these  
 terms. “ Inasmuch as we have been inform’d,  
 “ that your master wages war with the infidels  
 “ of Europe, we have always call off all de-  
 “ signs of marching into his country with our  
 “ army, not being willing to consent to the  
 “ destruction of a Mahometan country, which  
 “ will cause a great deal of joy to the infidels.  
 “ But there can be nothing more disagreeable to

Timur’s  
answer to  
Bajazer’s  
ambassa-  
dors.

Book V.

" as, than to hear that he grants a protection  
 " to *Cara Yousef Turcoman*, the greatest rob-  
 " ber and villain in the whole earth, who pil-  
 " lages the merchants, murders passengers on the  
 " high-ways, and commits a thousand other in-  
 " fufferable disorders: and what is most danger-  
 " ous is, that this wretch resides in the midst  
 " of the Mussalman country, where he is as a  
 " wolf among the sheep; and the evil he does  
 " is a thousand times worse than what a stran-  
 " ger could do, tho he was the most powerful  
 " monarch in the world. If your master has  
 " a real desire to remove the causes of our quar-  
 " rel, and keep a good correspondence with  
 " us, he must resolve upon one of these three  
 " things: either first, to put *Cara Yousef* to  
 " death as a criminal, after a legal process;  
 " or secondly, to send him to us bound in  
 " chains, that being convicted of his crimes,  
 " he may receive the punishment due to 'em;  
 " or thirdly, that he at least expel him out  
 " of his dominions. On these conditions we  
 " will maintain a friendship with your master  
 " as far as possible: and give him proofs of it  
 " by the powerful succours we shall send him,  
 " to carry on the war against the infidels more  
 " vigorously."

The ambassadors receiv'd the emperor's an-  
 swer with all possible marks of respect. Then  
 his highness took horse to follow the diversion  
 of the chase; he pass'd the river *Araxes*, and  
 the plain of *Acram* was chosen for the place  
 to hunt in. This vast country was surrounded  
 as usual; and the circle growing less, the em-  
 peror and the *Mirzas* enter'd, and with their  
 lances slew what game they pleas'd. *Timur*  
 permitted *Taharten* and the Ottoman ambassa-  
 dors to enter the circle with the *Mirzas*: leve-

ral officers of the household, as Mehemed Azad, Chap. 39.  
 Tarkul Baourchi, and others, had the same  
 honor, and they slew a prodigious number of  
 beasts. In the mean while the circle press'd  
 closer, and there were five or six ranks of sol-  
 diers behind one another: and then the Mirzas  
 and Emirs came out of the circle, and order'd  
 the kettle-drums to be sounded. The beasts,  
 terrify'd at this noise, fell upon one another  
 in such great numbers, that they form'd a kind  
 of mountains. Then all the cavalry were per-  
 mitted to kill and bind the beasts; and the  
 chase was so great, that every one took five or  
 six with his own hands.

After this hunting, Timur return'd to the  
 camp; and in few days made a most magnifi-  
 cent feast, in which he did particular honors to  
 the Ottoman ambassadors, gave 'em caps of gold,  
 and belts; and told 'em that he wou'd take up  
 his winter-quarters in this place, and at the  
 spring set out for the frontiers of Natolia, where  
 he wou'd wait the arrival of the ambassador  
 whom he shou'd send to their master; that if he  
 brought a reasonable answer, he shou'd be glad;  
 if the contrary, the sword shou'd determine  
 who was in the right. Then Timur sent with  
 'em, in quality of ambassador, Bayazid Tchem-  
 pai Elichikede, with a letter to Bajazet; he  
 gave 'em a numerous attendance, and then dis-  
 miss'd 'em all. The tenor of the letter was as  
 follows.

"After the usual compliments, we declare  
 "to you, that if what your ambassadors have  
 "said be sincere and true, it is requisite that  
 "what we have propos'd concerning Cara You-  
 "sef Turcoman shou'd be immediately put in  
 "execution; and that you send to us forthwith  
 "one of your Emirs you can most confide in,

Timur's  
 letter to  
 Bajazet.

"to



Book V. "to confirm with an oath the articles of a treaty of peace between us. After that, by ambassadors and letters a good correspondence shall be maintain'd between us; so that the Mussulmans shall no longer fear any insults from either of us: otherwise you may expect to see our army enter your country, and ruin your monarchy. Safety be to him who follows the right way."

## CHAP. XL.

### *Timur digs the river of Berlas.*

**I**T is a common observation, that the grandure of princes is known by the monuments which remain of 'em after their death. Never any potentate left so many of these marks of power as Timur. Some ancient prince had dug a canal into which the Araxes was brought; but this canal was at length overflown, and its banks demolish'd. While Timur was hunting in these quarters, he by chance cast his eyes upon this beautiful relique of antiquity: and at the same time his ambition, and the desire he had to immortalize himself, excited him to repair this canal. To this purpose, he cross'd the Araxes, and regulated the manner in which this project should be executed: the Tavatchis distributed the work among the Emirs, who were to take care that the soldiers wrought at it. This work was carry'd on with so much vigor, that in a month two entire leagues of the canal deep enough for a boat to swim in, were dug. The place where it discharges it self into the Araxes is call'd Kiophilic Tchouglichi; and the spring-head

head is at a place nam'd Surcapit. Timur gave Chap. 47.  
 it the name of Nehri Berlas, that is, the river  
 of Berlas: and on its banks have since been built  
 several towns, villages, mills, vineyards, gar-  
 dens and pleasure-houses. Tho Timur employ'd  
 almost all his time in war, with design to ren-  
 der himself master of Asia, using all the means  
 of policy, which seconded by fortune, hath fa-  
 cilitated to him the conquests of this great em-  
 pire, by a chain of almost incredible vict'rys; yet  
 this prince, the better to transmit his memory to  
 posterity, has erected so many stately edifices  
 and other famous monuments, that this canal,  
 with all its beauty, ought to be accounted one  
 of his least undertakings, since if compar'd with  
 the others, 'tis but as a rivulet to the ocean.

## C H A P. XII.

*Timur departs from Carabagh for the plains  
 of Chemkour.*

THE sun was now in Pisces, and the  
 spring was advancing, when the emperor  
 was as much resolv'd upon marching into the  
 Ottoman country, the prince whereof was his  
 enemy, as he was set against it by the conside-  
 ration of the religious war which Bajazet at  
 that time so zealously maintain'd against the in-  
 fidels. His heart being agitated by two dif-  
 ferent motives, he remain'd in suspense. The  
 vast extent of the Ottoman empire, the num-  
 ber and valor of its troops, who were perfectly  
 drill'd in war, and prepar'd to defend themselves,  
 did not a little contribute to keep up his irreso-  
 lution. Moreover, our troops, having been  
 employ'd

Book V

~~~~~

employ'd for three years in attacking places, fighting battels, and making incursions upon several enemies; were so fatigu'd, that the Emirs and generals fear'd they wou'd be dishearten'd by this new enterprise; yet they dur'd not discover their sentiments, for fear of being thought guilty of cowardice or weakness. They judg'd it most proper to reveal their mind to Chamseddin Almaleggi, whose great wit, eloquence and clearness of thought, had obtain'd so much access to Timur, that he cou'd declare his sentiments at any time, without being in the least thought ill of. The Emirs hereupon address'd themselves to him, and unanimously besought him to lay hold on some favorable opportunity to make known to his highness their thoughts of his march into the Ottoman country: they conjur'd him to let him know the consequence of it, and advise him to think seriously on it, before he began it; and they even engag'd him to apprise Timur of the astrologers opinion, that in the campaign against the Ottomans, there appear'd in the heavens an inevitable misfortune attending the Zagataian army. Chamseddin willingly undertook this commission, and represented the Emirs sentiments to Timur, which were confirm'd by the prediction of the stars. Timur having heard him, order'd Moulana Abdalla Leian, one of the most famous astrologers of the camp, to be call'd before him: and to take away all fear from the Emirs, he interrogated him in public, and order'd him to declare freely the different aspects of the planets, and the judgment which might be form'd from thence. Abdalla hereupon deliver'd the following prediction: "It appears by the Ephemerides of

Admirable  
prediction  
of an astro-  
loger.

"the present year, that the ascendant of this empire is in the highest degree of strength, and



" and that of the enemy in the lowest degree of Chap. 11.  
 " weakness. A comet will appear in Aries;  
 " and an army which comes from the east, will  
 " make an entire conquest of Natolia, the prince  
 " of which will be taken prisoner."

The 17th of Regeb 804, Timur departed April 3.  
 from his winter-quarters, and went to encamp 1402.  
 in a meadow dependent of Carabagh, Arran.

The 7th of Schaban 804, which answers to April 27.  
 the year of the Horse, and is the first day of  
 the Gelalian year, he departed from Carabagh  
 Arran for Chemkour; and in the mean while the  
 Mirza Mehemed Sultan cross'd the river of Cy-  
 rus, and advanc'd along its banks. Then Ti-  
 mur sent Moulana Obaid Allah Sedre to Ispah-  
 han to guard the imperial treasure there; he  
 sent to Chiraz Moulana Cotobeddin Garini,  
 to regulate the expences of the Diwan, and the  
 revenues of the kingdom of Fars; and this mo-  
 narch having pass'd by Berda and Glendge,  
 went down to the plains of Chemkour. They  
 staid here some days, that the cattle might  
 graze, and then they march'd towards Astarac.

When the army was encamp'd at Tabadar, which is on the frontiers of Georgia, on the 24th of Ramadan 804, which answers to the June 17.  
 18th of the month Qordibehicht 124 of the Gelalian epocha, a son was born to the Mirza Bakh of  
 Charoc under the horoscope of Cancer. The em- Mehemed  
 peror return'd thanks to God, and nam'd the Djanik  
 prince Mehemed Djidokli: the empresses, Mir-  
 zas, and great Emirs congratulated his highness  
 and the Mirza Charoc on this happy birth, and  
 the prince's Camarade was appointed his gover-  
 ness. The Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who had  
 pass'd the river of Cyrus, pass'd the inhabitants  
 of the mountain Alahz Couh, and then return'd  
 to the camp at Tabadar.

When

Book V.



When the army was on their march, Timur order'd the empreses, and the Mirza's wives, to return home with the young princes; and they were conducted by Cohlugadgi. They staid at Tauris the rest of the summer, and towards autumn they went to Sultania. Timur at his arrival at Meneoul, not being willing to do any thing against the rules of policy, sent a second ambassador to Bajazet, with a letter in these terms.

Timur's  
letter to  
Bajazet.

"After the usual compliments, we give you  
"advice, that tho we are on our march to meet  
"you, yet our word is the same as we have be-  
"fore declar'd: if you consent to what we de-  
"fire, and put into the hands of our lieutenant  
"the fortrels of Kenna, which has been al-  
"ways subject to the countrys under our obedi-  
"ence, we will let you peaceably enjoy the king-  
"dom of Natolia, that you may continue the  
"war against the enemys of the Mussulmans;  
"and we will not refuse the succour which you  
"may expect on that account. Do what you  
"think best for your good."

## C H A P. XLII.

*Taking of the castle of Tartoom*

**T**IMUR having been inform'd that there was a strong place in those quarters nam'd Tartoom, in which were two hundred Georgians who refus'd to pay tribute, and insulted the Mussulmans and passengers; and that the prince who commanded 'em was absent, and had left in his place a lieutenant nam'd Ghurdgibec: his highness commanded the Emirs Chamelik, Cheik Noureddin, and others, to attack the place, and take it at any rate. They accord-  
ingly

ingly came before it; and sent to acquaint the Chap. 22.  
 enemy, that if they wou'd willingly surrender,  
 and pay the tribute, they shou'd have quar-  
 ter; but they refus'd so to do, and trusting  
 in the strength of the castle, prepar'd to de-  
 fend themselves. Our soldiers made the great  
 cry, Alla Echer, and Salli Alla Mehammed\*;  
 and having invested the place, they gave sever-  
 al assaults, discharging infinite showers of ar-  
 rows. The besieg'd vigorously defended them-  
 selves for five days; and the sixth the place was  
 taken: our men put all the Georgians to the  
 sword, and having overthrown the walls, they  
 raz'd the place, even to the very foundations.  
 The governor, who escap'd, came to the foot  
 of the throne to beg pardon; and obtain'd  
 quarter for his life.

Timur staid at Avenic till the return of the  
 ambassadors he had sent to Bajazet. When two  
 months beyond the time agreed on were past,  
 and he had no news from the ambassadors, he  
 grew impatient. "In truth, said he, extraction  
 "is a strange thing. Whatever mildness we use  
 "with regard to Bajazet, in order to preserve  
 "Natolia, as being the frontiers of the Mus-  
 "sulman country, and hinder as far as we are  
 "able its being destroy'd by our troops; yet  
 "the Turcoman blood of this ignoble person  
 "won't permit him to deal civilly with us,  
 "and preserve peace and friendship between us.  
 "He does not send back our ambassadors, but  
 "carrys his hatred and hostility so far, that we  
 "are constrain'd to enter his country with an  
 "army, tho we have no desire to seize by force  
 "on his dominions and effects. But this is the

\* That is to say, God is the most great, and God bless  
 Mahomet.



Book V. " result of providence, whose depths we are not  
 " able to fathom: and we know not whether  
 " the effects are design'd for good or evil till  
 " they happen."

Timur sent back to Sullania the second emperor Totman Aga, with the Mirza Sadvaccas, son of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan; and he afterwards continu'd his march towards Natolia. When he was arriv'd at Erzerom, he was join'd by the Mirzas and Emirs who had pass'd the winter in Courdistan and Chuldea, where they had pillag'd and exterminated the enemys, as we said before, and had departed thence in the spring, with great quantity of booty, by the road of Coulaghi, and the mountain of Sou-natai.

## CHAP. XLIII.

*Taking of the castle of Kemac. Arrival of ambassadors from Bajazet.*

THE castle of Kemac is one of the most noted in Asia; it is situate upon a high steep rock, and is surrounded with a desile in form of a labyrinth. At the bottom of its walls are gardens and parterres of flowers on the bank of the Euphrates: and no prince has ever taken it by force. Several poets have compar'd it to the terrestrial paradise, because yearly for three days together, little birds, as big as sparrows, and unsledg'd, fall out of the air: the inhabitants gather 'em up, salt 'em, and preserve 'em in pots. If they don't take 'em in three days, their wings grow large enough to fly away.

The Mirza Mehemed Sultan besought the emperor to honor him with a commission to conquer this place; which having obtain'd, he departed with the Emirs of Tomans and Herats, with all the arms and machines necessary for a siege. Timur being arriv'd at Arzenigian, sent the Mirza Aboubeere, Calil Sultan, Sultan Hussein, and Eschender, with the Emirs Gehan Chali, Chah Nouredin, and Berendac, to join the Mirza Mehemed Sultan; which they had no sooner done, than they besieg'd the place in form. The siege continu'd ten whole days, during which our soldiers hop'd the water which flow'd into the place. The eleventh night they made rope-ladders, on which the Meccite soldiers, who run upon the steepest mountains like roe-bucks, got to the top of the mountain; and when they were there, they fix'd cords, which they let down to the bottom. The Mirza Mehemed Sultan sent a number of brave men, whose names he wrote down, to mount by these cords; which they did, arm'd with their cuirasses, during the darkness of the night. The besieg'd perceiving 'em defend'd themselves, and cast down great stones upon 'em. Aleher, nephew of the Emir Abou, and others, mis'd the steps, and fell. The next morning our soldiers mounted to the assault, at the sound of drums and kettle-drums; and the wild-fire in pots were cast with machines from both sides: our men also attack'd 'em with arrows and stones; and every one gave marks of the greatest valor. The Mirza Mehemed Sultan us'd all his endeavors to encourage his soldiers. The Mirza Aboubeere did wonders; and his officers first scal'd the walls, and erected their horse-tail. At the same time the others mounted on all


Book V. sides, and enter'd the place, of which they made themselves masters.

Timur having advice of the taking of this place, departed from the meadow of Arzendgian, and came before the castle of Kemar, the government of which he gave to prince Takharten, because it was no more than seven leagues from Arzendgian.

From thence he began his march in earnest for the conquest of the Ottoman empire: and as several peasants and laborers were retreated into caverns and steep places, he sent Emirs to attack 'em. But these men having at a distance perceiv'd the number of his troops, were seiz'd with fear: so they came up to 'em, and with submission beg'd quarter; which was granted 'em. The army being encamp'd at Sebastia, Bayazid and Tchempai Eltelik arriv'd there from the Ottoman Porte, accomany'd by fresh ambassadors from the emperor Bajazet; he gave an account to the emperor of his negotiation, and presented the answer to the letter he had writ to the Ottoman. This answer, which was very haughty and arrogant, made appear that fate had resolv'd the ruin of this monarchy: and Bajazet, to excuse his not surrendering up the castle of Kemar, alledg'd reasons very unsatisfactory to Timur's council.

The Ottoman ambassadors being admitted to audience thro' the intercession of the princes of the blood, they kiss'd the imperial carpet; offer'd their presents, which consisted of ten horses of great price, several animals proper for the chase, and divers other rarities; and on their knees declar'd the subject of their embassy. The emperor having heard 'em, fell into a great passion, refus'd their presents, and thus address'd him-



himself to the person who had been the speaker : Chap. 23.  
 " If it were not an infamous action for princes  
 " to put to death an ambassador, I would this  
 " hour separate your head from your body."   
 Yet having a little moderated his fury, he said :  
 " When fortune ceases to be propitious, counsel  
 " becomes useless, for tho' we had no intention  
 " to hurt your country, yet we are constrain'd  
 " by that faithless prince's manner of acting, to  
 " make war upon him. Had he sent Cara Youser  
 " to me, and deliver'd up the castle of Kemas  
 " to my lieutenants, he might have remain'd  
 " quiet in his kingdom. God be thank'd, this  
 " castle has been reduc'd to obedience by the  
 " valor of our soldiers. Tell him from me, that  
 " since he has refus'd to attend to my counsel,  
 " and has carry'd his obstinacy so far, he must  
 " prepare himself like a brave man to sustain the  
 " attack of our ever-victorious army."

## C H A P. XLIV.

*Timur reviews his army.*

**T**IMUR having resolv'd to attack Bajar  
 in his own dominions, order'd the troops  
 to rendezvous in the plain of Sebaste to pass in  
 review : he post'd himself upon an eminence  
 to examine their ranks, arms, and countenance.  
 When any squadron pass'd before him, the cap-  
 tain advanc'd, fell on his knees, and holding his  
 horse by the bridle, made his compliment  
 to his highness generally in these terms : " Our  
 " lives shall always be employ'd in the service of  
 " our great emperor : we will not leave a plant  
 " or shrub in the enemy's lands, but we'll sack

Book V. "Navalia, and destroy the Ottoman." Timur answer'd these compliments, by encouraging 'em always to behave themselves like brave men, rather to acquire honor, than in hopes of a reward.

Thus all the army march'd one after the other by Toms, Herares and Couchans, with great ceremony. But when the troops of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, which came fresh from Samarcand, pass'd by, Timur admir'd their beauty, order and magnificence: for a good order in an army is the sole and primary cause of victory, this Mirza had divided his into several bodies, which had each a standard of a particular color, that they might rally when at a distance from each other, and be known in the heat of a battle. A certain number of squadrons had their standards and ensigns deck'd with likewise their cuirasses, saddles, quivers, belts, lances, bucklers, clubs, and other arms, of the same color. Another body of the army was yellow, and another white: there were likewise violet and other colors in the same order. One regiment had all coats of mail; and another cuirasses. The Mirza having made his troops pass in this pompous manner, paid his compliments to the emperor.

The review lasted from break of day till afternoon, when Timur went to prayers. He order'd the Ottoman ambassadors to be conducted thro' all the ranks: they admir'd the arms and beauty of the equipages; and were seiz'd with fear at the sight of this great multitude of soldiers, having never seen any thing like it. Next day Timur gave presents to the ambassadors, and at the audience of leave made the following speech to 'em: "Tell Bajazet, that be-  
" cause he employs the whole strength of his  
" empire.

" empire to make war on the infidels, we are Chap. 45.  
 " sorry we must be constrain'd to conduct our  
 " army into his country; that notwithstanding  
 " all our reasons to make war with him, we  
 " are yet willing to adjust matters with him,  
 " and pardon him. He need only restore to us  
 " the officers belonging to prince Taharten,  
 " whom he hath seiz'd, and send to us one of  
 " his sons, whom we will regard as our own  
 " child, and treat with more courtesy than he  
 " has ever receiv'd from his father. On these  
 " conditions the empire of Naxos shall re-  
 " main unmolested; the war shall cease, and  
 " the inhabitants of his country shall continue  
 " in peace and tranquillity, and have reason to  
 " praise their prince's clemency, on whom the  
 " merit of this action shall fall.

## CHAP. XLV.

### *Taking of the castle of Harouc.*

**A**FTER the Ottoman ambassadors re-  
 turn, the spys who had orders to give  
 advice of every thing which pass'd, inform'd the  
 emperor that in those quarters there was a  
 castle nam'd Harouc, into which a great number  
 of peasants were retreated, having fortify'd the  
 place, with design to make an obstinate defence.  
 The Emir Cheib Noureddin and Bereulac  
 were order'd to ruin this fortress: they departed  
 at the same time, and being arriv'd before Ha-  
 rouc, they cast into it so great a quantity of  
 wild-fire, that they made the inhabitants re-  
 treat from their walls, and no one dur'd show  
 their heads. In the mean while the sappers



Book V. work'd with a great deal of briskness, and soon  
 call down the walls. A general assault was immediately given, and all the peasants put to the sword.

## C H A P. XLVI

*Timur marches to Caesarea in Cappadocia, and to Ancora.*

WHEN the army was encamp'd in the neighborhood of Sebaste, the guides brought advice that the road of Focat was full of forests, the passages of which are extremely narrow; that Bajazet was arriv'd at Tocat with a numerous army, and had seiz'd on the passage of the river \*. This oblig'd Timur to turn towards the southern side of Natolia: He took the road to Caesarea in Cappadocia, and sent before Ali Sultan Tavachi to hinder the troops going into the city. Timur was six days in his march from Sebaste to Caesarea, where he staid some time, and granted quarter to the inhabitants, as well the criminal as the innocent. Some fled for refuge into caverns and caves; whom the soldiers perceiving, pillag'd their effects, because of their being so suspicious. As it was the season for reaping the corn and pulse in that country, the soldiers had orders to gather enough for the ammunition appointed to 'em. Timur nam'd the Mirza Aboubecre, and the Emir Cheik Noureddin for leaders of the

\* The river of Col-Irmak, which falls into the Taurus or Black-sea, and passes by Amasia.

scouts: and he departed for Ancora, arm'd with his cuirass and helmet. He march'd three days on the bank of the river nam'd Yaulgoun-Soul; and the fourth he encamp'd at Kitcherher\*, where he had advice that Bajazet's army had been seen.

Hereupon he gave orders for the army to march that way and encamp: and round the camp to dig a trench, which shou'd be fortify'd with bucklers and palisadoes: Timur sent the Emir Chamelic with a thousand horse to gain intelligence. This Emir being favor'd by the night, advanc'd about two leagues towards the enemy's cavalry: and at break of day he discover'd he was near Bajazet's camp: so he hid himself in an ambuscade to wait a good opportunity. As soon as the enemy's scouts appear'd, he fell upon 'em; and a bloody skirmish ensu'd. Bajazet was very much surpris'd, to hear that a handful of Tartars had dar'd attack his scouts so near his camp: and cou'd not refrain from expressing his sorrow at it to his Emirs: whereupon he decamp'd at sun-rise, and took the road to Kitcherher. Chamelic sent a courier to Timur to give him an account of the skirmish, and of Bajazet's march. Then Timur sent Eltas Coja, Sainte Maure, Mourad, and others, to the number of sixty, to gain intelligence of Bajazet: and the Emir Chamelic return'd in the evening to the imperial camp.

At break of day, Timur deliver'd his sentiments to the Mirzas and Emirs in the following manner: "There are, says he, two different opinions with relation to our conduct in the present conjuncture: one is, that

\* A city between Casarea and Ancora, long. 56. 30. lat. 39. 15.



" we wait the enemy here, to give time to our  
 " soldiers and horses to repose themselves from  
 " the fatigues of a long journey; the other,  
 " that we march into the midst of his country,  
 " and ravage it, which will oblige him to pur-  
 " sue us with expedition: and so we shall de-  
 " stroy his army, which for the most part con-  
 " sists of infantry." He resolv'd upon the last,  
 and order'd his army to march. He left in the  
 camp the Mirza Sultan Hussein with two thou-  
 sand horse: and he sent before to Aucora \* the  
 Emir Berendac, Belleri, and other captains of  
 company, with orders to shut up the passage  
 against the enemys they shou'd meet: some in-  
 fantry were order'd to march with 'em, to dig  
 wells in those places where they were to encamp  
 at night. These Emirs march'd according to  
 order, and were follow'd by Abderrahman Fa-  
 vacchi at the head of the infantry. Those who  
 had been sent out the preceding day to gain  
 intelligence, met a party of the enemy, whom  
 they put to flight, cut off the head of one,  
 and took another prisoner.

In the mean while the emperor Bajazet's son  
 advanc'd at the head of a thousand horse to-  
 wards our camp, to observe our motions. He  
 pass'd the night near our army without being  
 perceiv'd, and laid in ambuscade in a defile. In  
 the morning, when our men return'd from mak-  
 ing inroads, he attack'd 'em; and as they were  
 but sixty in number, he had certainly defeated  
 'em, tho' they fought bravely, and always ad-  
 vanc'd towards our camp, had he not perceiv'd  
 the squadrons of the Mirza Sultan Hussein, who

\* A great city in Scythia, the same as Asghana, long  
 41.



were come to their assistance: so he was constrain'd to abandon 'em, and retreat. Chap. 46.

The Emirs and infantry, who had taken the road to Ancora, acquitted themselves exactly of their orders. The cavalry march'd as far as the city, pillaging all the country: and the infantry who follow'd 'em, dug wells in the road, to get water for the rest. Timur finding the way so good, went in three days to Ancora, and encamp'd near it with all his army. An Emir, nam'd Yacoub, was governor of the fortress for the Ottoman emperor: and the garrison consisted of several of the bravest men in that country, who were resolv'd to defend themselves to the last. Next day Timur took horse, and rode round the city to view it. Then he gave orders for the water of a rivulet which runs into the city to be cut off, and the walls to be sapp'd, while the sappers shou'd be back'd as usual. Some of our brave men even scal'd a bastion which looks upon the rivulet, and almost made themselves entire masters of the town: but advice was brought from our scouts, that Bajazet was advancing with design to fall upon our army in the rear, and was but at four leagues distance. On this Timur forthwith order'd the siege to be rais'd, and that those who were mounted on the bastion shou'd come down fighting: and they forthwith decamp'd.

The army march'd not far that day, but encamp'd, leaving the river behind 'em. Then a trench was dug round about the camp, and fortify'd with bucklers and palisadoes, fires being made all the night. There was a little fountain at the foot of a hill near the passage of the enemy's army: and as the Ottomans had no other water than this, Timur sent a great body of soldiers to destroy this fountain, and corrupt the water. When

Book V.  


When sight came, Timur enter'd his closet as usual, to humble himself before God, and beseech him to give him the victory: when in the most devout manner he offer'd up the following prayer: "O Lord, who art the great creator of the universe, and my particular benefactor, it is of thy grace alone that I hold the victory I have obtain'd during the whole course of my life: for what am I? Does not the union betwixt my soul and body depend on thy will? And thus, Lord, what thou hast done for me, redounds to thy glory: and thou art the conqueror and the triumph'er. On this occasion therefore I beg the continuation of thy favor, which thou hast never yet refus'd me: why then shou'd I despair?"

## C H A P. XLVII.

*Timur ranges his army in order of battel, to fight Bajazer.*

**T**IMUR having spent the night in prayer, at break of day gave orders that the drums shou'd be beat, and that every one shou'd march out of the entrenchments with their arms, to prepare for battel. Then he rang'd his army in order. The left wing was commanded by the Mirzas Charoc and Calil Sultan, who had for their lieutenant-general the Emir Solyman Chah: and the vanguard of this left wing was led by the Mirza Sultan Hussain, who had under him Ali Sultan. The right wing was under the command of the Mirza Miran Chah, who had for his lieutenant-general, the Emir Cheik Noureddin: the vanguard of this wing was given to the

the Mirza Aboubecre, whose lieutenant was the Emir Gehan Chah. Chap. 47.

The main-body consisted of a vast number of the greatest lords in Asia: forty colonels at the head of their regiments were on the right, and as many on the left. The Mirza Mehemed Sultan was general of the whole body: and before him was carry'd the great staff, on whose top was a red horse-tail, and upon that a half-moon: he had for his lieutenants-general the Mirzas Pir Mehemed, Omar Chah, Eskender, and other princes his brothers; with the Emirs Chamfeddin Abbas, Chamelic, Elias Coss, and others. Timur commanded the body of reserve, compos'd of forty compleat companies well arm'd, with which he design'd to succour that part of the army which shou'd have most need of assistance. He order'd several ranks of elephants to be posted at the head of the whole army, as well to intimidate the enemy, as to serve for trophies of the spoils of India. They were cover'd with the most splendid trappings, and as usual arm'd with towers on their backs, in which were plac'd archers and casters of wildfire, to spread terror and disorder wherever they shou'd go.

Bajazet also took care to range his army in order of battel. The right wing was commanded by Pessir Lun an European, his wife's brother, with twenty thousand cavalry of Europe, all arm'd in steel from head to foot, so that nothing cou'd be seen but their eyes. Their armor is fasten'd below the foot by a padlock, which except they open, their cuirass and helmet can't be taken off.

The left was led by Mussulman Chelchi son of Bajazet, and compos'd of the troops of Natolia. The main-body was under the com-

mand



mand to Bajazet himself, having for his lieutenants-general his three sons Moulta, Aisa, and Mustafa. The most skilful of his five sons, nam'd Mehemmed Chelebi, and surnam'd Kerich-archi, was at the head of the rear, and had for his lieutenants Baisah Pacha, Ali Pacha, Haysan Pacha, Mourad Pacha, Aulbe, and Pachadgie, with a great number of brave captains.

Thus the Ottoman advanc'd in good order, and well equip'd, full of ardor to come to blows with our Tartars, who were not less desirous of that than himself.

About ten in the morning, the infantry with their bucklers before 'em posted themselves on the neighboring hills. The drum was beat for the battle to begin, and the great cry *Soudroum* made, at the sound of the large trumpet *Kerrenai*.

## C H A P. XLVIII.

*Timur gives Bajazet battle, and gains the victory.*

THE two armies rang'd in order of battle came in view of each other, being resolv'd either to conquer or die. The drums and little-drums were beat, and Timur got on his horse to go in prayers: following the counsel of the Santon Abdalla Esfari: then he remounted, and gave orders for attacking the enemy.

The Mirza Aboubecr, at the head of the vanguard of the right wing, began the battle by a discharge of arrows on the enemy's left wing, commanded by Musulman Chelebi, Bajazet's eldest son. The Emirs Gahan Ogh



and Caza Osman did wonders, breaking thro' the left wing. Kariachteli, the most valiant of Bajazet's children, perform'd very noble actions: but when he had prov'd the strength and intrepidity of our soldiers, he found it impossible to resist 'em, and so took up a resolution to fly with his troops. The Sultan Hestun, who commanded the vanguard of our left wing, advanced vigorously upon the enemy's right, of whom he made a cruel slaughter. The Mirza Mehemed Sultan, on his knees besought Timur to give him leave to enter the field of battle, and our monarch perceiving our left wing had advanced too far, sent this Mirza to back it. He accordingly march'd thither at the head of all the Behaders\* whom he commanded; and rushing full speed into the midst of the Ottoman army, he broke their ranks, and put 'em into great disorder. The Europeans on the other hand, falling upon our men, gave marks of a prodigious valor and invincible courage. Each party sometimes repuls'd its adversary, and were as often repuls'd by him: but at length our soldiers had the advantage by the death of prince Pasa Isma, as also by the slaughter of the infantry of the enemy's right wing. The Mirzas Pir Mehemed, Omar Ghesh and Esliender, with the Emirs Osmehic, Ghesh Noureddin and Berendac, chas'd the enemy's infantry from the hills where it was posted. Timur perceiving the enemy begin to give way, order'd the Mirzas and Emirs to fall upon the Ottomans with all the army. These generals accordingly advanced sword in hand: and quickly made so terrible a slaughter, that the great

\* The Behaders are the bravest men of the army, as the *Chakachaks* are among us.

Book V. battel between those of Iran and those of Tamaran, commanded by Roustem and Esfendiar, was nothing in comparison to it. Part of the Ottoman army was put to the sword, and the rest fled.

While the Mirza Mehemed Solman routed the enemy's right wing, six companies belonging to this Mirza ascended a hill, which properly was their post. Bajazet, observing their small number, attack'd 'em at the head of his main-body, and having chas'd 'em from that post, drew up his own men there. Our soldiers having join'd the Mirza, rally'd; and being strengthen'd with several regiments, return'd with design to attack Bajazet's main-body. The Ottoman emperor having carefully examin'd from the hill the disposition of his army, and perceiving the disorder, or rather defeat, of his two wings, was seiz'd with fear. And as several of his soldiers came to him, who had fled out of both his right and left wing, Timur advanc'd thither himself with the Mirza Chacoe, and enter'd into the midst of the enemy. The Mirza Miran Chah, with the Emirs of the right wing, and the Mirza Sultan Hussein, with the Emir Soliman Chah, and others of the left wing, hasten'd thither likewise; and at the same time all the troops, falling upon Bajazet, surrounded him with his army, like beasts in the circle of a chace. The Ottoman defended himself like a brave hero, and skillful warrior: he maintain'd his ground all the day, notwithstanding the miserable state he was reduc'd to; and when night was come, he descended from the hill, and fled. Our soldiers discharg'd a shower of arrows upon him, and slew several of his men, while himself escap'd from that danger. Several of our brave warriors pursu'd him sword in hand, kill-



ing every one they met; and as the sun was in Chap. 40  
the sixth degree of Leo, it was so hot, that most  
of those who fled dy'd of thirst, there being no  
water in the place where they went to rest them-  
selves.

After the battle Timur return'd to his camp,  
and gave thanks to God for this glorious victory.  
The Mirzas and Emirs on their knees congratu-  
lated him, and sprinkled upon him gold and pre-  
cious stones. This victory happen'd on friday  
the 19th of Zilcade 804, which answers to the July 1.  
1405.  
year of the Horse.

## C H A P. XLIX.

*The taking of the Ottoman emperor, who is  
brought in chains before the throne of the  
conqueror.*

**B**AJAZET cou'd not fly so swiftly, but  
that he was overtaken by our brave men,  
who went in pursuit of him. The Sultan Mah-  
moud \* Can seiz'd him, bound him as a prisoner,  
and sent him under a good guard to Timur, to \* Grand  
Can of  
Zagatai.  
whom he was presented at the hour of sun-set,  
with his hands bound, by the great Emirs. Ti-  
mur perceiving him in this condition, cou'd not  
still the tenderness of his heart; but was mov'd  
with compassion, and taking pity on the misfor-  
tune of so great a prince, order'd his hands to  
be unbound, and he to be brought before him  
with respect. When Bajazet was admitted to  
the chamber of audience, Timur went to receive  
him at the door of his tent, with great cere-  
mony; and causing him to sit down by him, he  
deliver'd himself to him after this manner.


Book V.

Timur's  
speech to  
Bajazet.

" The accidents in this world happen thro'  
 " the will of God, and no one, how powerful  
 " soever, can conduct 'em as he pleases; yet it  
 " may be justly said, that you are the sole cause  
 " of the misfortunes which have befallen you.  
 " They are thorns which your self have planted,  
 " and a net which you have wove. You have let  
 " your feet stray beyond their bounds, and have  
 " constrain'd me to march against you, to re-  
 " venge my self for your insults. I cou'd not  
 " resolve upon any thing, because I knew that  
 " your troops were always at war with the infi-  
 " dels. I have us'd all possible ways of mildness;  
 " and my intention was, if you had hearken'd  
 " to my counsels, and consented to a peace, to  
 " have given you powerful succours, both of  
 " men and troops, to carry on the war for reli-  
 " gion with greater vigor, and to exterminate  
 " the enemys of Mahomet. To prove your  
 " friendship, I entreated you to deliver up the  
 " fortress of Kemas, and to send back the family  
 " and officers of Tabarten; as also to drive  
 " out of your country Cara Yousef Turcoman,  
 " and send to my court an ambassador who  
 " might be confided in, to confirm the treaty  
 " of peace between us; but you haughtily re-  
 " fus'd to grant these small trifles, and conti-  
 " nu'd in your stubbornness till affairs were drove  
 " to an extremity. Every one knows, if God  
 " had favor'd you with the victory, as he has  
 " me, in what manner you design'd to have  
 " treated me and my army. Notwithstanding  
 " all this, to return thanks to God for my good  
 " fortune in this battel, I will neither treat you  
 " nor your friends ill; and you may rest satisfy'd  
 " as to that point."

Bajazet's  
answer to  
Timur.

Bajazet, full of confusion, confess'd his fault  
 in these terms: " I have indeed done ill in not  
 " follow-

“ following the counsels of so great an emperor, Chap. 19.  
 “ and have likewise receiv’d the punishment I   
 “ merited. If your majesty is willing to pardon  
 “ me, I swear that neither my self nor children  
 “ shall turn aside from the paths of obedience to  
 “ your orders.”

Timur then gave him a splendid vest, and comforted him by kind promises, and by treating him as a great emperor. Bajazet perceiving Timur’s generosity, remonstrated to him, that his children Moalla and Mustafa were with him in the battle; that his heart being tenderly affected to ’em, he besought him to order that search might be made after ’em; and if living, that they might be brought to him: adding, that this wou’d be an addition to the obligations he shou’d be under to him during the remainder of his life.

Then the emperor order’d the Tavatchis to search every where for Bajazet’s children: they found only Moalla, whom they brought to Timur, who gave him a vest, and sent him to his father, Timur sends Bajazet’s sons with honour and respect. for whom he had order’d a royal pavilion to be erected near his own, commanding Hasas Berlas and Bayazid Tchempai to keep guard at the gate, and furnish Bajazet with every thing he shou’d want. Timur, in using Bajazet after this generous manner, imitated the great prophet Mahomet, who, after the conquest of Mecca, return’d thanks to God, and thus address’d the inhabitants: “ How do you think I shall use you  
 “ at this time? ” They answer’d in the proverb: “ You are a generous brother, and the son of a  
 “ generous brother: and the generous man pardons when it lies in his power.” Mahomet said to ’em, “ I tell you the same that Joseph  
 “ told his brethren, who had misus’d him, I



Book V. " have nothing to reproach you with ; may God  
 ~~~~~ " pardon you, for he is infinitely merciful."

## CH A P. L

*Timur orders troops to make inroads in divers parts of the Ottoman empire. He sends relations of his victory to the cities of Iran and Touran, with orders to make public rejoicings.*

**T**IMUR then decamp'd, and went down to the meadow of Ancora, the governor of which place, nam'd Yacoub, came out to cast himself at his feet, and beg his pardon, after having deliver'd up the castle to the officers of the court, who resign'd it to Ali Sultan Tarachi. Then the communitaries of the Divan began to receive the tribute impos'd on the inhabitants of conquer'd places, as a ransom for their lives.

Timur sent the Mirza Mehemed Sultan northwards to the city of Prusa\* in Bithynia, the seat of the Ottoman empire ; and he was accompany'd by the Mirza Aboubecre, and the Emirs Gchan Chah, Cheik Noureddin, Sevidgio, and others, with their Tomans. The emperor order'd the Emir Cheik Noureddin to stay at Prusa, and seize on all the treasures of Bajazet, and the riches of that city. He likewise commanded the Mirzas and Emirs to ravage all the country as far as to the banks of Ilara Yaca', otherwise

\* Call'd Brussa by the Turks; it is situate at the foot of mount Olympus; and was the seat of the Ottoman empire, before the Turks took Adrianople.

' A shoal towards Europe."

nam'd the defile of Alexander. He also sent the Chap. 59.  
 Mirza Iskender with several Emirs towards  
 Iconium<sup>1</sup>, Alekcher<sup>2</sup>, Caraiser<sup>3</sup>, Olaya<sup>4</sup>, and  
 Satalia<sup>5</sup>.

Afterwards Timur order'd an account of his  
 victory, and the conquest of the Ottoman em-  
 pire, to be drawn up by Moulana Chamseddin  
 Munchi, and sent into all the kingdoms of his  
 empire, that public rejoicings might be made.  
 One letter was dispatch'd to the empresses at  
 Sultania; another to the Mirza Omar at Samar-  
 cand; another to the Mirza Pir Mehemed Ge-  
 hanghir at Cabul and Zabul in India; another to  
 the Mirza Roustem at Chiraz, the seat of the  
 kingdom of Persia; and others into Turkestan,  
 Cachgar, Cotan, Bedakchan, Corassana, Care-  
 zem, Mazendran, Tabarestan, Ghilan, Azer-  
 bijana, Irac-Arabi, Irac-Agemi, Kirman, Kid-  
 get-Mecran, and the maritim countrys. The  
 couriers who carry'd these letters had each of  
 'em a guide. On the arrival of one of them at  
 Yerd, the Coja Cayaseddin Selar Semuani, who  
 had resided there to receive Timur's revenues,  
 built a magnificent chappel in the middle of the  
 great square, which he nam'd the chappel of  
 victory.

The Mirza Calil Sultan had orders to go with  
 his troops to Samarcand, and from thence to the  
 frontiers of Turkestan, and to take care of the  
 limits of the kingdom; he was accompany'd by  
 the Emirs Mobacher and Dolat Timur Tavachi.  
 As the Emir Aebouga, governor of Herat, was  
 dead, the Emir Mezzab had orders to repair to  
 that place, and accompany the Mirza as far as  
 Corassana, where he shou'd stop.

<sup>1</sup> Payson city of Roum.

<sup>2</sup> A town of Carandania.

R 1

<sup>3</sup> Timur

B. I. V.

Timur departed from Ancora, and in six days arriv'd at the fortress of Smarhishlar, the walls of which place he ascend'd, and observ'd the neighborhood with circumspection. He sent the Mirza Charoc to Ghulhislar\*, Estanous\*, and Kenir\*, with ten Tomans of the left wing. The emperor afterwards went in two days to Khisourahia\*, a delightful town, as well for the pureness of the air, and the charming taste of the fruits, as for the beauty of its pleasure-houses, and the number of its fountains. As this place exceedingly pleas'd him, he staid here a month, and granted quarter to the inhabitants, on paying the accustomed ransom to his commissarys, who at the same time seiz'd on the goods which Temour-Tach had laid up for a long time in this place. As soon as Timur was arriv'd there, he sent the Emirs Chamolic, Abdolkrim, and Hadgi Seifeddin, with several captains of companies, to Kiarada\*, Coja Eili\*, and Menteche\*.

Timur, being highly pleas'd with the conquest of Natolia, and the taking of the Ottoman emperor prisoner, resolv'd to make solemn feasts and rejoicings, to recreate himself after the fatigues of war. The most beautiful ladies of the court were at these diversions, where the best wines of Asia were drank, and the musicians perform'd extraordinarily. In the mean while the troops sent out to make incursions,

\* Town of Roum towards the north.

\* A town of Roum northwards, long. 82. lat. 41.

\* Or Chisourah, a noted city of Roum, long. 81. lat. 41.

\* A town of Roum near Rhodes.

\* A province of Roum near Rhodes.

\* A province near Satala, which has a town of the same name.



plunder'd and ravag'd all Naxos. The meanest soldier became in a manner a great lord by the booty he had gain'd; and he who before had not a single horse, was now master of several stables throug'd with 'em. The whole army return'd thanks to their Creator, who had so enrich'd 'em. Timur distributed the treasures of Temoor-Bach among the Emirs, which were in the custody of the commissarys; and he reserv'd nothing for his own use, to shew 'em that he fought rather for them, than for himself.

## C H A P. LI.

*The continuation of the history of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who had been sent to Prusa in Bulgaria.*

THE Mirza Mehemed Sultan being departed from Ancora for Prusa, according to the emperor's order, made so much haste in the five days he was marching, that of the thirty thousand horse he had, but four thousand arriv'd with him at Prusa. Yet he cou'd not get there soon enough to execute the design he had in hand: for Mussulman Chetebi had got there before him, and fled with all the treasures belonging to his father, which he cou'd take along with him. The principal inhabitants of the city also fled with their effects and families, some to mount Olympus, other wise nam'd Kechich Daghi, at the foot of which the city of Prusa is situate; and others to the sea-shore. Our soldiers pursu'd 'em, pillag'd and brought 'em away bound. The grand Chief Chamseddin Mehemed Jazari, with the chief men of Prusa,

Book V. was met in the plains of Kurya, by the Char-  
 rifs Mehemed Bocari, and Chamseddin Fanari,  
 and others, who were gone out to make inroads:  
 they pillag'd the Cheik, and brought him with  
 his son to the Emir Cheik Noureddin. Bajazet's  
 wife and two daughters, who had hid themselves  
 in a house in the town of Yenicheher<sup>1</sup>, were  
 taken; as was likewise the daughter of the Sul-  
 tan Ahmed Gelair, king of Bagdad, whom Ba-  
 jazet had demanded in marriage for his son Mus-  
 tafa, and who staid at Prusa with her atten-  
 dants, while her father return'd to Bagdad from  
 the country of the Ottomans, to which he had  
 fled for refuge from our troops.

As for Cara Yousef; as soon as our army  
 arriv'd in the neighborhood of Cæsarea in Cap-  
 padocia, he fled from Prusa to Hillyr, and from  
 thence to the desert of Arzbia.

After Prusa was reduc'd under the emperor's  
 obedience with very little resistance, the Emir  
 Cheik Nouraddin enter'd the castle, and seiz'd  
 on what was left of Bajazet's riches, among  
 which were a great deal of silver-mony, vessels  
 and furniture of gold and silver, pearls and pre-  
 cious stones, rich stuffs, splendid habits, and o-  
 ther curiosities which had been laying up toge-  
 ther a long time. Ali Semnani and Seifeddin  
 Teani, Bitikchis or secretaries to the imperial  
 council, wrote an inventory of these riches.

When they had carry'd away the wealth of  
 the place, the city and castle were pillag'd by  
 the soldiers; and afterwards the houses were  
 set on fire, which being built of wood, were  
 soon consum'd.

<sup>1</sup> Four leagues from Prusa, and six days journey from Con-  
 stantinople; the same as Yenichee.

As soon as the troops which had been left be- Chap. 31  
hind were arriv'd, the Mirza Mehemed Sultan  
march'd to the sea-shore, and sent to Nice \* the  
Mirza Aboubecre with ten thousand men;  
which is one of the most famous citys of Na-  
tolia, the air and water being very wholesom.  
Near it is a lake two days journey in circumse-  
rence, whose water is exceeding sweet and  
agreeable. This city is situate near the Thra-  
cian Bosphorus.

Timur sent the Emir Sevindgie with a great  
body of the army to Kianende †, and along the  
sea-shore; and this Emir pillag'd all that coun-  
try. The Mirza Aboubecre being come to  
Nice, march'd as far as the sea, slaying and  
plundering all he met. Mussulman Chelebi was  
there with several peasants: but having again  
perceiv'd the fury of our soldiers, he found it  
was impossible for the Ottomans, in ever so  
great numbers, to resist 'em: so he embark'd,  
and cross'd the sea. *A reasonable retreat, says*  
*the proverb, is sometimes as good as a victory.*  
Having pass'd the Bosphorus, he went to Sara-  
Yaca; and his wife and effects fell into the hands  
of our soldiers. After the pillage of Nice, our  
soldiers ruin'd that town, and went as far as  
Yemitcha, ravaging every thing, and making  
the people slaves. The Mirza Aboubecre sent  
advise of the taking of Nice to the Mirza Me-  
hemed Sultan, assuring him that all the country  
was reduc'd under the emperor's obedience, and  
that Mussulman Chelebi was fled with great dis-  
ficulty into Europe. The Mirza receiv'd this

\* A city of Bithynia, famous for the first general council  
held in it: long. 38. 35. lat. 41.

† A town on the gulf of Nice.



Book V. news at his camp in his meadow of Micalidge, of which he sent word to the emperor, as also of the state of other affairs, by a hundred men, who immediately departed. He also sent by the same persons a Choncar, which is a very large bird of prey, besides several other presents of great price. The Mirza Aboubecre also sent a Choncar by Ac Sultan.

Between Penta and Kiontahia, which are two days journey from each other, is a mountain full of very close trees, above four leagues in length, into which several persons had fled for refuge: they attack'd the Mirza's messengers in a defile with advantage. Our men, tho' far inferior to 'em, stood their ground; and thro' Timur's good fortune, Mehemed Goussamurbi Yefouri, Ibrahim Ahmed, Faizuddin, Mehemed Calander, and Kefar, defended themselves with so much bravery, that a great slaughter ensued: and the enemy were constrain'd to retreat, and let 'em pass by. They had the honor to salute the emperor at Kiontahia, and offer their presents, after having given him an account of all that had happen'd.

The Emir Choss Noureddin having separated the gold and precious stones from the other riches of Bajazet's treasury, of which he had taken possession, deliver'd 'em to Chamfeddin Ahmitlegh, whom he sent to Timur under a convoy of several brave men. Chamfeddin carry'd all to his highness at Kiontahia. The Mirza Mehemed Sultan being return'd from Micalidge, took up his quarters at Prusa, where he was join'd by the Mirza Aboubecre, who was come from making inroads. The Emir Sevindgie also came there, after having pillag'd the villages on the sea-shore, and ruin'd Kianende. Then the Mirza Mehemed Sultan decamp'd with all his troops,

troops, and went down to the meadow of Ye-Chap. 12.  
 nishcher, contiguous to that of Prusa, where  
 the Mirza Aboubecre, with the emperor's per-  
 mission, marry'd Bajazet's eldest daughter.

## CHAP. LII.

*Account of the Mirza Sultan Hussein, and  
 the Emir Solyman Chah, who were gone out  
 to make invasions.*

THE Mirza Sultan Hussein, and the Emir  
 Solyman Chah, who were gone out to  
 make invasions in the southern parts of Natolia,  
 plunder'd Kepec a Turcoman prince, and took  
 the towns of Akheker and Caraiser, in which  
 places the Emir Solyman Chah establish'd govern-  
 ments to defend the inhabitants from insults. He  
 plac'd Tcherkes Soutchi in Akheker, impos'd a  
 tax on the towns for the ransom of the inhabitants  
 lives, and plunder'd every one who oppos'd him.  
 He pillag'd the town of Tchaker Baglachi, and  
 the herd of Caoumi Hamid: and seiz'd on so ma-  
 ny horses, camels and sheep, that the soldiers  
 were not able to bring 'em away. After having  
 taken the town of Chehermata, he stop'd at  
 Iecium: he took the tribute of Gane from  
 the soldiers he had made prisoners, which he  
 sent to Timur. The Seid Coja, son of Cheik  
 Ali Behader, went to the country of Aulin,  
 which he ravag'd, killing all the enemy: he met  
 as far as the sea-shore. Bajazet's treasure was  
 carry'd upon mules and camels to Kiourahia,  
 where it was presented to Timur by the

[ The tribute due to a prince from captives.

Book V. Emir Cheik Noureddin, with Bajazet's family, and his beautiful slaves, who were good dancers, cou'd sing well, and play finely upon music. The generous emperor sent to Bajazet his wife, nam'd Delsina\*, daughter of Laus an European, with his daughter and all his domestics; but he was desirous that that princess, who till then had been tolerated in the Christian religion, even in Bajazet's seraglio, shou'd embrace Mahometanism. The Cheik Chamfeddin Mehemed Jazari, who had been carry'd away prisoner of war, was likewise presented to the emperor. They brought to court the Emir Mehemed, son of Caraman, who had for twelve years been kept in chains by Bajazet: Timur honor'd him with a vest and belt, and gave him the government of all the province of Caramaniz, with Iconium, Larenda, Acsersai, Anzarya, Alaya', and their dependences: and thro the protection of our monarch, all these provinces remain'd without opposition in the hands of this Emir, and after him in his children.

---

## CHAP. LIII.

### *Timur departs from Kioutahia.*

AFTER Timur had staid a month at Kioutahia in the delights of banquets and plays, he departed from thence, and was join'd

---

\* The European romances call her Roxana, and say that Timur kept her for his own use; the truth of which this author denies.

\* City of Naxos.



in his way by the Mirza Mehemad Sultan, who Chap. 31.  
had left the Emir Chamseddin Abbas with the  
baggage at Chesherno \*, and was set out with \* O. 12.  
the Mirza Aboubecre, the Emir Gehan Chah, mirza,  
and Sevindgie Behader, to return to court,  
where he kiss'd the ground before the emperor,  
and offer'd his presents.

Timur, who as emperor was oblig'd to take  
care both of church and state, issu'd out a severe  
order that the brave Sainte-Maure and his brother  
Moutad shou'd be put to death, for several  
crimes they had committed; and that even his  
son and other brothers shou'd be sought for, and  
treated in the same manner: which order was  
immediately put in execution.

The Mirza Mehemad Sultan, with the Mir-  
za Aboubecre, and the Emirs of his court, re-  
turn'd to join the baggage, which had been  
left at Prusa and Chesherno. Timur march'd  
towards Tangenaliq, pass'd the mountain of  
Alemuntach, and encamp'd in an agreeable mea-  
dow near it. He then gave orders that the Co-  
ja Firouz, prince of Ilra Yacz, shou'd be put  
to death; and he afterwards ~~made~~ <sup>made</sup> prepara-  
tions for feasts and banquets, with music and  
dancing; and the wine was serv'd about by the  
most beautiful damsels of the country. Timur  
invited Bajazet to these entertainments; that as  
he had tasted the bitterness of his wrath, he  
might also partake of the sweetness of his friend-  
ship. Bajazet was conducted into the assembly  
with great honors, and Timur did every thing he  
cou'd to please him: he spar'd neither caresses,  
nor expressions of kindness and affection; and in  
fine, he even granted him the investiture of the  
kingdom of Natolia, which he had possess'd be-  
fore his disgrace: then the crown was plac'd on  
his head, and the scepter put into his hand, with  
the

Book V. the patents usually given to princes for their governments. After this feast Timur departed, and continu'd his road towards Tancourlik.

## CH A P. LIV.

*Timur dispatches couriers into divers countrys. The arrival of several ambassadors.*

**T**IMUR sent the doctor Bedreddin Ahmed, son of the Cheik Chamieddin Mehemmed Isari, into Egypt, in quality of ambassador to the Sultan Farridge son of Barsac: the subject of whose embassy was compris'd in this letter.

Timur's  
letter to  
the Sultan  
of Egypt.

" By the grace of the Almighty, the empire  
" of Natolia is now reduc'd under our autho-  
" rity, and join'd to our dominions. Our will  
" at present is, that the money which is coin'd  
" at Grand-Cairo, and throughout all Egypt,  
" have our inscription, and likewise that the  
" prayer of the Courbe be made in our august  
" name, and with our titles. We will also that  
" without delay you send Atilnich to our court:  
" and if, inspir'd by your evil genius, you don't  
" readily execute these orders, we let you know,  
" that at our return from the Ottoman country,  
" which will be shortly, we shall march to  
" Grand-Cairo at the head of our ever-victo-  
" rious army. And that you may not pretend  
" ignorance, we send you this ambassador,  
" whose merit you are sufficiently acquainted  
" with."

Bedreddin departed with full instructions the  
1402. 29. Octob. 29. first of Rabinlevel 803, accompany'd by several  
couriers, who carry'd relations of the conquest  
of Natolia into Syria, with orders to make  
public

public rejoicings. Moulana Omar conducted the ambassador as far as Satalia, where he embark'd for Alexandria, from whence he was to go to Cairo; and Omar return'd after they had set sail.

Timur likewise sent two ambassadors to Constantinople, vulgarly nam'd Estanbol, to the <sup>Embassy to the emperor of Constantinople.</sup> Tecoar, or Greek emperor, to summon him to pay the tribute and customs. He afterwards sent two messengers to find out Mussulman Chelbi, Bajazer's son, who had fled to Ibra Yaca, and resided at Ghmelhissar\*, which his father had built over against Constantinople. These messengers had orders to tell him that he must repair to court forthwith, or at least send some money to Timur; otherwise the army would immediately cross the sea to seek him, which he wou'd have cause to repent. Some time after, the ambassadors who had been sent to the Greek emperor return'd, accompany'd with two others, who came to make their master's submission to Timur. They had the honor of an audience; and having notify'd the Tecoar their master's respects and obedience to his highness's orders, they declar'd his consent to pay an annual tribute, and the customs, and to do every thing he cou'd desire of him. At length the ambassadors offer'd their presents, which consisted of gold florins, and several curiosities. Timur impos'd on 'em the tribute he thought reasonable; and they confirm'd it by a solemn treaty. Afterwards he gave 'em vests, and permitted 'em to return home.

\* A town in Europe, built by Briton. There is another of the same name in Asia, near Tar, on the river Oxus.



When Timur was arriv'd at Boulbuk\*, he was join'd by the messengers he had sent to Mussulman Chelebi; and with them came the Cheik Ramadan in quality of ambassador, with several presents of animals, horses and florins. This ambassador, who was a very illustrious person, having been prime minister to Bajazet, and grand Cadi of the empire, brought a letter from his master to Timur in these terms. "I have the honor to call my self your highness's servant. "If you have had the goodness to pardon my father, and have done him the honor to grant him a place in your imperial assembly, according to his rank; I have all the reason in the world to confide in your highness's bounty: and whenever you shall order it, I will come to the foot of your imperial throne, and perform the dutys of a faithful servant in whatever you shall please to command me."

Timur receiv'd the letter and the ambassador's speech very graciously, and return'd the following answer. "All that ought to have happen'd in this affair has happen'd: fate has executed its purpose.—We have pardon'd all that is pass'd: and so your master need only come here without any fear, that there may remain no more animosity between us, but that I may give him some marks of my favor." Then Timur presented a belt and a cap of gold to the ambassador, and dismiss'd him.

Advice was afterwards brought that the Sultan Mahmoud Can, titular emperor of Zagatai, who by Timur's order was gone to make inroads in the Ottoman country, had been seiz'd with a violent distemper at Katchic Boulough,

---

\* A town of Naxia, long. 51. lat. 40.

and had pass'd from this world into the other: Chap. 33.  
at which news Timur was very much afflicted.

In the mean while the Emirs ravag'd the maritime countrys of Natolia. The Emir Chamelic pillag'd Ketchic Boulough, Acyaca, and Satalia, situate on the sea-shore. The Cheiks Ali Seblai and Hadgi Selhuz were slain. The provinces of Mentechia and Teke Eili were afterwards ruin'd, and the Emirs return'd to court laden with booty. During autumn Timur lay encamp'd at Tangouzliq, to which place the Seid Coja return'd, after having pillag'd Aidin. As it was exceeding hot, and the air infected at Tangouzliq, several soldiers fell sick and died; and even Seid Coja was near the point of death, but the joy he conceiv'd at the good reception his highness gave him, restor'd him to his health.

In this place is a fountain, whose water petrifies when it stagnates; and some soldiers, who being ignorant of its effects, had drank of it, lost their lives. A petrifying water,

## CH A P. LV.

*Timur regulates the winter-quarters.*

**T**IMUR held a council with the Mirzas and great Emirs touching the distribution of the winter-quarters: he appointed a town to each colonel, and sent orders to the Mirza Mehemmed Sultan to pass the winter at the town of Magni Siah \* in the province of Serhan Eili \*. \* Or Sa-  
Thus Mirza departed from Prusa to Micalidje, town Eili.

\* Long. 60. lat. 40.



where he staid several days; from whence he march'd to Balaisira, which he pillag'd, and encamp'd in a meadow. In the night he was attack'd by Elias Soubachi at the head of a number of peasants, of which Velador had given advice, tho too late; for the enemy came to surprise our camp, while part of the soldiers were gone to make inroads, and the others were asleep in the camp without any precaution. The Mirza immediately took horse, and sallied out of the camp; and the Emir Gehan Chah with the other Emirs having join'd him, they fell upon the enemy, and having slain several, and constrain'd the rest to fly, they encamp'd in that meadow, till the Mirza's equipage arriv'd there. The Emirs Gehan Chah and Serindgie were sent from this place to the town of Birana to pillage it. The Mirza after that went to Magni Shah, where he pass'd the winter: this town is situate at the foot of a mountain, wash'd by many rivulets, the waters of which are wonderfully good, and the air is sweet, even in winter.

The Mirza Charoc, with the troops of the left wing, had the province of Ghermyan-Eili for his winter-quarters: and he encamp'd between Olouc-Bourlough and Kerchie-Bourlough.

Timur departed from Tangouzbik, and march'd to Dougourlic, a town full of goods and all sorts of delicious fruits, to the inhabitants of which he granted quarter on the payment of the tribute for their ransom. Then he cross'd the river of Mendouras\* on a bridge which Temour-tach had built, and encamp'd on the other side.

---

\* Or Maïre, a river which passes by Tise in Nandia, and Aïsin, and falls into the Archipelago.



where he gave audience to the Emir Mehemed *Chapter 11.*  
and Esfendiar, sons of the Emir Mousamed prince  
of Mentecha, who made him a present of a  
thousand horses. Timur, after giving 'em an  
honorable reception, presented 'em with a vest,  
a belt and a crown. Esfendiar follow'd the court,  
and Mehemed consented to pay the tax, and  
return'd to the place of his residence, with  
the receivers Ellas Coutehin, Firouz Ghah, and  
Mirouz Chah Cherbetdar. Timur being arriv'd  
at Ghurelhillar, staid there some days till the  
entire payment of the ransom was made. Near  
this place was a mountain, in which two hun-  
dred peasants had fortify'd themselves: these  
rash fellows slew and pillag'd our soldiers, who  
were gone out to fetch in wood and forage.  
Timur being inform'd of this, resolv'd to attack  
'em in the night. Several of our soldiers who  
were engag'd, invested the mountain, and at  
break of day fell upon these villains, whom they  
cut in pieces, and afterwards return'd to the  
camp. The doctor Abdelgebbat Carizmi fell  
sick, and died in this place.

Timur departed some days ~~after~~ from Ghur-  
zelhillar, and went to encamp at Ayazlic, where  
he staid several days: he order'd 'em to pay the  
tribute for their ransom, and established a go-  
vernour, and a comptrolber of the finances. From  
hence he went to encamp before Tire, one of  
the most noted cities of Natolia, the inhabitants  
of which he oblig'd to pay the ransom for their  
lives: and those who were gone with the Emir  
Mehemed prince of Mentecha, to receive the  
sums these people were tax'd at, return'd loaded  
with ready money, jewels and divers curiosities,  
and bringing with 'em several horses and other  
beasts, from this Emir: all which they presented  
to Timur.

In the mean while the emperor was inform'd that there was an exceeding strong place on the sea-shore, built of free-stone, surrounded with the sea on three sides, and on the other with a deep ditch, entirely built with lime and mortar, from the foundation to the top; that it was inhabited by Europeans, and nam'd Esmir or Smyrna; that the Greeks esteem it a holy place, and go in pilgrimage thither with great devotion; that near it is another fortress on the ridge of a mountain, also nam'd Esmir, but inhabited by Mussulmans, who incessantly wage war with the others, because of the difference of their religion; and as the Smyrna of the Christians is surrounded by the sea on three sides, the Europeans supply 'em with ammunition and all necessarys, looking upon this place as of great importance, seeing it is at the extremity of Asia and of the Mussulman country; that it had never been taken by any Mahometan prince, nor paid tribute to any; that Amurat, Bajazet's father, had several times appear'd before it at the head of a formidable army, but to no purpose; and that Bajazet had laid siege to it seven years in vain; that this place, as strong as that of Caiber\*, very much molested the Mussulmans, whose blood was always flowing into the sea like torrents.

---

\* A place celebrated in the oriental romances.

## C H A P. LVI.

*Timur besieges Smyrna, and takes it.*

W H E N Timur was inform'd of the state of Smyrna, his zeal for religion inspir'd him with the thoughts that it was his duty to deliver the Mussulmans from troubles, by exterminating their enemies. Whereupon he sent thither the Mirza Fir Mehemed, son of Omar Chelik, the Emir Chelik Noureddin, and others, to summon 'em forthwith to embrace the Mussulman religion, according to Mahomer's order; which if they shou'd be so fortunate as to do, they shou'd be well treated, and partake of his favors: and if they wou'd leave their obstinacy, tho they still remain'd Christians, and pay the tribute, he wou'd fix the sum, and order the receipt; but if they undertook to defend themselves, he wou'd order 'em all to be put to the sword.

The Mirzas and Emirs being arriv'd before Smyrna, sent an ambassador to invite the inhabitants to turn Mussulmans, as well by menaces as promises: but as they were predestin'd to perish, it all prov'd in vain. Mahomet, the governor, had sent to demand succours of all the European princes, so that there was assembled a great number of the bravest Christian captains, or rather a band of desperate wretches, who had laid up ammunitions in the place. Our generals sent advice of all this to Timur, who resolv'd to march thither in person. He left his baggage at the foot of the mountain of Tiro; and tho it was winter, and great rains had fallen,



Book V.

Dec. 5.  
1402.

yet he took horse that he might acquire the merit of this religious war. He arriv'd at Smyrna on Saturday the sixth of Jumadiljeval 805, and sent orders to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who was in his winter-quarters at Magni-Siah, to repair to him. The same order was sent to the Mirzas Miran Chah and Aboubecre, as also to the Emir Gehan Chah and others.

At Timur's arrival before Smyrna, the drums and kettle-drums were beat, and the great cry made by the whole army. The place was immediately attack'd on the land-side; and each general order'd the sappers to work, and the machines and battering-rams to be got ready over-against his respective post; while arrows were shot, and pots of wild-fire thrown upon the gates of the castle. The Emir Chamshie built in the midst of the water, great scaffolds with three feet, near one another, on which they laid planks: and from the two sides of the castle, to the place where the feet of the scaffolds touch'd the ground, they made an even way, which they secur'd on each side, so that the soldiers might fight upon it with safety, as if they were on land. The Musselmans, arm'd with their bucklers, mounted the scaffolds, from whence they gave assaults upon the castle: and as the way was shut up to the sea-side, it was impossible to bring any succour to the besieg'd.

In the mean while the Mirzas Mehemed Sultan and Miran Chah arriv'd, having left the baggage at Magni-Siah under the conduct of the Emir Chamfeddin Abbas: which re-inforcement did not a little serve to forward the siege. Then Timur order'd a general assault. The Emirs of Romans, and the colonels of Hezares, advanc'd with their troops, against  
their

their respective posts; and the assault lasted from morning till evening, and from evening till morning, wherein the bravest men of both sides perform'd actions of the greatest valor. If the attack was carry'd on with resolution, the defence was equally so. The battering-rams and other machines beat down the walls and towers; and the dauntless besieg'd never cess'd throwing pots of naphtha and wild-fire, arrows and stones. In the mean while it rain'd in such abundance, that a second deluge seem'd approaching; notwithstanding which, the indefatigable Timur was always giving orders to his generals, and exciting his soldiers. After the sappers had done undermining, and prop'd up the bastions and courtines with stakes, they put in a great number of fascines done over with naphtha; which having set on fire, the walls on a sudden fell down, and with 'em severai of the besieg'd, who were thereby destroy'd. The Mussulmans forc'd the enemy to quit the breaches, and then enter'd the place, returning thanks to God, and crying out, *Killory!* A few escap'd slaughter by casting themselves into the sea, and swimming to the vessels; while others were drown'd. After our soldiers had put the inhabitants of Smyrna to the sword, they raz'd the houses, as well of the city as of the castle, casting their arms and movable goods into the sea. There were come from certain parts of Europe great ships nam'd Caraca, with two masts, and some with more, which brought over soldiers and arms to succour the inhabitants. When they were come near the place, and beheld the town and castle in ruins, they were struck with fear, and anchor'd. Timur order'd that some of the Christians heads shou'd be thrown into these ships, which the slingers of wild-fire ac-

*Book V.* cordingly did. The mariners seeing their companions heads, return'd in fear, and frustrated of their hopes. From the beginning of the siege to the ruin of the place there pass'd but two weeks; which very much astonish'd the men of that country, who were acquainted with the strength of the place; and especially Bajazet. Every one acknowledg'd that Timur was the greatest and most formidable monarch that ever appear'd in Asia. The author of this history in his travels afterwards pass'd by the walls of Smyrna, which then belong'd to the Mussulmans; and one of his companions having related to him the history of this place, the author express himself in these words: "Smyrna hath been ruin'd by  
 " Timur in less than two weeks, tho' the Ottoman emperor in vain belieg'd it seven years.  
 " judge from hence the power and conduct of  
 " each of 'em."

## CHAP. LVII.

*Second arrival of ambassadors from Bajazet's sons.*

**D**URING these transactions the Cheik Ramadan, who came once before in quality of ambassador to Timur from Mussulman Chelebi, arriv'd here again; and being admitted to an audience, offer'd huge presents of horses and other animals, curious stuffs, and florins of gold; and with abundance of submission made the following speech: "I take the liberty to  
 " represent to your highness, that since you have  
 " been pleas'd to pardon the emperor Bajazet,  
 " and load him with honors and favors, every  
 " one



“ one is freed from the fears he was in, and  
 “ even hopes for advancement thro’ your high-  
 “ ness’s benevolence. The prince Mussulman  
 “ my master, who look upon himself as one of  
 “ the meanest servants of your court, and is re-  
 “ solv’d to obey the orders with which you  
 “ shall honor him, with all imaginable sincerity,  
 “ waits with impatience for an opportunity to  
 “ give you the true marks of his respect, and  
 “ his desire to expose his life in your highness’s  
 “ service, to whom may God continue ever-  
 “ lasting glory and prosperity.”


The ambassador having ended his speech, Timur was touch’d with compassion for the deplorable condition to which Mussulman was reduc’d: he confirm’d him in the principality of all the country of Ilra Yaca\*, for which he issu’d out patents, which he seal’d as usual with his red hand: he honor’d the ambassador with a magnificent vest, and a horse richly caparison’d, with a saddle of gold: and having given him a vest wove with gold, a crown, and a belt for Mussulman Chelebi, he dismiss’d him.

About the same time arriv’d an ambassador, nam’d Cotobeddin, from Ilia Chelebi, another of Bajazet’s sons: being admitted to an audience, he kiss’d the earth, and made his presents: which Timur having accepted, the ambassador deliver’d his message, declaring his master’s respect, and obedience to whatever his highness shou’d order. Then he return’d, after having receiv’d the usual honors, and the testimony of friendship for his master.

Timur afterwards gave orders to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan to besiege the castle of Fodgia\*,

\* Ilra Yaca is Turkey in Europe.

\* A town on the gulf of Smyrna.

Book V.  situate on the sea-shore, a day's journey from Smyrna, because several European Christians had retreated thither. The Mirza immediately departed, and encamp'd before it; and was about to besiege it in form, when the governors of the place struck with terror at the name of Timur, came out to cast themselves at the Mirza's feet; and with submission and obedience gave consent to pay the tribute, provided quarter was granted the inhabitants. The Mirza agreed to their proposal, impos'd a tribute on 'em, and nam'd commissioners to receive it; after which he return'd with his Emirs and troops to Magni-Siah, where he had left his baggage.

---

## C H A P. LVIII.

### *Timur departs from Smyrna.*

AFTER the destruction of Smyrna, and the extirpation of the enemy's of the law, Timur took care to restore peace and quiet to the Mussulmans who inhabited the other castle, giving 'em vests, bucklers, cuirasses, bows and arrows, sabres, lances, and all sorts of arms, to enable 'em to carry on the war of religion in these frontiers against the Europeans, and hinder the Grecian Christians ever passing into Asia this way; and he order'd 'em to build a strong citadel near the place where Smyrna stood.

After Timur had deliver'd the Mussulmans from the continual insults they receiv'd from the Christians of Smyrna, loaded 'em with favors, and succor'd 'em with arms and money, he departed from this country, and went to encamp

at Ayazlic, where he was join'd by the Emir Chap. 18.  
Solyman Canah, who had departed from Ancora  
to make inroads; return'd by Esenac, and join'd  
the Mirza Charoc at Caraigadge: but he came  
alone to court, and after his audience went back  
to join the said Mirza.

An European nam'd Soba, prince of the island Embassy from the prince of Chio.  
of Chio<sup>1</sup>, in which mallich grows, having  
heard by credible persons of the great valor  
and power of Timur, sent him several pre-  
sents by an ambassador, whom he order'd to ac-  
quaint him that he was one of his meanest ser-  
vants, willingly consented to pay the tribute,  
and was ready to obey his highness's orders,  
hoping Timur wou'd design to give him some  
marks of his clemency. The ambassador being  
arriv'd at the imperial camp, was admitted to  
an audience, where he made an harangue in the  
form his master had instructed him. Timur  
handsomly receiv'd the king of Chio's offer of  
service, promis'd protection to him and his sub-  
jects; and after having fix'd the sum for a tri-  
bute, made a peace with him: he gave a vest  
to the ambassador, whom he honor'd, and per-  
mitted to return home.

Timur then sent the Mirza Eskender, son of  
Omar Cheik, and Ali Sultan Tavachi, to plun-  
der the country of Bezem; they enter'd the ca-  
pital of it, and having taken the ransom for the  
inhabitants lives, return'd to the imperial camp.

After this Timur decamp'd from Ayazlic, and  
being arriv'd at Tangouzilq, he was join'd by  
the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who had left his  
winter-quarters at Magni-Siah, and having ta-  
ken the road of Alicheher before the rest, came

<sup>1</sup> An island in the Archipelago.



Book V. to court with a small number of his domestics. Timur order'd him to march at the head of the troops of the right wing by the road of Ancora, and rejoin the imperial camp at Casarea. This Mirza staid at Tangotaliq till all his troops had join'd him. Timur departed from thence for Sultanhisar; he order'd a great number of peasants, who were got together in the neighboring mountains, to be put to the sword; and he gave the towns of Chiontahia, Tangouziq, and Caracheher, as well as the demesne of the province of Ghemyan-Eili, to Yacoub Chelebi, to whom the principality of these provinces fell by right of succession. This Yacoub had formerly fled from Bajazet into Syria, after the conquest of which kingdom he follow'd Timur's court. The emperor issu'd out his patents to this purpose; and honoring him with a vest and belt, left him in this place, the principality of which remains in the hands of his children to this day.

The court took the road of Olour-Bourough, where it was join'd by the Mirza Charoc, who was come from his winter-quarters. As this place had not yet surrender'd, Timur gave orders that it shou'd be attack'd. It was taken in a very short time: and as the Emir Gelalehislam had been slain by an arrow, all the men were put to the sword, and the women carry'd away captive, after the razing of the place.

## C H A P. LIN.

*Taking of the towns of Egridur and Nasibine.*

**I**N the province of Hamid-Eili is a lake of sweet water, five leagues in length, and four in breadth, into which several rivers fall, and go out again by other passages; and round it are kitchen-gardens, orchards, and cultivated lands. On the bank of the lake stands a town nam'd Egridur, built of free-stone; three of its sides are surrounded by the lake, and the fourth by the mountain. This lake is nam'd Falac Abad by some historians. Near the town, in the midst of the lake, are two isles; one nam'd Ghalislan, and the other Nasibine: in the latter, which is exceeding large, is built a fortress with houses and gardens. The people of the neighboring places had convey'd thither their money and best effects; and abundance of soldiers were got into it, who had laid up stores of all sorts of ammunition, believing themselves safe, because of the lake which surrounds the place. Timur being inform'd of all this, conceiv'd it wou'd redound to his honor to conquer this place: whereupon he order'd the baggage to be conducted by the road of Akcheher.

About this time Bajazet falling sick, Timur order'd several skilful physicians of his court, as Moulana Azeddin, Mafoud Chirazi, and Moulana Gelaeddin Arab, to attend him with the same care as they wou'd use towards himself: and Bajazet was conducted with the baggage.

Timur departed from Olouc-Boursough, and in two days and one night arriv'd at Egrikt the 17th of Regeb 803 in the morning. Next day the Mirzas and Rais march'd towards the walls of the town: some ascended the mountain, while others attack'd the gate by the foot of the mountain; they gave assaults on all sides, and soon made themselves masters of the town, which they enter'd in a furious manner, and put most of the inhabitants to the sword, a few only escaping to Nasibine in boats.

Then Timur caus'd floats to be made of the skins of oxen and horses, on which the Mirzas and Emirs cross over to attack Nasibine, which they surrounded, ordering the drums to be beat, and the great cry made. The inhabitants were surpris'd, not imagining they cou'd have been belieg'd by water. The governor Cheil Baba, perceiving he was unable to defend himself, went out, and besought the Mirzas to intercede for him. They brought him to Timur, before whom he kiss'd the ground, submissively begging pardon and quarter. Timur order'd that he and his family shou'd follow the army. Thus Nasibine was taken by our troops, who brought to the camp all the riches they cou'd find, which Timur distributed among 'em.

Then Mobacher's son arriv'd from the Mirza Mehomed Sultan, to give notice that this prince was fallen sick. Timur was exceedingly griev'd, and sent a skillful physician to him immediately, to discover the true state of his illness, and bring him back certain advice of it.

The court at length decamp'd, and march'd toward Alcheher; they met the troops of the left wing, and the Mirza Charoc's camp. This prince made a feast for Timur, and offer'd his presents; as did likewise the Sultan Hussein and  
the



the Emir Solymán Chah, who strove to excel each other in entertaining the emperor. At this time the Emir Mehemed Caraman came to court from Iconium; and under the name of a ransom, he presented such vast sums of silver money, curious suits, and great numbers of horses and camels, that it was believ'd he did more than he was able, considering the small extent and power of his country: upon which Timur distinguish'd him by several honours, and confirm'd him in his principality. As the emperor had before deliver'd him from prison, where he was detain'd by Bajazet, and had restor'd to him his father's estates, so he again join'd other countrys to his domains, and dismiss'd him: after which the court departed, and continu'd its march.

## CHAP. LX.

*The death of the Ottoman emperor Bajazet; and of the Mirza Mehemed Salian, Timur's grandson.*

THE world is so inconstant, that we may rather look upon it as a continual destruction, than an agreeable habitation, since there is nothing of a certain duration but God: a melancholy instance of which we find in Bajazet, who died of an apoplexy at Akchiber on Thursday the 14th of Chaban 805: at whose death Timur was so extremely affected, that he bewail'd the misfortune of that great prince with tears. He began to reflect how providence often baffles human projects: for he had resolv'd, as soon as he had finish'd the conquest of Natolia, to raise the

March 23.  
1403.

1

dejected

Book V. dejected spirit of Bajazet, by re-establishing him on the throne with greater power and magnificence than he had before been possess'd of: but late had otherwise order'd it.

Timur being got to the frontier of Akcheher, Dané Coja arriv'd from the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, with advice that doctor Farradge had given some medicine to the prince, which had had an ill effect; and that the vapors having got into his brain, he was fallen into a delirium. This news very much afflicted the emperor, who dispatch'd away Dané Coja post, to acquaint the Mirza that he wou'd soon be with him.

Timur encamp'd at Akcheher, where he commended Bajazet's officers by several largesses he bestow'd upon 'em. He made a present to his son Moussa Chelebi of a royal vest, a belt, a sword, and a quiver enrich'd with precious stones, a load of gold, and thirty horses: he likewise gave him his letters-patent seal'd with the impression of his red hand; and then dismiss'd him, telling him that the coffin of the deceas'd emperor his father was laid by his orders in the tomb of the Cheik Mahmoud Hairan at Akcheher: and that it shou'd be convey'd to Prusa with all the pomp and magnificence us'd to the greatest kings, to be inter'd in the mausoleum, which he had built there himself.

Timur then left the baggage, and departed from Akcheher, for the place where the Mirza his grandson lay sick. On his way thither he learnt that the hord of Turcomans nam'd Durgot, whose chiefs were Kezerbei and Ibrahim, had revolted, and were entrench'd in a mountain near the great road, hoping to defend themselves there. Some troops being order'd against 'em, they block'd up all the avenues, and invested the mountain; and then attacking the Durgots with

their arrows, they fled. Our soldiers pursu'd Chap. 25.  
 'em sword in hand, slew several on the spot,  
 pillag'd their houses, camels, oxen and sheep;  
 and made their wives and children slaves, to  
 serve as an example to mutineers.

The sixteenth of Chaban, Timur met Dolet March 25.  
 Coja son of Eltelu Bouga, who gave advice that  
 the Mirza's sickness, increasing, his life was de-  
 spair'd of. This oblig'd Timur to hasten his  
 march; and being come to the place where he  
 was, he went up to his bed-side, where finding  
 him very ill, having lost his speech, he became  
 very disconsolate. Timur order'd the Mirza to  
 be put in a litter, and departed the same day.  
 When they had march'd three days journey, and  
 were come near Carahissar', they encamp'd;  
 and here the great and mighty prince, the Mirza  
 Mehemed Sultan, who was but nineteen years  
 old, pass'd from this life into the other, on the  
 18th of Chaban 805, which answers to the March 17/  
1403.  
 year of the Sheep, the sun being in the last de-  
 gree of Pisces. Thus died this great prince,  
 who tho' but a child in a manner, had already  
 obtain'd more vict'rys, and perform'd greater  
 actions of valor, than many famous heroes re-  
 corded in history.

---

\* A city long, 70. br. 32.



## C H A P. LXI.

*Mourning for the death of the Mirza Mehemmed Sultan: and the translation of his coffin.*

THE natural love which fathers bear towards their children, was not the only motive that afflicted Timur for the death of the Mirza; but the great things which this young prince's virtue promis'd, were the principal cause of his excessive grief: he flung his crown aside, and quitted his throne, rent his clothes, and cast himself upon the ground in the most surprizing transports of grief. This caus'd a great change in his temper: and in this delightful season of the spring, instead of being chearful, the princes and lords of the court cloth'd themselves with hair-bags, and black and blue habits, with felts about their necks. The ladys did the same; and they sprinkled earth upon their heads, and fill'd their bosoms with stones: they wou'd take no rest but upon chaff and ashes, instead of bedding; and nothing cou'd be heard in the court but groans and lamentations, especially from the princess Canike, wife of the deceas'd, who was so overcome with sorrow, that she often fell into swoons, and lost her senses.

Such is the flated course of affairs in this world; we shou'd not place our confidence in it, for those who do, will at last repent: but we belong to God, and must return to him. Timur order'd the Mirza's coffin to be convey'd in a litter to Avenic by two hundred horsemen, commanded by seven Emirs; and that

that when they arriv'd there, Oqudel and *Carp.* Oqudelcha shou'd lay the corps in a new coffin, and carry it to the tomb of the prophet Gadar in the town of Saltania; from whence it was afterwards to be translated to Samarcand: and he likewise gave order that the other five Emirs shou'd stay at Avenic with a litter and an empty coffin, whose covering shou'd be call'd up.

After their departure Timur return'd to the camp, and then set out from the meadows of Akhecher to continue his journey. The grief was beyond comparison: and not only the courtiers, but even the soldiers of the army, never cess'd from weeping. When they had march'd some days journey in this condition, the principal Emirs and ministers of state came to the emperor, and falling on their faces, remonstrated to him, that all the soldiers of the army continu'd in such excessive grief, that nothing was ever like it; that the continuation of this grief did not become the majesty of so august a court; that it was better he shou'd arm himself with patience, and endeavor to comfort his royal heart. ~~The~~ at last persuad'd Timur, tho' with great difficulty, to compose his mind, and live after his usual manner: so he gave orders for every one to leave off their mourning-habits, as being of no advantage to the deceas'd.

---

## C H A P. LXII.

### *Arrival of ambassadors from Egypt.*

W H E N Timur's ambassadors, whom we before mention'd, were arriv'd at Grand-Cairo, they found a handsome reception. Far-

Book V. Farrudge, son of Barcoo, surnam'd Elmaishennaf king of Egypt and Syria, having been inform'd all that had pass'd between Timur and Bajazet whom he had esteem'd the most powerful prince in the universe, was now convinc'd that it wou'd be wrong to think of dealing with Timur upon any other foot than that of an entire submission and perfect obedience: and he repented of the difficulty his father and himself had made of sending back Atilmich. He hereupon held a council with the principal persons of state; and with their approbation releas'd Atilmich out of prison, admitted him to an audience, treated him in an honorable manner, and made divers apology for what he had done. He caus'd the money to be coin'd, and the prayers read in the usual name and titles of Timur; and sent back Atilmich, with two ambassadors, Ahmed and Aqa, beseeching Atilmich to be his intercessor at the court. Farrudge order'd his ambassadors to make known to Timur his repentance for his former faults; his consent to pay the annual tribute; and what he had done in relation to the money and the public prayers. He sent as a present, by the same persons, abundance of gold and silver money, precious stones, belts, Alexandrian stuffs, swords of Cairo, horses of a fine breed, and other curiosities.

As soon as they enter'd the frontiers of the Ottoman country, Atilmich set out before 'em for the court; and having the honor to salute the emperor, he inform'd his highness of the affairs of Egypt, and of the Sultan and people's fears. The ambassadors soon arriv'd at court; and being admitted to an audience, declar'd to the emperor the intentions of the Sultan their master, and offer'd their presents.



Timur was again pleas'd to shew his clemency Chap. 51.  
 to the king of Egypt, and spake to 'em as fol-  
 lows. " I know that Farrudge lost his father  
 " when very young; which will make it my  
 " glory to take care of this young prince, and  
 " be to him as a father. If he continues firm in  
 " his obedience, which is the only way of secu-  
 " ring himself, we will give him testimonials of  
 " our benevolence, and grant him succours,  
 " with which he may preserve his kingdom,  
 " provided he zealously continues in the service  
 " of the two holy citys of Mecca \* and Me-  
 " dina." He afterwards presented vests, belts,  
 and crowns to the ambassadors, and permitted  
 'em to return home; giving 'em a crown, a  
 royal mantle, and a belt curich'd with precious  
 stones, for the Sultan Farrudge their master, to  
 whom he promis'd his protection.

## C H A P. LXIII.

*Timur marches against the Caratatars, or  
 black Tartari.*

CARATATAR is a nation of Turks,  
 which Hulacou Can \* list'd into his army  
 when he was sent into Iran by Mangou Can,  
 emperor of the Moguls. Hulacou being esta-  
 blish'd on the throne at Tauris, and having ex-  
 perience'd the malice of this wicked people, ob-  
 lig'd 'em to reside with their familys in the fron-

A. D.  
 1236

\* All Mahometan princes take upon 'em the title of the ser-  
 vants of the two citys of Mecca and Medina.

\* Brother of Mangou Can, and grandson of Genghis Can  
 the great.

Book V. tiers of Natolia and Syria. When by the death of the grand Can Aboulaid\*, there remain'd no longer in Iran any absolute emperor of the race of Genghiz Can, this people revolted, and divided themselves into fifty-two hords, every hundred chusing a particular residence, being all resolv'd to live independent. When Bajazet, after the reign of Cadi Burhaneddin at Sebaste, was become master of this kingdom, he enroll'd 'em in the Ottoman army, and gave 'em a residence in his empire: and as there were no great taxes or tribute to pay in these parts, these Tartars enrich'd themselves, and became exceeding powerful. But Timur, who design'd to make 'em change the place of their residence, and to fix 'em in the colony's of Gete, that they might repeople that country, treated their chiefs in an honorable manner when they came to salute him: he gave 'em robes wove with gold, belts and swords of gold, with several largesses. As no one insulted 'em in the least manner during the whole course of this war, but suffer'd 'em to continue quiet in their hords; this sufficiently denoted that they were in obedience and subjection, or at least ought to have been so.

When the ambassadors of Egypt arriv'd at court, Timur staid three days among the Tatars: and after having held a council, and maturely deliberated about the ways of bringing his enterprize to perfection, he resolv'd to remove 'em out of that country, and conduct 'em into Transoxiana. But as there were between thirty and forty family's of 'em, he order'd the Mirzas and Emirs to surround 'em, each on their respec-

---

\* Son of Colabende king of Persia, and of the race of Genghiz Can.

rive sides, so that none of 'em might get away, Chapter.  
 but not to do 'em the least damage. Accord-  
 ingly the Emir Gchap Chah, with the Emirs of  
 the right wing, and the troops of the Mirza  
 Mehemed Sultan, took the road to Tocat and  
 Amasia. The Emir Solyman Chah, with those  
 of the left wing, march'd by Cafarea and Se-  
 balte: Timur went by the plains of Amasia and  
 Cafarea, the residence of the Caratatars, and  
 he sent the Mirza Chirac, with the Sultan Hus-  
 sein, to cut off their passage, and hinder any  
 one's flight.

The emperor having pass'd the bridge of  
 Kirelisheh, after several days march, arriv'd at  
 the country of the Caratatars, whose chiefs he  
 order'd to be call'd before him. There came two  
 of 'em, Akhi Tebarec and Murrec: they kiss'd  
 the ground before the emperor, who gave 'em a  
 handsome reception, presented 'em with vests and  
 belts wrought with gold, and swore he wou'd  
 never do 'em the least harm. "It is a long while,  
 " says he, since your ancestors came out of the  
 " country of Touran, which was their ancient  
 " residence, into these foreign lands, by the or-  
 " ders of the emperors our predecessors. As  
 " all that vast country is at present govern'd by  
 " one master, God having brought it under my  
 " obedience, you ought to look upon this op-  
 " portunity as very fortunate to you; and re-  
 " turn from hence, with your wives, children,  
 " slaves, cattel, and other riches, under the  
 " convoy of our soldiers, to the country of your  
 " ancestors, where you may pass your life agree-  
 " ably under the shadow of our protection."

I believe it shou'd rather be Actua.



The chiefs return'd thanks to Timur, and assur'd him that they were ready to obey his orders with pleasure; that they look'd upon it as a piece of good fortune to be under his protection; and that they were resolv'd to spend their lives in his service. Timur order'd they shou'd be divided into companys and regiments, and distributed among the Emirs of the Tomans. Being thus made to decamp with their cattle, they began their march; they were prohibited buying any sheep or horses, that they might be less embarras'd in the roads, and that if they shou'd endeavor to fly, they might the better be prevented.

## CH A P. LXIV.

### *Timur returns from Natolia.*

**T**IMUR was highly pleas'd with his conquest of Natolia, of which he was become the absolute and sole monarch, without any opposition, and with the love of all the people; which great affair he had brought about by the strength of his arms and the valor of his soldiers, at the same time that he won the hearts of the people by his good conduct. This last conquest, by the divine assistance, was finish'd in less than a year; and thro'-out all Asia Timur's name was stamp'd on their coins, and the prayers were read with his august titles.

For these reasons his majesty resolv'd to return to the seat of his empire: he caus'd the great standard to be display'd, and began his march with all the army. He sent orders to the empresses Serai Mule Canum, Toman Aga, Tchelpa-

pan Mule Aga, and Canade, mother of the Chapter 4.  
 deceas'd Mirza Mehemed Sultan, to come and  
 meet him as far as the borders of Avenic. This  
 new emperor of the lesser Asia, being arriv'd at  
 Casarea in Cappadocia, the inhabitants fill'd  
 with fear, conceal'd themselves in caverns:  
 whereupon he sent Ali Sultan Tavachi, with a  
 good troop of soldiers, in search of 'em; who  
 having found 'em, they defended themselves  
 against him, and shot him with an arrow in the  
 Vena-cava, of which he dy'd upon the spot.  
 Yet these rebels being vanquish'd and taken,  
 Mehemed, brother of Ali Sultan, caus'd 'em all  
 to be put to the sword, to revenge his death.

Afterwards Timur departed for Sebaste, where  
 he confer'd several honors upon Cara Osman\*,  
 and sent him back into his principality. From  
 thence he went to Arzendgian, where Tahar-  
 ten, like a faithful servant, offer'd his presents  
 to the emperor, of horses, cattel, and other  
 things, nine of each sort. Taharten follow'd  
 the court two days journey: and then Timur,  
 honoring him with a royal vest, permitted him  
 to return home. He sent back the messenger  
 who had brought advice of the empresses de-  
 parture from Sultaniz, with orders that the  
 princes shou'd hasten, that so they might ar-  
 rive at Avenic before the ladys. Timur being  
 come to Erzerom, was join'd by the Mirzas O-  
 lus-Bec, Ibrahim Sultan, Mehemed Gehanghir,  
 Aidgel, and Sadvaccas; his grand-children:  
 he tenderly embrac'd 'em, and was over-joy'd  
 to see 'em; but he cou'd not refrain from tears  
 at the sight of the Mirzas Mehemed Gehanghir

---

\* Made governor of Sebaste by Timur when at Malatia;  
 he was son of the Cadi-Barhanaddin, prince of Sebaste.

Book V. and Sadvaccas, because of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan their father's death.

## CHAP. LXV.

*The manner in which the death of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, son of Gelanghir, was made known to Canzade his mother.*

THE empresses who were set out from Saltania, made preparations at Tauris for mourning for the Mirza Mehemed Sultan : they cloth'd themselves in black, and then came to Avenic, according to the emperor's orders. When they were inform'd that Timur was near the place, they acquainted the princess Canzade with the death of her dear son : upon which she was so transported with grief, that she swoon'd away : and being a little recover'd, she rent her clothes, and twisting her hair about her fingers, began to pluck it out by degrees : she spinn'd, and tore her lovely cheeks with her nails : she swoon'd away the second time, in seeing all the ladies, whose heads were cover'd with black mantles, and who cou'd utter nothing but crys and lamentations.

Timur being encamp'd, they began their crys afresh, and nothing was to be seen more dismal than this court, which at other times was the gayest and most magnificent of all Asia. He order'd that to moderate the princess's affliction, the empty coffin, nail'd down very strongly, and fasten'd with a lock, shou'd be presented to her : she twist'd her self round it, crying and groaning : " My eyes, said this disconsolate princess, were continually looking towards the  
" public



" public road, in expectation of some news of Chap. 67.  
 " my dear child, which wou'd have been the  
 " delight of my soul. I did not expect this cru-  
 " elty from fortune, this fatal dagger, which  
 " thus breaks my heart at the sight of this cof-  
 " fin. O deplorable condition! O wretched  
 " Casrade! O unfortunate prince! thou wast  
 " design'd for the throne of the empire of Iran;  
 " but mettrale's fate has snatch'd the scepter from  
 " thy hands. It is not without cause that a tor-  
 " rent of blood gushes from my eyes, and I make  
 " the earth red with my tears; since, my dear  
 " son, thou hast thus pierc'd my heart in thy  
 " tenderest age."

After this excess of mourning, Timur judg'd it  
 proper to do something for the spiritual good of  
 his soul, which lives as well in the other world  
 as it did in this: he gave alms among the poor,  
 and provided a funeral banquet. The Clergys,  
 doctors, grandees and nobles of all Asia assem-  
 bled together for this ceremony: they sat down  
 according to their rank at the emperor's table;  
 and a Hafiz, with a Nazer, the lecturers, read  
 over the Alcoran several times. The banquet  
 was serv'd up by the emperor's stewards: and  
 the Mirza's brass-drum was beat, as which the  
 ladys, the Emirs, and soldiers, as well masters  
 as servants, on a sudden made a great cry, and  
 wept bitterly; and then the drum was broke to  
 pieces, according to the custom of the Moguls.

The doctors and Imams, who came from Tan-  
 ris, Seltania, Cazuin, and other places, to sa-  
 lute the emperor at his return, and pay their  
 compliments of condolence, endeavor'd in several  
 conferences to comfort him and the princeess:  
 they forgot not any of Mahomet's counsels on  
 this occasion, and strove to incite 'em to pa-  
 tience, assuring 'em that the deceas'd were tor-  
 mented

*Book V.* mented by the lamentations of their living relations, and that it was harmful to their souls. By the force of their eloquence, they persuaded the emperor to arm himself with patience against the assaults of affliction caus'd by so sad a misfortune. Timur then permitted in order to be issued out for leaving off the mourning-habits, black scarfs, hair-sacks, and other marks of grief. He loaded the doctors with favors and honors; and after having given 'em vests, sent 'em back to their respective residences.

*The end of the fifth book.*

---

## B O O K VI.

*A war in Georgia. Timur's return from a campaign of seven years. The defeat and pursuit of Eskender Cheiki, prince of the race of the antient Persians. Timur's departure for the conquest of China. His death at Otrar near the river Jaxartes, and his interment at Samarcand. The strange revolutions which happen'd after his death. The Mirza Calil Sultan his grandson, son of Miran Chah, usurps the crown; and the ruin of that prince occasion'd by his prodigality, and passion for a woman.*

## C H A P. I.

*Timur marches into Georgia.*

**T**IMUR-BECK's greatest ambition being to merit the happiness promis'd to those who wage war with the infidels for the advancement of religion; and Ghourghin king of Georgia, having sail'd in the prin-



*Book VI.* principal article of the treaty made the preceding year, which was to have come at a fixed time to call himself at the emperor's feet, and beg pardon: his highness took up a resolution to march again into his country. To this end, he departed towards Meneoul, where he receiv'd the submissions of Malek Ila prince of Merdio<sup>r</sup>, who repenting of his fault in not coming before to pay his homage, and knowing he shou'd be ruin'd if he lost Timur's favor, confidently set out to come to court: where he presently address'd himself to the Mirza Charoo, whose protection he besought. This Mirza brought him to the throne, where with his head uncover'd, like a criminal, he beg'd pardon on his knees. Timur having reprimanded him, forgave his fault, and comforted him by his kind promises. This prince brought the tribute for several years past, which he paid exactly, and made abundance of handsome presents. The emperor gave him a crown, a royal vest, and a belt set with precious stones; and as an addition to the former favors confer'd on him, his daughter was betroth'd to the Mirza Aboubecre, and so he had the honor to be ally'd to Timur.

At the same time Youani grandson of Acbouga, a Georgian prince, came to pay his homage to the emperor, and made several presents of curious animals and fine horses; being introduc'd by the great Emirs, with Custendil, brother of Malek Ghourghin, king of Georgia, who was at war with him. There came also the lords and princes of all the neighboring places, to pay their respects, and offer their pre-

---

\* A strong city and a principality, near the Tigris, in Mesopotamia.

sent. Timur receiv'd 'em with all manner of Chap. 4.  
 civility according to their birth and quality: he  
 assur'd 'em of his favor, and presenting 'em with  
 vests, sent 'em back to their respective country.

## C H A P. II.

*The government of Chiraz a second time given  
 to the Mirza Pir Mehemed, son of Omar  
 Cheik; and that of Ispahan to his bro-  
 ther the Mirza Roustem.*

**I**N the neighborhood of Meneoul, Timur  
 again invested the Mirza Pir Mehemed, son  
 of Omar Cheik, in the government of the royal  
 city of Chiraz, capital of Persia, for which he  
 issu'd out his letters-patent; and made the Mir-  
 za set out for that country, after having given  
 him a vest and a belt, and nam'd for his ministers  
 Lutfallah, son of Beyan Temour, son of Aq-  
 bouga, and Tchel Panchat Berlus<sup>a</sup>.

Then he dispatch'd orders to the Mirza  
 Roustem at Chiraz to come to court. The mes-  
 senger found him in the summer-quarters of the  
 palace of Casrizer, and deliver'd his commis-  
 sion. The Mirza immediately set out, and be-  
 ing arriv'd at Cansar, a place dependent on  
 Garbadecan, he receiv'd a packet from court,  
 by which he learnt that the emperor had gi-  
 ven him the government of Ispahan<sup>b</sup>, ordering

<sup>a</sup> Two old men of great experience and trust.

<sup>b</sup> Capital of Hirzania or Iraz-Agum, where the king of  
 Persia at present resides.

Book VI. him to send his baggage thither, and go to Ouroudgerd to rebuild the fortrefs of Ormyan. The Mirza Pir Mehemed, who was sent to Chiraz, also arriv'd at Canisr. These two brothers tenderly embrac'd each other, and entertain'd themselves with conversation on the present state of affairs; and afterwards they separated, and took their respective roads. The Mirza Pir Mehemed departed for Chiraz; and Roustem, having sent a lieutenant to govern Isfahan in his absence, went with expedition to Ouroudgerd, the fortrefs of which he rebuilt, and repeopled the city.

---

### C H A P. III.

*Timur sends the Mirza Aboubekr to rebuild the city of Bagdad, and gives him the government of Irac-Arabi and Diarbekir.*

WHEN the court was arriv'd in the neighborhood of Cars\*, Timur order'd the princes his children, and the great lords of the state to come before him; and then made the following speech to 'em. "The war which  
 "the inhabitants of Bagdad have heretofore  
 "undertaken against us, having been obstinately  
 "continu'd by them, has been the cause of the  
 "desolation of their state, our vengeance hav-  
 "ing drawn upon 'em a total ruin. Never-  
 "theless, if we consider that this is one of the  
 "principal cities in the Mahometan world, that  
 "the knowledg of the law deduces its origin

---

\* A city of Armenia near Georgia.



“ from thence, and that the doctors of other Chap. 3.  
 “ countrys have drawn from this source the  
 “ most sacred parts of religion, and the most  
 “ useful learning; it wou’d be a crime utterly  
 “ to destroy this famous city: wh’efore we  
 “ design to re-instate it in its former flourish-  
 “ ing condition, that it may again become the  
 “ seat of justice, and the tribunal both of reli-  
 “ gion and laws.”

The emperor’s speech being universally ap-  
 plauded, he entrusted the execution of this com-  
 mendable project with the Mirza Aboubecre,  
 giving him the government of the provinces of  
 Irac-Arabi, as far as Vaset, Basra, Cundisran,  
 Mersin, Diarbekir, Oirat, with all their de-  
 pendences; and appointing for the great officers  
 of his court the Emirs Payende Sultan, Pir Hus-  
 sein Berlas, Serindgie, Sultan Sendger, Hadgi  
 Seifeddin, Doler Coja Elnac, and others, with  
 a great body of the army. Timur order’d the  
 lords of Irac-Arabi to obey him, and mark’d  
 out his road by the province of Diarbekir:  
 he strictly enjoin’d him to exterminate all the  
 disturbers of the public peace, who remain’d in  
 that country, and to be in Irac-Arabi in the  
 autumn, when the equinox renders the air more  
 temperate. The emperor likewise instructed  
 him to begin with ruining Cara Yonfel Tur-  
 coman, who had made himself master of Irac-  
 Arabi, and afterwards to encourage and com-  
 fort the inhabitants of the country, that they  
 might rebuild their houses, and cultivate the  
 lands; and in fine to employ all his care in  
 restoring Bagdad in its former splendor, that  
 the following year there might depart people  
 enough out of that city, to form a caravan for  
 Mecca.



With regard to Cara Yousef Turcoman, and his usurpation, we must know that that prince, for fear of our troops, fled into the country of Roum or Natolia; but when our army arriv'd at Cusacca, he again fled from thence into Irac-Arabi, where having assembled all the Turcoman hords, he stop'd at Payan-Hit. The Sultan Ahmed Gelair at that time went out of Bagdad, and retir'd to the Sultan Taher his son; but the Aga Firouz, in whom the Sultan Taher repos'd the care of his affairs, excited a jealousy in his master: whereupon he held a council with his father's Emirs, Mehemed Bel governor of Ormi, the Emir Ali Calander, Micayl, and Farrae Chah, who likewise fear'd the Sultan Ahmed, and unanimously agreed to revolt; and having pass'd the bridge during night, they encamp'd on this side the river. When the Sultan Ahmed was inform'd of it, he broke down the bridge, and marching along the bank of the river, stop'd in presence of his son and the Emirs: he sent an express to Cara Yousef to come and join him; which Yousef having done, they pass'd the river together. The two armies being rang'd in order, a battle ensu'd, in which the Sultan Taher was vanquish'd: he endeavor'd to fly; but coming to a brook, and striving to make his horse leap over it, he fell in with his horse and armor, and perish'd.

The Sultan Taher having been thus punish'd for his revolt against his father, his Emirs and troops dispers'd; and the Sultan Ahmed, growing jealous of Cara Yousef, went to Bagdad. Cara Yousef came out of Hille with his army to the gates of Bagdad, and took the city. The Sultan Ahmed hid himself to save his life, but was perceiv'd by one nam'd Cara Hassan, who assisted him in making his escape during the night:

night: and taking him upon his shoulders *Chap. 3.*  
brought him to a place near five leagues distance. On their way they met a man who had an ox, which the Sultan mounted, and went to Teerit with Cara Hassan. Sarec Omar Oirar, governor of that place, made a present of forty horses to the Sultan Ahmed, with what money, arms, stuffs, and belts he was able. The Sultan was join'd in this city by several of his officers, as the Cheik Macfoud, Dolce Yar, Adel, and others. From Teerit he went to Damascus, while Cara Yousef became the peaceable possessor of Irac Arabi. This digression was necessary for the better understanding of the history.

When Timur therefore made the Mirza Aboubecre depart for Bagdad, he sent orders to the Mirza Roustem at Ouroudgerd, to join Aboubecre before Bagdad, and march with him against Cara Yousef. The Emirs Toukel Arus Baga of Hamadan, Tammuscutchi of Nehavend, Chah Roustem of Sendgiar and of Dinaver, had likewise orders to march to Bagdad with the Mirza Roustem. The Mirza Aboubecre arriv'd at Arbele, and caus'd the governor Al-Jalla, and the other chiefs of the rebels, to be seiz'd and sent bound to court, with a present of Arabian horses, the care of which he gave to Ac Sultan. At this place died Payende Sultan Berlas; and the Mirza Aboubecre having left the baggage, march'd with expedition against Cara Yousef. The Mirza Roustem departed from Ouroudgerd, according to order; and having taken the road to the dome of Ibrahim-Lie, he pass'd to Bagdad, and join'd the Mirza Aboubecre in the neighborhood of Hille.



## C H A P. IV.

*Timur's arrival at the frontiers of Georgia.*

**T**IMUR having decamp'd from the neighborhood of Cars, enter'd Georgia. After having pass'd thro Armenia, the Cheik Ibrahim prince of Chirvan, as a faithful servant, was gone before to make inroads into the enemy's country, and had already seiz'd on some passages and delites. Malek Ghourghin, king of Georgia, heard with a great deal of surprise of the march of the imperial standard. Fear excited him to send ambassadors to court with several presents, and the subject of the embassy was compriz'd in this speech.

"There is no comparison, great Sir, between  
 "you and me, who am your slave; and it is  
 "very astonishing that you shou'd have pro-  
 "pos'd to march against so mean a subject as  
 "I am, who am absolutely resolv'd to be-  
 "have my self as your faithful servant; and  
 "as the first order I shall receive from your of-  
 "ficers, whether to send in money, or to march  
 "at the head of my troops in your service, I  
 "will not fail of acquitting my self faithfully  
 "and readily. I have not the confidence to  
 "come down directly to cast my self at the foot  
 "of your throne, for fear has too far seiz'd my  
 "heart: but if your highness shall please to grant  
 "me a short reprieve, till my fear is blown over,  
 "I will run to kiss your feet, as the prince of  
 "Merdin, and other governors have done; and  
 "I shall have the honor to prostrate my self be-  
 "fore you, and receive your orders as a slave, ac-  
 "knowledging this favor as an excess of your  
 "bounty."

Timur

Timur would not hearken to what the ambassadors said, nor accept their proposals: he told 'em, that their master's cause was no ways like that of the other princes, who were Mahometans; because the interest of religion pleaded for them, and render'd their faults more pardonable; but he being a Christian, ought not to expect the same favor; that if he was desirous of life, he must come directly to court; but if the grace of God should not grant him sufficient assistance to enable him to embrace the Mahometan religion, he would impose the tribute of the Carage\* on him, leave him once more the principality of his country, send him back contented, and suffer his subjects to live in peace, without fear of being either murder'd, pillag'd, or made slaves; and thus his honor and reputation would remain unblemish'd. He likewise told 'em, that the emperors of Constantinople, as a Christian, was on the same footing with him; that if Ghourghis had come to court, he would have learnt how that prince had been treated, and what favors he had receiv'd; and that he ought to judge of his own case by the other; but if their master made the least difficulty of coming, none of his excuses should be accepted of. At length the ambassadors were dismiss'd.

About this time Eran Courtian, governor of Tauris, came to court with two controllers and great officers of Azerbaijan: they offer'd their presents consisting of a great number of horses, animals, and other things. Ali Qasim, chief of the Dair of Caucasus, for the Coja Ali Semtani, came also to offer his pre-

\* A tribute which the Mahometan princes exact from the Christians or Jews who inhabit their dominions.

Book VI. *sents, which were distributed among the officers.*

The season for the corn-harvest in Georgia approaching, it was requisite that the Georgians shou'd be hinder'd from reaping and carrying it in; whereupon Timur order'd the Emir Cheik Nouredin, and other Emirs, to enter the enemy's country forthwith: in effect, they chas'd out all the inhabitants, and destroy'd every thing with fire and sword; they reap'd all the corn and pulse, which they ground into meal, and so return'd laden with spoils to the imperial camp.

## CHAP. V.

*The taking of the famous castle of Cortene in Georgia.*

THERE is a steep mountain in Georgia, a hundred and fifty cubits high, situate between two very deep defiles: on the south of it is a rock, which surpasses it in height, and which they ascend with ladders and cords. There is but one way to this mountain, and that very narrow and crooked; besides, the precipices which surround it hinder an army from encamping and besieging it. The Georgians had fortify'd this mountain on all sides, having built houses upon it, and a gate at the very extremity, with cisterns to preserve rain-water. It was commanded by a Georgian prince nam'd Tral, who had under him thirty great Officers, and a strong garison; they were not apprehensive of any scarcity, their cisterns being fill'd with water, their cellars furnish'd with delicious



clous wines, and the place stor'd with swine and sheep Chap. 5.

Timur being appriz'd of the importance of this place, resolv'd to take it, notwithstanding the great difficultys which wou'd attend the siege, as it was in the midst of the enemy's country, and wou'd require a great number of soldiers to carry it on, who wou'd not be able to find victuals and even water enough for 'em. Every one was surpriz'd at this underraking, and believ'd it impossible to take the place: unless the sole fear of Timur, who design'd to go there in person, shou'd seize the hearts of the besieg'd, and make 'em surrender: but God had otherwise order'd it.

The imperial standard arriv'd before the castle of Cortena on the 14th of Muharram 806. The inhabitants immediately sent to salute the emperor, offer him their presents, and assure him of their submission: but seeing their flatterys cou'd not hinder the place being attack'd, they confided in the strength of their walls, and declar'd war by a discharge of arrows and stones. Timur at the same time order'd the Emirs to take their posts round about the place: the Emir Chamelic was fix'd on the side of the gate, having orders to build sconces over-against it: two other Emirs had likewise orders to erect two sconces in different places. This was done, that if the siege shou'd last too long, a garison might be put in 'em, to incommode the place. Chamelic finish'd in three days one of these sconces capable to contain three thousand men; which excited the admiration of the whole army.

Timur encamp'd behind the fortress in a place proper to build battering-rams and other machines, and order'd a platform of stone and wood, which is call'd *Ideljour*, to be built between his

Book VI. camp and the castle, so high that it shou'd com-  
 mand the place, tho the Georgians had ima-  
 gin'd that the height of their mountain wou'd  
 have preserv'd 'em from all manner of insult.  
 This work was not finish'd in less than a week,  
 Aug. 30. and on the 21<sup>st</sup> of September, a Meersie, nam'd  
 Bikhidzek, who was skilful in marching over  
 mountains, found means during night to get un-  
 perceiv'd upon a rock, south of the castle; there  
 he caught a goat, and carry'd it to the very  
 top of the rock, where having hol'd it, he plac'd  
 it for a signal, and then descended without be-  
 ing seen by the Georgians. Next day Bikhidzek  
 relate this adventure to the emperor who ap-  
 plauded him, and gave orders for some very  
 strong cords to be made of raw silk and thread,  
 and ladders to be made of the cords: and then  
 Aug. 31. his Majesty immediately ascended this rock,  
 and gave up the ladders with long cords. On  
 Aug. 21. the 21<sup>st</sup> of September this design was executed:  
 they mounted by an arch, which a goat cou'd  
 scarce pass. A tree having grown out of the  
 very ridge of this rock, they fasten'd the lad-  
 ders to it, when they had drawn 'em up. The  
 King Camelic II. is at the bottom of the lad-  
 ders, and a desire of the brave Turks of Co-  
 ramana ascend, whereupon he took down in  
 writing: Argoudie was 16 of 'em. The  
 Georgians were fall asleep while these things  
 were passing. At break of day a Caramanian  
 cried out with a loud voice, Allah Feber, and  
 high'd Mahamet, Mahmoud, an officer of the  
 Afghan Charge, at the same time sounded his  
 trumpet; and the Georgians surpris'd at the  
 alarm given 'em by the watch, ran to their  
 arms to defend themselves. Timur took horse,  
 pass'd the defile, and stop'd over-against the  
 rock, which our brave men had mounted: he  
 order'd

order'd the beaſt drum to be beat, and the great cry *Sourghum* made thro' out the whole army. Chap. 4.

In the mean while, the way to the place by the rock being very narrow and dangerous, no more than three persons being able to march in front, one of our brave warriors march'd foremost, holding his buckler before him; he was sustain'd by two others, who advanc'd with him, but an arrow struck him in the mouth, which made him fall backwards, and the enemy's seiz'd on his buckler. *Abdulla Selmanari* advanc'd sword in hand, and slew some Georgians, till being mortally wounded in ten or twelve places, he fell down thus weakly. The Turk *Mahmoud* fell upon the enemy with a heavy club, with which he broke the leg of a very considerable Ottoman. In fine, of the fifty men who had mounted to the assault, several arriv'd at the gate of the castle, where a bloody skirmish ensu'd. Some also continu'd to attack the place from the *Meljar* before mention'd, so that the gate was broke, and the troops enter'd the castle.

This conquest happen'd the 21<sup>st</sup> of *Muharrem*, after a siege of nine days. The besieg'd beg'd for quarter on their lives: but most of the Ottomans or officers were precipitated from the walls: the governor, *Tial*, was bound and carry'd to the imperial camp with the whole garrison, of whom not one escap'd. At the same time the *Tenghis* and standard of *Mahomet* was erected upon the walls; and the *Muezzin* repeated the prayers of the *Alcoran* on the top of the church, and made the cry *Yran*, which is

1 A standard on whole top is a fortress.



Book VI. us'd to call the Mahometans to prayer. This conquest deserves to be recorded in history; and it is reported that the great Mahmoud Subeslekin never gain'd so considerable victorys over the infidels of India, as our conqueror did over those of Georgia. Timur order'd Tral and all the garison to be beheaded, and their wives and children carry'd away captive; and he gave Tral's wife as a present to the Cheik Ibrahim, prince of Chirvan.

Timur afterwards order'd the machines, and Melsour, which had been erected against the place, to be burnt; and he return'd to his camp, where he heap'd honors and favors on Bikedek and the other brave men who had first mounted the rock; he order'd many out of his treasury to be distributed among 'em, and gave 'em robes, sabres, belts, horses, mules, tents, umbrellas, young women, camels, furniture, and even gardens and villages in their respective country. He invested Mehemed Touran, sultan'd the king of Bauran, who was one of the principal lords of Corassana, in the government of the place, assigning him a good garison of Corassanians: he gave him the revenues of the neighboring country, and enjoin'd him to preserve these frontiers for the Mussulmans, and not permit the Georgians to gain any more footing in the country; he order'd him to convert the church into a mosque, and build a niche to it instead of the altar, and in lieu of bells and crosses, to establish Muezzins and readers of the Alcoran, according to the Mussulman law.

## CHAP. VI.

*Relation of what pass'd without during this  
siege.*

**D**URING these transactions, the doctor Cotobeddin Carini came to court with all the great officers of Chiraz: he offer'd several presents of the finest stuffs, Arabian horses, mules for riding, and furniture, as pavilions, tents, umbrellas, and other curious things. Afterwards Hadgi Muzaffer arriv'd from the Mirza Roussem, and made his presents. The Coja Muzaffer Nehenzi also came from Isphahan, and presented a great quantity of money, pearls, precious stones, horses, saddled mules, stuffs, tents and pavilions, as likewise droves of horses and mules of carriage, with arms, and vessels and boxes of gold and silver. Timur distributed all these presents among the princes and lords of his court.

About the same time Idocon Berlas and Ahmed Daoud, who had been sent to Kirman, to receive and take care of the imperial treasures, as also Seifel Mulouk Hadgi Abdalla, receiver-general, return'd to the imperial camp: they had an audience of the emperor, who gave 'em a handsom reception, and to whom they offer'd their presents after the usual manner: they were accompany'd by the principal inhabitants of Kirman, and among others by Moulana Zyaddin Serradge, the Cheik Sedreddin, who were both Cadis, the Seid Hamza, and the Cheik Mahmoud Zendghi Adgem, author of the book call'd Dgiouch or Khourouch, which treats of  
the

**W** Book VI the exploits of the glorious Timur: but this learned author had the misfortune to fall from off the bridge of Tolia, which is built over the river Cyrus, and be drown'd: his son, who continu'd that work after his father's death, paid his respects to the emperor, who receiv'd him with a great deal of kindness, and comforted him by his favors for his father's death.

Yousuf Gellil, Beroga of the city of Yezil, and Cayaseddin Salar Semnani, receiver-general of the revenues of the same city, as well as the commissaries of the Divan of Yezil, came up to court; as did all the great officers, and governors of the several provinces and cities of Corassana and the two Iracs, who paid their homage at the foot of the imperial throne, and offer'd their presents, which consisted of the greatest cariositys of all Asia.

## C H A P. VII.

### *Timur marches to Abkhaze.*

**A**FTER the taking of Cortene, Timur summon'd the lords to a diet, where he made a magnificent banquet, and distributed his favors among the officers, according to their ranks. He then took up a resolution to march to Abkhaze: he order'd the Emirs Cheik Nouceddin, Chamellil, and others, to set out before with several squadrons, to ravage and lay waste Georgia, as far as Abkhaze, which is the northern frontier of that kingdom. They accordingly began their march: but as the way was full of woods, the soldiers were oblig'd to cut down the trees to open a passage; and they

mind



ruin'd every thing they met with in the country's Chap. 7.  
of the Armenians and Georgians. They were  
follow'd by the imperial standard; and Timur  
soon after enter'd into the middle of Georgia,  
where he plunder'd seven hundred towns and  
villages, laying waste the cultivated lands, ruin-  
ing the monasterys of the Christians, and raz-  
ing their churches to the very foundation, which  
were built of marble and free-stone.

But the Georgians having abandon'd their  
houses, were retir'd into caverns situate among  
rocks and high mountains, which they had as-  
cended by ladders, which they drew up after  
'em; and had fortify'd themselves in these caverns.  
Timur order'd a sort of boxes to be tied with  
chains, in each of which he plac'd several per-  
sons arm'd; these boxes were let down from  
the top of the mountain with great cords to the  
level of the caverns, where our drumless sol-  
diers attack'd the enemy's with their arrows, and  
advanc'd to the mouths of the caverns with their  
swords and lances. They made their way into  
'em notwithstanding the number of the enemy's,  
and the advantage of their post; and tho in some  
of those caverns there were near a hundred Geo-  
rgians, yet they leap'd out of their boxes into them,  
where they put all to the sword, making them-  
selves masters of their spoils, and acquiring the  
merit of the Gazie. They punctually fulfill'd  
the Alcoran, which enjoins us to treat the ene-  
my of the Musliman religion with rigor; and  
they rooted up and burnt the trees, making ha-  
vyock every where.

The 14th of Rabiulvel 806, the Emirs and Octob. 11.  
troops rejoind the imperial camp; next day they 1403.  
all pursu'd the chase, and took a great deal of  
game. Timur hunted the day after, and con-  
tinu'd to ruin the country, slaying all the Georgi-  
ans he met,

## C H A P. VIII.

*Timur returns from Abkhaze. The cause of his return.*

SEVERAL Georgian lords, who were slaves in Timur's army, having sent advice to king Ghourghin that this conqueror had render'd himself master of the country as far as Abkhaze, and that there remain'd no footsteps either of Armenia, or of the Armenians; that prince was seiz'd with fear, because this advice came from men of his own nation: whereupon he immediately sent ambassadors with presents to Timur. The remonstrance the Georgian slaves made to Ghourghin on this occasion, resembles the counsel the bishop of Nedgeran gave to his own people in the time of Mahomet. There goes a tradition that the inhabitants of Nedgeran being come to Medina, were so stubborn and proud as to dispute with Mahomet, and not receive the instructions he wou'd have taught 'em. Then the lord Ali, with Mahomet's daughter Fatima, and two grandsons Hasan and Hussein, came to the assembly to dispute with the Christian bishop: but this doctor, being surpris'd at what he saw, far from disputing, said, "The men I now behold have  
 " their faces irradiated: if they shou'd beseech  
 " God to remove the mountains of the place,  
 " he wou'd assuredly grant their request; and if  
 " they shou'd be suffer'd to offer up their prayers  
 " against the Christians, not one of 'em wou'd  
 " remain alive." These words of the bishop struck terror into the Christians, who consent-

ed to pay the annual tribute; after which they Chap. 8.  
return'd to Nedgeran, because their bishop had  
on this occasion, seen the lords of Mahomet's  
family transform'd into angelical beautys. It  
seems as if some such vision had engag'd the  
Georgian slaves to write thus to Malek Ghour-  
ghin.

When the ambassadors of the king of Georgia  
were arriv'd at court, they address'd themselves  
to the generals of the army, and besought 'em  
to intercede for them, humbly remonstrating  
that their master was perfectly submissive and  
obedient; beseeching 'em to employ their good  
offices to appease Timur's wrath, and obtain  
pardon for their master, who wou'd not fail of  
sending immediately to court all his riches and  
curiositys, and likewise the annual tribute; and  
even promising that he shou'd send to the im-  
perial camp, whenever he had orders so to do,  
the troops which shou'd be requir'd of him.

This discourse touch'd the Emirs, who in-  
troduc'd the ambassadors into Timur's presence;  
who gave an account of the subject of their em-  
bassy as usual: and the generals having found a  
favorable opportunity, on their knees related to  
Timur Malek Ghourghin's propositions, and  
spoke to him as follows.

" It is certain that your highness's intencion  
" in all your wars is only the increase and honor  
" of the Mahometan religion: we see that  
" God has bless'd your zeal in such a manner,  
" that the Mussulman law has never before ar-  
" riv'd at so high a pitch of glory in these coun-  
" trys, for former emperors, and the most pow-  
" erful Sultans of antiquity, accounted them-  
" selves happy when the Georgians gave only  
" a few marks of their respect and obedience,  
" either by sending a yearly present of horses,

" or



Book VI.

or by furnishing a small number of troops, when their occasions requir'd 'em in some war: and on these conditions the Georgians liv'd freely in Persia and the Mussulman kingdoms. But at present, thro' your highness's great power, they esteem themselves happy, even in being shut up within the narrow parts of their kingdom, as long as they have quarter granted 'em for their lives. The Mussulmans have enter'd their capital city, and enjoy themselves there, as if they were the masters of 'em. And thus, if your highness will grant 'em quarter on paying the tribute, and exactly obeying your orders, they will become faithful servants, and acquit themselves of their duty with entire submission and sincerity.

All the Emirs cou'd say, was not able to abate the emperor's zeal for the continuance of the Gazie; which oblig'd these lords to propose the affair to the doctors of the law and to the Muftis, who unanimously declar'd in the imperial council, that since the Georgians consented to pay the tribute, and not to injure the Mussulmans, they were oblig'd by their law to grant 'em quarter, without doing 'em any further harm either by slaughter or pillaging. According to the conclusion of the doctors, and in condescension to the prayers of the Emirs, Timur granted this favor to the Cheik Ibrahim, one of the intercessors; and nodded to him, in token that in respect to him he condescended to the request of king Ghourghin. He sent back the Georgian ambassadors between hope and fear: and afterwards he spent several days in these quarters in the diversion of the chase, till the return of the ambassadors, which happen'd soon. When they came back, they brought with

'em a thousand gold medals struck in the name *Chap. 9.*  
and august titles of Timur, with a thousand hor-  
ses, and great quantities of curious stuffs, as also  
vessels of gold, silver and chrystal, and a very  
fine balas ruby, of a beautiful color, weighing  
eighteen Medicales, there being few which  
weigh so much. They presented the whole,  
and oblig'd themselves by an oath to pay the  
tribute.

Then Timur prepar'd to return home: he de-  
camp'd, and after some days march arriv'd at  
Tedis, having ruin'd all the churches and mona-  
sterys in the neighboring parts. When he had  
gone two days journey beyond the river of Cy-  
rus, he resolv'd to march to Carabagh to rebuild  
the town of Balaican: he set out before with  
some of his favorite lords, and having pass'd by  
Berda, encamp'd near Balaican, where he was  
join'd a fortnight after by the army and bag-  
gage, who also encamp'd there.

## C H A P. IX.

*Timur orders the town of Balaican to be  
rebuilt.*

THE Alcoran remarks, that the rebuilding  
of places is one of the most glorious actions  
which princes can perform in this world, and  
which conduces most to the good of society.  
When the army decamp'd in autumn, Timur was  
incited to take up his winter-quarters at Car-  
bagh: where, not to lose time, and to keep the  
troops in action, he resolv'd to rebuild the town  
of Balaican, which had been a long time ruin'd,  
so that it was inhabited only by insects, *scilicet*  
owls,

*Book VI.* owls, serpents and scorpions. Tho' the season was very cold, and the rains continually molested our soldiers, yet Timur soon after his arrival gave orders to the engineers and architects to draw the plan of the town, which should consist of a wall, a ditch, four market-places, and a great number of houses, baths, caravanseras, squares, gardens, and other commodious places. They laid the foundations, and having mark'd 'em with lines, the emperor divided the work among the soldiers, under the inspection of the Chahzades<sup>1</sup> and Emirs. They wrought with so much diligence, that the buildings which were of brick, were finish'd in a month: the circumference of the walls was two thousand four hundred cubits of large measure, the thickness eleven cubits, and the height fifteen: the ditch was thirty cubits broad, and twenty wide: at each corner of the place was a great bastion, and in the middle of each countine was a gallery with battlements, and a machine to cast stones. In fine, this prodigious undertaking, which the greatest emperors of antiquity were never able to finish in a year, was compleated in a month, notwithstanding the excessive cold and rains: the readiness with which Timur's orders were obey'd, was abundantly more surprizing than the execution of so vast a project. Never prince carry'd a more majestic and terrible air in his wrath; nor yet a more sweet and agreeable one, when he was pleas'd to bestow his favors.

Timur gave the government of Bailacan, Berdaa, Ghendgeh, the country of Arran, Armenia, Georgia, and Trebizond, to the Miraa Calil

---

<sup>1</sup> Chahzade, or Miraa, is the son or grandson of a king or emperor.



Sultan. He honor'd Celaleddin's brother, Chap. 10.  
nam'd Behramfcha, with the particular govern-  
ment of the rovs of Bailacan. And as water  
is what principally renders a country flourishing,  
inasmuch as it makes the land fertile, and nour-  
ishes the animals and vegetables: Timur form'd  
a design of cutting a canal, thro' which to con-  
vey the water of the river Araxes into Bailacan.  
He issu'd out his orders to that effect, and the  
principal lords prepar'd themselves to put 'em in  
execution: the Tavatchas divided the ground  
the canal was to take up among the soldiers,  
which was six leagues in length, and fifteen var-  
bits in breadth. This whole was finish'd in a-  
bout a month: and it is one of the most magni-  
ficent monuments of Timur's grandeur and  
power.

## C H A P. X.

*Timur sends intendants and doctors into all  
the provinces of his empire, to examine  
the affairs of particular persons, and to  
distribute his justice and favors among the  
people.*

DURING Timur's stay at Bailacan, the  
principal lords of Iran and Touran came  
to court with all possible magnificence, where  
an assembly of the most learned men was held.  
The emperor, who was very curious in hearing  
the chief questions of the law explain'd, and the  
distinction between positive commands and those  
which contain only matter of advice, propos'd  
the most sublime and profitable controversies.

*Book VI.* One day the conversation fell very a-propos upon Mahomet's advice, wherein he tells us that God orders the princes of this world to practise justice and beneficence: the pious Timur attended to what was said, and seriously reflecting on it, wou'd not suffer this question to be ended by discourse only, but resolv'd to acquire the merits of it by practising good works; and then he spake to 'em as follows.

"Kings have always taken the counsel of doctors, when they excite 'em to do good, and strive to turn 'em from evil: how comes it then that you are silent, and neglect to tell me what I ought to do, and what I ought to omit the performance of?"

Then all the learned men modestly made answer, that his highness did not stand in need of the counsels of persons of their condition; but that on the contrary, others ought to learn how to conduct themselves by imitating his example.

Timur told 'em, he did not approve this sort of compliments, by which they might expect to gain his favor; and that what he had said was neither thro' vain-glory or interest: "For thro' the protection of God, says he, I am too great a lord in this world, to stand in need of such trifles: but my design in this results from the reflection I have made, that each of you coming from a different kingdom, must without doubt be inform'd of the affairs which pass there, and of the good or bad conduct of the Derogaz, and commissarys of the Divan. Communicate therefore to me what you know, and tell me whether the governors and officers observe justice and the commands of the law as they ought; that being inform'd of the evils they commit, I may remedy 'em, and deliver the weak from oppression."

Imme-

Immediately all the doctors freely declar'd Chap. 10.  
their sentiments, applauding the emperor's intention; and they represented to his highness the condition the affairs of their respective provinces were in. Whereupon this just emperor made choice of the most learned among 'em, and those who were most vers'd in the laws of their country; and he nam'd an intendant to go with each of 'em, to whom he gave a full power to make laws or to dispense with 'em, always approving whatever he shou'd do in relation to justice and the observation of the laws; so that right might be administer'd to those who were oppress'd thro-out all the kingdoms and provinces of his empire: likewise permitting these intendants to take out of the revenues of the imperial treasury of each country, what sums had been extorted from poor persons by violence against the ordinary rules, and to restore the same to 'em; and also to punish the tyrants in an exemplary manner: moreover they were order'd to register exactly every thing that shou'd pass during their commission, and at their return to give an account of it; that by this means the causes of vexation being entirely rooted out of the empire, the people may live in quiet and tranquillity. Then Timur made this memorable speech.

" My heart hath always been set upon the  
" enlarging the limits of my vast empire: but  
" now I take up a resolution to use all my care  
" in procuring quiet and security to my subjects,  
" and to render my kingdoms flourishing. I  
" will that private persons address their re-  
" quests and complaints immediately to my  
" self; that they give me their advice for the  
" good of the Mussalmans, the glory of the  
" faith, and the extirpation of the wicked dis-



Book VI. " curbers of the public quiet. I am unwilling  
 " that at the day of judgment my poor op-  
 " press'd subjects shou'd cry out for vengeance  
 " against me: I am not desirous that any of  
 " my brave soldiers, who have so often expos'd  
 " their lives in my service, shou'd complain a-  
 " gainst me or fortune; for their afflictions  
 " touch me more than they do them. Let  
 " none of my subjects fear to come before me  
 " with his complaints: for my design is that  
 " the world shou'd become a paradise under my  
 " reign, knowing that when a prince is just and  
 " merciful, his kingdom is crown'd with blessings  
 " and honors. In fine, I desire to lay up a  
 " treasure of justice, that my soul may be happy  
 " after my death."

This speech of Timur, in which his piety  
 is much to be admir'd, was taken down by a  
 lord who was present at the assembly, and who  
 wrote at the bottom of it these words of the Al-  
 coran, *He give assistance only to what we have seen.*  
 After this the whole assembly lifted up their  
 hands to heaven, and offer'd the following  
 prayer: " O God, who art the lord both of  
 " this world and of the next, grant an ever-  
 " lasting reign to this just prince; hearken to  
 " his righteous petitions: and as thou hast sub-  
 " jected the universe to him, after a long and  
 " prosperous reign in this world, let him reign  
 " with thee in glory in the other."

## C H A P. XI.

*Continuation of the history of the princes who  
were gone into Irac-Arabi.*

THE Mirza Roustem having join'd the Mirza Aboubecre near Hille, as already mention'd, these two princes, who were the Roustem and Esfendiar \* of the age, pass'd the river together, and met Cara Yousef Turcoman † over-against the town of Sils, on the banks of the river Nahrelgomah, below Hille. They had then but three thousand men, while Cara Yousef had entrench'd himself on the other side of the river with a numerous army, ready to give battle: and as the Mirza Roustem, being eldest, ought to have had the first rank, the Mirza Aboubecre prudently advis'd him to take his post in the main-body: but the Mirza Roustem answer'd him, that he was only come to bring succours according to the orders given him, that it was better to separate the army into two bodies, that they might each command ooe, and to attack the enemy on both sides. In effect, the Mirza Roustem cross'd the water, and attack'd Cara Yousef with all imaginable resolution; and the Mirza Aboubecre did the same on his part: the attack was brave on our side, and as vigorously sustain'd on the other. In the battle, Yar Ali, brother of Cara Yousef, was shot off his horse with an arrow, and our men immediately

\* Two famous heroes mention'd in the oriental romances.  
† Prince of the Accoussians, or white Gileps.

Book VI. cut off his head. The Emir Sevindgie distinguished himself bravely on this occasion, and contributed very much to the defeat of the enemy. Cara Yousef fled into Syria with some of his domestics; but his subjects, who consisted of between ten and fifteen thousand families, his oxen, sheep, and camels were pillag'd by our soldiers. Some of the Mirza Roustem's men brought Cara Yousef's wife, the queen of the Turcomans, to him in chains: she was the mother of Eskender and Espende, and was attended by the ladies of her court, and her relations.

Our princes also vanquish'd Noayr, who was absolute commander of all the Arabian tribes of the desert: and they likewise defeated several other princes of these quarters, who till that time had never submitted to any conqueror.

During the rebuilding of Bailacan, Sarek and Corloe Coja, sons of the Dervich Buke, Aboubecre and Achirdi Urbee, officers of the Mirza Roustem, carry'd the happy news of these victories to court, where they presented to Timur the head of Cara Yousef's brother.

After the causes of the disorders which Cara Yousef and other rebels had occasion'd, were remov'd, the Mirza Aboubecre employ'd himself particularly in rendering this country as flourishing as ever: he encourag'd the people, and oblig'd 'em to cultivate the lands: and he caus'd the city of Bagdad, which was almost ruin'd, to be rebuilt.



## C H A P. XII.

*Arrival of the Mirza Omar from Samarcand.  
Continuation of what happen'd during the  
building of Bailacan.*

**T**H E first of Jumazulevel 806, the Mirza Nov. 25-  
1403.  
Omar, son of the Mirza Miran Chah, whom Timur had recal'd from Samarcand to take upon him the government of Azerbaijan, arriv'd at the imperial camp before Bailacan, where he had the honor to pay his respects to his highness. At the same time came likewise to court a Circassian officer, the son of Tomen, with the head of Malek Azeddin king of Lor Couteher, who had revolted: this officer brought advice that Malek had been seiz'd, and his skin, stuff'd with straw, hung up in public view, to serve as an example to all future disturbers of the common tranquillity.

Timur about this time resolv'd to perform in act of justice on the person of the famous doctor Moulana Cotobeddin Carmi, who was come to court with the other officers of the Divan of Chiraz, because of his having tax'd the inhabitants of Fars at his departure from that place, at the sum of three hundred thousand Dinars Copeghi, under pretence of a present to the emperor. Moulana Saed, a doctor of the same country, who accompany'd him, accus'd him to Timur in a private audience, where the emperor had order'd him to give him what light he was able in relation to the affairs of Fars. This tyranny having highly offended his majesty, he immediately pass'd judg-

Book VI. ment upon Cotobeddin, and issu'd out an order to the Cheik Dervich Allahi to bind his hands, and placing the fork'd branch about his neck, to send him in that manner to Chiraz, with the sum he had extorted from the inhabitants, to be deliver'd to those who had paid it. Argoon, intendant to Cotobeddin, was condemn'd to be hang'd because of the troubles he had brought on the people at his master's order. A declaration was also publish'd to inform the people of the destruction of these tyrants, in revenge of the wrong they had receiv'd: after which the intendancy of the finances of Chiraz was given to Coja Maieck Semmani. The emperor order'd Moulana Saed to return to Chiraz, to declare to the inhabitants of Fars, that what Moulana Cotobeddin had done was not by his order, in proof of which Argoon was hang'd as soon as they arriv'd at Chiraz.

The following Friday, the inhabitants of the city and neighboring villages being assembled in great multitudes in the old mosque, Moulana Cotobeddin was expos'd with his hands in fetters, and the fork'd branch about his neck, at the foot of the preaching-chair, which was of free-stone. Moulana Saed mounting the chair, told the people what the great Timur had order'd him, in allusion to the words of Coja Armas Fakih. "If this kingdom, says he, has been ruin'd, don't impute it to the emperor; for Cotobeddin is only in fault." All the people applauded what he said, and pray'd Timur, so that the mosque echo'd out their exclamations. The sum of three hundred thousand Timouri Copeghs, which Cotobeddin had extorted in the space of two months, was entirely reimburs'd, according to the registers of the Cadis.

Cadis, notaries, and Emirs of the kingdom, to those from whom it had been taken. Chap. 13.

Thus justice was done in the person of one of the greatest lords of the kingdom, which ought to eternize the memory of Timur's equity. After this the Mirza Pir Mehemed, son of Omar Cheiki, took off Cetebeddin's fetters, and surk'd branch, and sent him back to Samarcand.

### CHAP. XIII.

*Timur passes the winter at Carabagh-Arran.  
Relation of what happen'd there.*

WHEN Balacan was entirely rebuilt, Timur march'd towards Carabagh, where he had already given orders for Caravans or thorough houses, to be built, to pass the winter in. Being come to this place, he went down into the imperial Caravans, and the Mirzas and Nevizis quarter'd in those appointed for them, as did also the officers and domestics in theirs. Never was there seen before so magnificent a camp of such vast extent. The Mirza Roustem came by the road of Coulagh and Senatsi, according to the orders he had receiv'd to repair to the Councils or diet, which was to be held at Carabagh, to invest the Mirza Omar in the government of the kingdom of Hutacan Can.

In the mean while, on advice of the revolt of Iskender Cheiki, who with Timur's permission was return'd to his principality of Demavend and Firouz Koub, Solyman Chah had orders to go to Rei to observe Iskender's motions. The Mirza Roustem was sent to assist Solyman in this affair: and they had orders, that if Iskender should



*Book VI.* You'd be so happy as to return forthwith to his obedience, to give him a handsom reception; but on the contrary, if he continu'd obstinate in his revolt, they shou'd draw together all the infantry of Com, Cachan and Derghuzin, and pursue and exterminate him wherever they cou'd find him. The Mirza Roustem and the Emir Solyman Chah immediately departed to execute this order.

Then the Emir Cheik Ibrahim, king of Clirvan, prepar'd a great banquet to regale the whole court: he made a present to Timur of several pearls, beautiful women slaves, handsome boys, cuirasses, belts, arms, and a thousand led-horses: he also made fine presents to the empresses, princes, and chief persons of the state, and did what he cou'd to discover some marks of his affection to all the lords.

About this time Nour Elouerd, son of the Sultan Ahmed Gelair, about eighteen years of age, having been born during the war, was brought from Irac-Arabi. The venerable Cherif Seïd Bereke then also arriv'd at court: the pious Timur went out of his tent to meet him. The Santon having perceiv'd him, flung off his turban, and paid his compliments of condolence on the death of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan. Timur embrac'd him, and wept a long time with him.

The doctors, Imams, and lawyers of Transoxiana, Kech, Samarcand, Bocara, Termed, and other places, as the sons of the Can of Termed, Coja Abdelevel, Coja Asameddin, Coja Asdal Kechi, Abdelhamid and Abdelrahman, sons of the Cheik Elislam of Kech, and other great lords of these kingdoms, came to court, where they were admitted to an audience: they paid their compliments of condolence on the death

death of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, and endeavor'd to comfort the emperor by good counsels taken out of the Alcoran and the sayings of Mahomet. In effect, after they had somewhat moderated his affliction, he was pleas'd to have 'em dispute before him on some questions of learning and religion; which they did every evening, after Timur had done with the affairs of state.

One of the most considerable events which happen'd during Timur's stay at Carabagh, was that the secretaries of the Divan of Kirman had taken Idecon's account, in which they had set down in his name an excessive sum. Timur being inform'd of it during the building of Balaucan, apply'd himself to find out the truth of it in the Divan: but the princess Bouyan Aga, daughter of Timur's uncle\*, presented her self big with child by Idecon, with her daughter Agatche; and compounded for it, by promising he shou'd pay a hundred Tomans Copeghi, and to which Idecon consented, obliging himself to pay that sum to the imperial treasury. Then he was confirm'd in the government of Kirman, and permitted to return home, with orders at his arrival at Kirman to send back from thence to court the Sultan Bayazid, his brother's son, who had been dispatch'd thither in his place, at Idecon's departure for court.

Timur sent Anoucherouan, son of Beyan Aga, to Tauris, to receive the revenues of Azerbijana; and he gave the government of Sari to Pir Mehemed Poulad, one of the Emirs of the Mirza Charoc. At the same time Bic Mule Aga, wife of the Mirza Pir Mehemed Gehanghir, set out from Gaznin and Candahar for court, with her three sons Caled, Buzandger and Sultan Mehdi, who were then very young: she paid her respects to the emperor, and presented him with

several

\* Habi  
Serian.

Book VI. Several precious stuffs of India, and other curiosities.

## CHAP. XIV.

*The emperor sends the Mirza Charoc to Ghilan.*

AS the princes of Ghilan were not come to court, but had only sent a few small presents, Timur resolv'd to march against em; he sent thither the Carapul, or vanguard, commanded by Deryai Cautchan, Delal, Mehemed brother of Ali Sultan Tavarani, Bayezid, Borouldai, and Behloul Berlas, whom he order'd to pass the winter in the forest on the frontiers of Ghilan: and he likewise sent the Mirza Charoc to Kaelygadge at the head of his troops. This prince immediately set out, accompanied by his son the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, with his body of ten thousand men, the Emir Gehan Chah, the Cheik Ibrahim, Roustem Taji Bouga, the Seid Coja son of the Cheik Ali Behader, and other generals of Tonina with their troops: and they stop'd at Kaelygadge, expecting other orders.

As soon as the princes of Ghilan had receiv'd advice of the army's march towards their country, they were disquieted, abandon'd their former resolution, and consented to pay a great sum under the name of Carage. Charoc sent an express to advertise the court of this; and made several persons set out to receive the tribute.

The Seid Rezi Kja, one of the princes of Deylem, who was of Mahomet's race, and distinguished



tingaill'd by his knowledge of the belles-lettres, Chap. 14.  
 and the Emir Menemod Kechri, also a prince  
 of that country, departed together for court  
 with magnificent presents: and each of the  
 commanders of Ghilan sent presents and consi-  
 derable of monv. Being arriv'd at court,  
 they lift — — — foot of the throne, and humbly  
 offer'd their presents, saying that they were and  
 had always been obedient to his highness; that  
 they had us'd all their endeavours to collect the  
 sums of the Carage; and that they had re-  
 solv'd to live and die in perfect submission to the  
 emperor's orders.

Timur gave 'em vests, and highly honor'd 'em:  
 and as the Seid Razi Kys was of Mahomet's  
 race, he was pleas'd to treat him in a very  
 handsom manner, and gratify'd him with ten  
 thousand Mans of silk; that is, with sixteen thou-  
 sand Mans of legal weight, with seven thou-  
 sand horses and three thousand oxen, to be ta-  
 ken out of what the people had promis'd to pay  
 for the Carage impos'd on their country: he  
 gave the half of it to the Emir Mahomed, with  
 a third of what remain'd due: and he issu'd out  
 an order for the receivers to pay 'em their sums.

Timur likewise gave the Seid Razi the go-  
 vernment of the castle of Kemac, on the fron-  
 tiers of Nizolia, which Eiams, a relation of  
 the Emir Abbas, formerly possess'd; and he sent  
 him thither with troops.

During this winter-quarter at Carabagh, the  
 Cherif Seid Berke fell sick: and tho his phy-  
 sicians employ'd all their skill, and administer'd  
 the most excellent remedies, they cou'd do him  
 no good: so that this great person pass'd from  
 this world into the other with an entire resigna-  
 tion to the will of God. Timur was sensibly  
 afflicted, and wept bitterly at the death of his  
 best

Book VI. best friend; and afterwards he caus'd his coffin  
 to be carry'd to Andecood, to be there bury'd.  
 Then he gave the governments of Hamadan,  
 Nehavend, Ouroudgerd, Lircoutchek, and their  
 dependences, to the Mirza Fakender.

## CHAP. XV.

*Arrival of some princes from Merdin and  
 Vastan. A famous funeral banquet made  
 for the late Mirza Mehemed Sultan.*

WINTER being past, Malek Issa, prince  
 of Merdin, came to court with several  
 presents, bringing with him his daughter, who  
 was betroth'd to the Mirza Aboubecre. Malek  
 Azeddin Chir came also from Vastan with pre-  
 sents of abundance of horses to Timur, who gave  
 him a handsome reception.

About this time the emperor issu'd out a gene-  
 ral order to all the greater and lesser officers of  
 the kingdom of Hulacou Can, residing in Azer-  
 bijana and Irac-Arabi, to send each a brother,  
 or one of their relations, to reside at Samar-  
 cand: and that this project might be executed  
 without delay, he order'd several officers to re-  
 pair to the respective places, to bring 'em away  
 forthwith.

In the month of Ramadan, Timur made a  
 funeral banquet for the prince Mehemed Sultan,  
 in which the poor were principally regal'd. The  
 Cherifs, doctors, and Imams of all parts, were  
 at the banquet, and took their places according  
 to their ranks and dignities. The entire Alco-  
 ran was read over, and the feast concluded with  
 prayers for the repose of the Mirza's soul. Af-  
 terwards

forwards the princess Canzade went to Saltania, and transported from thence to Samarcand the Mirza's coffin, which had lain in the tomb of the prophet Caidar. Chap. 15.

Timur after this order'd a famous chase in the plains of Actam, beyond the Araxes, in which the utmost magnificence appear'd. The dogs had coverings of sattin imbroider'd with gold, and the hunting-leopards had chains of gold set with precious stones about their necks; there was an infinite number of Grecian grey-hounds, so esteem'd for their swiftness, as also a very uncommon and excellent kind of beagles; but what were most remarkable, were huge European mastiffs, as strong as the lions of Africa, as terrible as tigers run'd up to the fight, and as swift as arrows. After three days the circle began to close, and the slaughter, which is call'd Camarmichi, was made upon an infinite number of wild beasts, as lions, antilopes, roe-bucks, as well of the mountains as of the plains, and also fags.

After the hunting was over, Timur return'd to the camp, where he distributed among the Cherifs, doctors and Imams of Samarcand, Kech, Bocara, and other citys of Transoxiana, an innumerable quantity of uncommon curiosities, which he had taken from the kingdom of Natolia, among which were several handsom siniss, belts of gold, beautiful horses, mules, women-slaves and boys; after which he permitted 'em to return home, which they did, loading his highness with their praises and thanks.



## C H A P. XVI.

*Timur's return from a campaign of seven years.*


**T**IMUR having made himself master, during his campaign of seven years, of the kingdoms of Anatolia and Syria with their dependences; and having oblig'd the inhabitants of Grand-Cairo, the capital of Egypt, to coin the money, and read the Cante, which is the Friday-prayer for the reigning prince, in his name and titles; the Egyptians having also submitted to pay an annual tribute; and Timur having likewise fulfill'd the precept of the Alcoran in making war on the Christians of Georgia, whose pride and power he assail'd: he found that to crown the triumphs of his happy life, he had no more to conquer in all Asia than the empire of China, the inhabitants of which were infidels. Whereupon he immediately resolv'd on that conquest, and departed from Carabagh the 14th of Ramadan 826, which answers to the year of the Monkey, for Samarcand. He cross'd the Araxes on a bridge, and encamp'd on the other side in a meadow near Ninet-Abad, one of the towns on the canal of Berlas, which canal he had dug himself, as we said before: and he was join'd here by the Mirza Charee, who according to order had taken the road to Kzelygadge.

## C H A P. XVII.

*Timur invests the Mirza Omar in the empire of Hulacou Can.*

**A**BOUT this time a great feast was made at court on occasion of the emperor's giving the Mirza Omar the government of the empire of Hulacou Can, for which he issu'd out his letters-patent sign'd with the imperial seal, which was the impression of his red hand. This empire contain'd the countreys of Azerbijana, the kingdom of Roum or Natolia as far as Constantinople; and Syria as far as Egypt. The princes who govern'd the kingdoms of Fars and the two Iracs, were commanded to obey his orders, and assist at his diets. Timur gave him the troops and officers of the Mirza Miran Chah, and permitted him to depart at the same time: he nam'd for his principal officers, who were to have pensions, the Emirs Gehan Chah, Roulstem son of the Emir Moussa, Teyekkul Berlas, Juncid Bouroulalai, and others; and gave him ten thousand horse, recommending to him to do nothing contrary to the sentiments of the Emir Gehan Chah. Then Timur presented to this new king of the Medes a crown, a vest, a belt set with precious stones, and a horse with a saddle of gold; and to each of his Emirs a robe and a belt.

The prince then took leave, and paid his respects to the emperor, who tenderly embrac'd him as well as the Emirs, and then dismiss'd 'em. The Emir Gehan Chah cou'd not refrain from tears at parting from the emperor and court, because of his long affection to his highness. Ti-

Book VI.  mur afterwards gave vests and belts to the Emir Cheik Ibrahim, Malek Issa the Sultan of Merdin, Malek Azeeddin Chir, Kustendil a Georgian, Tizec, Dialek, and Bestam, whom he order'd to attend on the Mirza Omar, who took his road thro the delightful country of Alatac.

Timur departed from this place, and hunted in his march. After a day's journey he encamp'd in a meadow on the bank of the river Abagloe, otherwise nam'd Tchaybelarood, where he staid to the end of Ramadan.

Timur celebrated the feast of the grand Bairam with great devotion and pomp. Moulana Nerameddin Chanabi, one of the most eloquent doctors of the age, who had wrote part of the history of Timur, preach'd that day, read the Coutbe, and perform'd the ceremonies of prayer. Several alms and pious gifts were distributed; and the feast was finish'd by a magnificent banquet, in which were serv'd up abundance of the most excellent dishes and wines.

## CH A P. XVIII.

*Continuation of the history of the Mirza Roustem and the Emir Solymán Chah, who were sent towards Rei.*

THE Mirza Roustem and the Emir Solymán Chah, who were gone to Rei to gain intelligence of what Eskender Cheiki was doing, being arriv'd at that country, found that Eskender had revolted, and having fortify'd the citadel of Firuz Couh, and plac'd in it his son and family, had fled to the mountains in the forests of Tchelaam and Roustemdar. Our generals staid twenty days at Tahrán in the province



vinco of Rei: and having got together the infantry of Rei, Com, Cachan, Savé and Derg-huzin, to the number of two thousand, they departed in pursuit of Eskender, enter'd the forest of Roulemdar, and belieg'd the fortress of Nour, which they took and raz'd. Malek Keyoumerres came to find 'em in this place; and as he was at variance with Eskender, they seiz'd him, and sent him to Eskender: " Be-  
" hold, say they, we send you your enemy,  
" that you may see we are willing to accommo-  
" date matters with you: therefore suspect no-  
" thing, but come without delay to meet us.  
" If you return to your obedience, we'll make a  
" treaty with you in the name of Timur: you  
" have spent part of your life in his service; don't  
" root up the tree which you have planted.

Eskender dur'd not come to 'em because of his revolt, but endeavour'd to strike up an accommodation with Keyoumerres, and as well by threats as promises, engag'd him to be of his party. Then having sworn a reciprocal friendship, they join'd against us, and committed acts of hostility. Whilst the court was encamp'd on the bank of the river Agloe, a courier came from the Emir Solyman Chah, who gave advice to the emperor of what had happen'd. Whereupon Timur immediately resolv'd to march thither in person, and sent orders to the Emir Mezzab, lieutenant-general of Corassana, to march with his troops by the road of Sari and Ancol, to revenge him on Eskender.

The 7th of Chawal 806, an officer of the Mirza Cabil Sultan arriv'd from Transoxiana, who assur'd the emperor from that prince that the affairs of those parts were in a very good condition, and that the people enjoy'd perfect peace and tranquillity.

April 19.  
1404

## C H A P. XIX.

*Timur sends the Mirza Eskender and the Emir Chamelic before the rest towards Rei.*

THE emperor being arriv'd at Ardebil, sent the Emir Chamelic and Pir Ali Scidus, with a thousand men, to Rei before the others, with orders to get together the soldiers of the Arabian tribes and the hords of Caladge, Turks who dwell about Savé, Com, Cachan, Tchana and Perahan, as far as Kerchroui, and to form 'em into a body to join the army: and he order'd the Mirza Eskender to join the Mirza Rouflem and the Emir Solyman Chah.

Timur having pass'd by Ardebil and Myana, went down to Sertchem, where he found Dou-ladi governor of Avenic, who was come thither to pay his respects to him. Timur tenderly embrac'd him because of his former services, and having given him a vest and belt, said to him, "We are not certain we shall ever be able to see each other again; but don't neglect informing your self of what shall pass at my court. The Sulran Ahmed Gelair is at present retir'd, and in a low condition, so there's nothing to be fear'd from him: but be upon your guard against the Turcoman prince Carra Youlef." Then Timur dismiss'd his old friend.

May 13. Timur departed from Sertchem, and arriv'd at Sultania the 20th of Chawal 806, to which place came the persons who had been sent into Ghilan to receive the money we mention'd before; they brought thence a great quantity of money, horses, stuffs,

fluffs, and curiosities. The emperor departed Chap. 19.  
 next day but one from Sultania, and after some  
 days journey arriv'd at Casbin, to which place  
 the Mirza Aboubecre came post in nine days  
 from Ardebil by the road of Kelas, having for  
 his attendance Pir Hussein Berlas and Serindgie.  
 He paid his respects to his highness, and besought  
 him to permit the Mirza Miran Chah, his fa-  
 ther, to go to Bagdad, to reside there with him:  
 which request was granted. Miran Chah re-  
 ceiv'd a gratification of four hundred thousand  
 Dinars Copeghi<sup>1</sup>, a hundred horses, and several  
 toys, and then return'd to Sultania.

Timur being gone from Casbin to Saou-  
 Boulac, gave the Mirza Aboubecre two hundred  
 horses, a hundred pair of cuirasses, and a hun-  
 dred thousand Dinars Copeghi: he order'd him  
 to meet the Emir Solyman Chah, and march  
 with him against Eskender Cheiki. The em-  
 peror also made a present to Chahimale, wife of  
 Aboubecre, and daughter of the Emir Hadgi  
 Seifeddin, of the lordship of Daxigvail, depen-  
 dent on Bagdad; and this princess then return'd  
 to Sultania.

Aboubecre having caus'd the snow to be re-  
 mov'd, ascended the mountain of Acabay Tala-  
 goun, and join'd the Mirza Roustem at Kad-  
 gyour, the Mirza Eskender, and the Emir Soly-  
 man Chah, who were all encamp'd there with  
 a good trench round 'em, fortify'd with branches  
 of trees: and they staid here twenty days, till  
 the arrival of the army. Having receiv'd fresh  
 orders to fall upon Eskender, they departed to  
 that end; and as the country was entirely co-  
 ver'd with wood, they cut down the trees to

<sup>1</sup> A Dinar Copeghi is a piece of gold, in value seven livres,  
 Y 3 open



Book VI. open a way cross, and mended the passages which  
 had been ruin'd with planks; and thus they pursu'd  
 Eskender, killing all the enemies they met.

May 22.  
 1404.

Timur enter'd the meadow of Rei the first of  
 Zileade 806, and encamp'd in the plain of Sari  
 Camich: he order'd the superfluous equipages  
 to be conducted by the road of Rei and Khour-  
 var. Bie Mule Aga, wife of the Mirza Pir  
 Mehomed, had leave to return with her sons to  
 Gaznin and Candahar. The Emir Chamseddin  
 Abbas and others, who had the care of trans-  
 porting the Caratatars and colonys, which had  
 remov'd from Azerbijan, had orders to take the  
 road of Khourar and Semnan. Then the Emir  
 Chamelic, who had set out before, arriv'd at Rei.

Timur being come to the castle of Ghukend-  
 dan, which lay in ruins, situate at the foot of  
 mount Demavend, examin'd it, and gave orders  
 for its being rebuilt of stone and mortar, and  
 render'd as flourishing as before. From thence  
 having pass'd by Demavend at the head of his  
 army rang'd in order of battel, he arriv'd at  
 Firouzcouh.

## CHAP. XX.

### *The taking of the citadel of Firouzcouh.*

May 31.  
 1404.

**A**MONG the strongest places mention'd  
 in history, none deserves more notice than  
 the citadel of Firouzcouh, situate on the ridge  
 of a mountain, with walls of the utmost strength.  
 On the 9th of Zileade 806, the imperial stan-  
 dard arriv'd there, and the troops form'd the  
 siege, encamping at all the avenues round about  
 it. Every one having taken his post, the machines

and arms necessary were got ready: the throwers of wild-fire began the assault, and were second-  
ed by the bravest men of the army, who expos'd their lives with the greatest intrepidity. And as one of the towers of the place was built at the foot of the mountain, on the bank of the river, and the walls of that tower were rais'd as high as the level of the mountain, the besieg'd made use of it to draw up water out of the river; but our men turn'd the course of the river from the foot of the mountain, and spoil'd the water which was left. This oblig'd the besieg'd to sally out to hinder 'em, being resolv'd rather to die than suffer this.

During night an officer of the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, accompany'd by Mehemed Azad, Cheik Behioul, Beyantenour, Acbonga, and other brave men, got up one after another to the foot of the walls. They were perceiv'd by the besieg'd, who ran thither in great numbers, fought with all their strength, and wounded several of our men: but day being come, all the soldiers ascended the mountain by different places, and gave a general assault. The son of Iskender Cheiki, governor of the castle, and all the others, perceiving the intrepidity with which they were attack'd, were seiz'd with fear, tho the garison consisted of three hundred men, or rather giants of Mazendran, or satyrs of the forest. Their inquietude oblig'd 'em to send several of their men to Timur, to beg quarter with submission. The emperor gave these messengers vests, and treated 'em with abundance of kindness: whereupon they were no sooner return'd to the place, than Iskender's son, and all the rest of the officers and soldiers, came to cast themselves at the emperor's feet, and deliver up the castle, which the troops enter'd, and made all the inhabitants

Book VI. go out, that they might be transported to another place. Thus this strong citadel, whose top seem'd to reach the heavens, was taken after two days siege: Timur left there, as governor, Zoughi Tonn with a good garrison.

June 7.

Next day, the 11th of Zilcade 806, Timur took horse, and went to incamp in a meadow half a league from thence. He sent back to Samarcand the empresses Seraj Male Canum and Toulman Agz, with the Mirzas, Qlu-Bec, Ibrahim Sadran, Adjel, and Sadzaccas, who departed by the road of Sultan Meidan: and afterwards the emperor march'd against Eskender Cheiki.

Then advice was brought that the Caratatars, being arriv'd near the town of Dangan, had wounded their Der-gz, and were revolted; the Deroga of another band, which march'd after 'em, discover'd Tangibirmich, who lay upon the earth naked and wounded, and scarce alive, and carry'd him into the town to dress his wounds. The other bands hearing this, resolv'd to fly; upon which the Emir Chamseddin Abbas, Atilmich, Chaiveli son of Sevinlgie, and the other captains of companya who had the conduct of the bands, fell sword in hand upon these miserable wretches, of whom they destroy'd a great number; and either within the town of Dangan, or near it, slew about three thousand upon the spot, so that the dead body's stop'd up the passage of the streets. Several fled into the forests of Eftar-Ahad, and the Emir Chamseddin brought away the rest.

Timur on advice of this immediately sent away Royan Goutchin, Fazel, son of Seifelmoulou, son of Hadj Seifeddin, Dane Coja, Roostem Poulad, and Comari Behader, with fifteen hundred horse, in pursuit of the fugitives. The

Mirza



Mirza Ahmed Omar Cheik and the Emir Beren-Chapare were likewise sent after em on the same account, and went as far as Darogani: but they soon return'd to join the emperor, because they found that some of the Caratatars had been slain, others fled, and others brought away by the Emir Chamfuddin and the Derogaz. Beyan Couetchin, and the others who went out first in pursuit of the fugitives, pass'd by Bessam, cross'd the mountain of Leughwoud, enter'd the forest of Maxendran, and join'd the Caratatars at Caratugan, on the shore of the Caspian sea; and tho' the Tartars were far more numerous, yet they attack'd 'em immediately, and having happily defeated 'em, slew above a thousand, and took more than ten thousand families prisoners. After this expedition Beyan Couetchin return'd to court.

When the empresses, who had taken the road to Samarcand with the baggage, were arriv'd at Bessam, the officers who conducted the Mirza Charoc's baggage, parted from the rest, and went to Herat by the way of Nichabour: and Seraf Mulk Cannon and Toulman Aga went by the road of Jadgerom and Efferain with the greatest baggage.

## C H A P. XXI.

*Timur marches to Tchelas.*

**T**IMUR being accusom'd to execute the greatest part of his enterprizes himself, he march'd in person against Eskender Cheik: and as the Mirza Charoc was fallen sick, he return'd to Herat with the officers of his household, while

Book VI. while his Emirs and troops follow'd the imperial army to Tchelao, at which place they arriv'd in a few days, altho the ways were over high mountains, and thro deep vallys. The troops being arriv'd at the mountain of Tchelao, the ungrateful Eskender was oblig'd to fly, and retire into the defile call'd hell.

June 11.

The 20th of Zileade Timur arriv'd at Tchelao: from whence, not being able to find Eskender, he departed the same day. In this road is a very deep defile full of woods, always cover'd with mists and fogs, in the middle of which is a great and extremely rapid torrent, which can neither be ford'd nor swum over. The great difficulty there is in passing this defile is the reason of its being nam'd the defile of hell: and as Eskender had broke the bridge over the torrent, after having pass'd it, Timur was oblig'd to build another. The soldiers shortly built one of wood, on which forty brave officers pass'd first, and were follow'd by five hundred men, whom they commanded. Yousef Berlay afterwards cross'd it with Couthin Touchcal, as did the Seid Coja, son of the Cheik Ali Behader; and at length the Morza Sultan Hallelu, follow'd by the Emir Cheik Noureddin, who got up to the ridge of the mountain of the defile, cutting down the trees to open a passage in search of Eskender. Timur also pass'd the bridge, and encamp'd on the top of a mountain where there were no trees, but continual rains and fogs. At this place Timur gave audience to the Seid Ismael of Kersecan, one of the lords of Termed.

Timur sent soldiers into all the forests to find Eskender, affigning 'em for guides the Cherifs of Mazeudran.

Among

Among those who went in search of Esken-  
 der, the captains Deryay Contchin, Chladimile  
 Berlas, the Cheik Mehemed Contchin, Bic Te-  
 mour Contchin, Codadad Tchemura, and Vesa-  
 dar, met him on the 26th of Zilcade 806, in  
 the middle of a wood near the Caspian sea. The  
 Cheik Dervich Attahi was seiz'd with fear, and  
 turn'd back on pretence of bringing Yousuf Berlas  
 with more expedition to back 'em, he being  
 behind 'em with his troops. June 17.

In the mean while Esken-  
 der, at the head of  
 two hundred foot and thirty horse of his ac-  
 quaintance, sally'd out of his little camp, and  
 prepar'd to attack our men, who were but twenty  
 in number, and were not ignorant of Esken-  
 der's valor, having seen him several times in action;  
 for intrepidity and courage were hereditary to  
 him, being descended in a right line from Bigen  
 son of Keyou, and Banou Kochaspe daughter of  
 the great Roustem, as may be seen in the Chah  
 Namé or Fardaoui, which makes Bigen speak  
 these words, "My grandfather was a lion in  
 " battle, my father was the great Keyou: this  
 " day you shall behold my prodigious exploits."  
 Our twenty men, notwithstanding this, fearing  
 Timur's reproaches, resolv'd rather to die than  
 fly, reflecting that if the time destin'd for their  
 death was come, they might as well die here as  
 in another place: so they collected all their cou-  
 rage, and confiding in the ordinary good fortune  
 of Timur's arms, discharg'd their arrows. Es-  
 kender, follow'd by his horsemen, attack'd 'em  
 several times with their pikes; but our men so  
 dexterously ply'd him, that he cou'd not only  
 gain no ground, but shamefully turn'd his  
 back before a handful of men, with all his sol-  
 diers. Ingratitude is the source of all misfor-  
 tunes. Esken-der had preserv'd his honor, if he



Book VI. had not abandon'd Timur, from whom he had receiv'd so many favors.

After Eskender was fled into the forest, our scouts quarter'd in his camp, not knowing what road he had taken. Then Yousef Berlas arriv'd with Seifeimulane and Hadgi Abdalla, who also enter'd Eskender's camp, which they entirely pillag'd, carrying away abundance of horses, mules, stuffs of gold, and other riches. They were join'd there by the Mirza Roufien and Aboubecr, accompany'd by the Emirs Serindgie and Solyman Ghah, who came from the left. At break of day there appear'd in the mountain something glittering, which advanc'd towards 'em. The Emir Serindgie march'd to the left towards the mountain and forests in search of Eskender: taking with him his nephew Leherasp and all his men, and met the Emir Ali, Eskender's son, with his daughter, wives and domestics, who were all made slaves.

## CHAP. XXII.

*Battel between the Mirza Sultan Hussein and Eskender Cheiki. The flight of the latter.*

THE Mirza Sultan Hussein, and the Seid Coja son of the Cheik Ali Behader, join'd our scouts with seventy men, and enter'd with 'em into the woods in search of Eskender. They met him about noon in the midst of this forest, having with him two hundred foot and fifty horse, who prepar'd to defend themselves. The Mirza Sultan Hussein fell furiously upon Eskender, and immediately retreated as if he would have fled. The enemy, who thought to im-

prove

prove this seeming advantage, fall'd out of the wood to fall upon our men; but they turn'd upon 'em suddenly in good order, and made a cruel slaughter of the foe. Vefadar perform'd whatever cou'd be expected from a great man; but was wounded with a lance in his face, which struck out his teeth: yet this did not hinder his fighting. Two horsemen of Tchelao were made prisoners by the officers of the Mirza Sultan Hussein: and Eskender perceiving himself vanquish'd, re-enter'd the woods, and went out by the side towards Ghilan. He was never heard of more: tho' some say that he took the habit of a monk, while others assure us that he died thro' grief in the woods.

The Mirza Sultan Hussein sent one of the men who were taken to Timur by Cazan Dervich. The emperor was then encamp'd in the mountain we spoke of before, and order'd the man to inform him what he knew of Eskender.

The Mirza Sultan Hussein at his return met on the shore of the Caspian sea the Mirzas Rouflem and Aboubecr, with the Emirs Sohyanz Chah and Chah Nouredin, who had been in search of Eskender; they march'd together along the sea-side near three leagues, advancing towards Ghilan. They encamp'd there, and were join'd by the Emir Mearab Yaton, who had likewise been seeking Eskender with the troops of Corassana by the road of Amol and Sari. Then all the Emirs departed together for the imperial camp. Timur, notwithstanding all the fatigues they had undergone, reprov'd 'em for not having continu'd to pursue Eskender, and sent 'em all back again on the same account with the Emir Chamelic. They fatigu'd themselves exceedingly in the woods, which were very miry, because of the continual rains, which hinder'd

*Book VI.* hinder'd their encampment. On advice of this, Timur sent orders for 'em to return.

Then the emperor dream'd from the mountain, and crossing the bridge over the torrent in the defile of hell, went to encamp before the castle of Nour in the province of Roustemdar. The soldiers brought before him Eskender's nephew, and others of his relations, with several of his officers: he gave 'em a handsom reception, and granted 'em quarter.

During night an express came from the Mirzas Aboubecre and Soltan Hussein, and from the Emir Solyman Chah, with advice of their arrival at the torrent of the defile of hell, which they cou'd not pass by reason the bridge was broken. Timur immediately sent to 'em Meho-med Azad and Toulkel Baourtchi, with thirty watermen of the Gihon, having for their chief Ourdonchah, who with their usual dexterity built a bridge, on which the Mirzas cross'd the torrent with their troops, and return'd to join his highness.

The army pass'd the night in the same place, and next day march'd to the castle of Harfi towards Ghilan: and Timur being arriv'd at Kelare Decht, encamp'd some days in that meadow, where the Emir Cayaseddin Ali, son of the Seid Kemaleddin, had a handsom reception from the emperor, who gave him the principality of Amol, because he had always carry'd on a war with Eskender Cheiki.



## C H A P. XXIII.

*Timur returns to the seat of his empire.*

**A**FTER the flight of Eskender, the taking of his wives, children and domestics, the conquest of his fortresses, and the pillage of his effects, horses and cattel, the emperor resolv'd to return to Samarcand. He order'd the Mirzas who had the government of the two Iracs to go thither; and likewise the Seid Azzedin Hezaregheri with his brothers, and the Seid Ali Mazendrani, to return to their respective governments; and he gave vests to each of 'em. The Mirza Roustem, attended by the Emir \* Said Berlas, departed for Ispahan, the Mirza Aboubecre for Bagdad, the Mirza Eskender for Hamadan, the Seid Azzeddin for Hezaregheri, and the Seid Ali for Amol.

At length Timur departed from Kelare Decht, and in few days arriv'd at the country of Lar, at the foot of the mountain Demavend, where the emperor Argoun Chah had built a pavilion in form of a dome, which is yet nam'd the Kiochik of Argoun.

The 20th of Zilhadge 807, he decamp'd, and march'd with so great expedition with the Emir and his domestics, that on the 22d he encamp'd at the mountain of Firouzkoh. He gave the Emir Solyman Chah a vest wrought

July 10.  
1494.

\* Emir signifies commanders: as also a prince of Mahomet's race, likewise call'd Cherif and Seid. But all Emirs are not Chérifs; for there are some Emirs who are not Mahometans, as among the Druses, Maronites and others.

Book VI. with gold, and a cap enrich'd with precious  
 bones, leaving him in the government of the  
 towns and provinces of Rei, Firouzkoh, and  
 their dependences: and he permitted Beyan  
 Cutchin, Deroga of Rei, to return to guard  
 the castle of Ghale Khindan.

July 14. From thence Timur pass'd by Sultan Meidan,  
 and the 24th of Zilhadge arriv'd at Bestam,  
 where he visited Sultan Elaarsin, whose prayers  
 he besought, distributing alms among the poor.  
 Pir Padichah, prince of Esterabad, who had  
 follow'd Timur in this expedition, and had been  
 permitted to go before the rest to his own town,  
 return'd to this place to meet the court, and  
 offer his presents, among which were nine sets  
 of horses, nine in each. Timur gave him a vest,  
 and sent him back.

Danè Coja, who had been sent in pursuit of  
 the Tartars, arriv'd at the same place, and gave  
 an account of what he had done. Timur or-  
 der'd that the Tartar chiefs he had taken shou'd  
 be laid in irons, and conducted to Samarcand  
 by the Derogars of the countrys they shou'd pass  
 thro. The emperor departed from Bestam the  
 same day; and being arriv'd at the town of Ja-  
 gar, the lord Hasan Soufi Tercan came to him  
 from the Mirza Charoc, to be inform'd where  
 his highness wou'd appoint that prince to meet  
 him. Hasan Soufi was sent back post, to let  
 Charoc know he might meet the emperor on the  
 bank of the river Joucoudgecan.

July 20. Then Timur march'd with expedition, and  
 1404. the first of Muharrem 807, departed from Nieha-  
 bour, and went down to Acheabad. The 3d  
 he encamp'd at the tomb of Dgyam, where he  
 paid his devotions, imploring the prayers of that  
 Santon. Afterwards he set out from thence,  
 and went to encamp on the bank of the river  
 Joucoud-

Jowoudgeran, where the Mirza Chagac had the Chapter  
 honor to kiss his hands, and enter his presents, which were generously distributed among the lords who attended the court. Houdowish brought to this place Aebouga, and Carabougai Joun Garhani, whom he had made prisoners, because they had revolted during the emperor's absence, who order'd 'em to be hang'd in an hospital near that place.

About the same time Timur sent the Coja Ahmed Toifi, to be treasurer-general of the revenues of Corassana, and comptroller of the registers of the commissarys: this lord collected in forty days the sum of two hundred Tomans Copegh from the monied-men and the commissarys.

Then Timur took leave of the Mirza Chagac, and departed. When he was arriv'd at Corian, he encamp'd at the brink of a fountain near the hospital, to which place Temour Coja Aebouga came from Samarcand to meet the emperor, to whom he presented nine race-horses. From thence Timur went to encamp at the bank of the river Morgab, where he receiv'd the complaints of the inhabitants of Chichegou, against the oppressions of Apargha, their Deroga, who was condemn'd on that account to have his feet bor'd thro, and himself hang'd with his head downwards: which was accordingly executed.

The emperor then departed, and on his road was met by the Derogas of the towns and the Kelanters of the tribes, who presented to him fresh horses, which the officers mounted, to make the more haste. Then he pass'd by Lengher Chalk Zade Dayzid, Andecood, Dacca, the desile of Ghez, and Ali Abad; and encamp'd near the town of Adina Mefdgid, where



Book VI.

he receiv'd the principal inhabitants of Balc who came to meet him. From thence Timur went to Syahghind, and crossing the Gihon in a bark, quarter'd at Termed in the palace of the lord Acalmule, where this Can's son made a magnificent banquet, and considerable presents. Afterwards he pass'd by the iron-gate of Colaga, and by Chekedash, and went to encamp at Doulburdei. From this place he march'd to Kech, and lodg'd in Arserai: then he visited the tombs of the Santon Chamseuddin Kutar, whose prayers he implor'd, and of the prince his father, the Mirza Gehanghir his son, and all his children and relations. At length he took horse, cross'd the mountain of Kech, and lay in the garden of Taft Caratche: from whence he went down to the garden of Caratopa, and quarter'd in the palace of Gehannuma, where he was complimented by the Mirza Caidur, son of the Mirza Pir Mehemed Gehanghir, being conducted by Coja Yousef, and Agoun Chah governor of Samarcand, who kiss'd the ground, offer'd their presents, and sprinkled precious stones upon the emperor. The empress Toukel Canum, with all the ladies and Emirs, also paid their respects, and offer'd their presents. As the emperor had made such haste, that no one cou'd know of his arrival, the Cherib, Caddis, and principal persons of Samarcand, had not an opportunity of meeting and paying their respects to him at any other place than this.

## C H A P. XXIV.

*Timur's entry into his imperial city of Samarcand.*

**T**IMUR departed from Gehannuma in the month of Muharrem 807, and went July 1404 down to the garden of planes in Samarcand, from whence having made his entry into the city, he visited the college of the Mirza Mohamed Sultan, which he had not seen since it was built; and afterwards he return'd to the garden of planes, where preparations were made for the banquets. The emperress and Mirzas, who had set out first with the baggage from Firouzkoh by the way of Baverd, Meran and Merou, not being yet arriv'd, Timur dispatch'd couriers to hasten their coming. The emperess Tounsin Aga having cross'd the Gihon at Ananye, met the courier in the meadow of Bockara, who staid there three days to wait the great emperess Serai Mulk Camin. Then leaving the baggage there, they went with expedition to Vahvanab, thence to Rebatmule, and the meadow of Teliacomonar, thence to Tarkent, and afterwards to Kutchik Malak, where a feast was ready prepar'd for 'em, while a second courier arriv'd to advertize 'em to hasten. Hereupon they instantly took horse, and in a short time came to Samarcand. Serai Mulk Camin went down to Baghi Tchenar, and Tounsin Aga to Baghi Hehichir, whither Timur immediately repair'd. But God was not pleas'd to suffer him to attain to this utmost pitch of glory and power, without some mixture of bitterness; for

Book VI. this good success in the conquests of Syria, Egypt and Natolia, was follow'd by a distemper which seiz'd him in Baghi Behicht, but did not last long. After his distemper was gone off, he went to Baghi Chermal to reside there for some days, where he gave a handsom banquet to all the Mirzas and lords of the court, on the birth of a son to Baghi Sultan.

Timur afterwards enter'd Samarcand, and lodg'd in the palace of the late Mirza Mehemmed Sultan, for whom he caus'd a magnificent sepulchre to be built in form of a dome, close to the college built by that prince: the enclosure of the dome was of marble set off with gold and azure; within it was dug a vault, to lay the prince's body in; and a charming garden was made round it on the ruins of some houses. Then the emperor apply'd himself to render justice to the oppress'd, and remedy the evils which had crept in among the inhabitants of Samarcand. When he pass'd by the great mosque, which himself had built, he thought the gallery, which had been erected during his absence, was too little: so he order'd another to be made, and reprimanded in the hall of audience the architect Coja Mahmond David for his not having done it as it ought to have been. Timur lodg'd in the college of Serai Mule Canum situate over-against the mosque; and to render his justice the more conspicuous, he order'd the commissarys and controllers to be arrested and bound, who being interrogated, those who were found culpable receiv'd the punishment they merited, according to the wrong they had done the people; and Masoud David and Mehemmed Dgilde, who had been the principal secretarys, and during Timur's absence perform'd the function of

Viziers,



Vissers, were both hang'd at Camigheult during the banquet which we shall relate hereafter. Chapter II.


Afterwards Timur went to the garden of planes, where by the procurement of the limits he gave audience to an ambassador of the emperor of Capchat, who presented to him a Chamar \* and other things, and made his harangues, which contain'd his master's submission and testimonials of obedience. A bird of prey.

From hence the emperor went to the garden of Dileucha, where he staid several days, and receiv'd an ambassador from one of the greatest sovereigns of Europe †, who made him several curious and magnificent presents, among which were pieces of rapirry, which the Europeans had work'd with so much niceness, that if they were to be compar'd with the great performances of the painter Mani on the cloth of Arzene, Mani wou'd be cover'd with shame, and his works appear deform'd.

Then Timur order'd the architects, who had been brought from Damascus, to build a magnificent palace in the garden south of Bagh Chermal, which was square, each of its sides being a thousand five hundred cubits. This palace was the largest and most magnificent of any Timur had built. The chief ornaments of the buildings in Syria are of marble: and running streams are common in their houses: the Syrian architects are also very ingenious in mosaic work and sculpture, and in contriving curious fountains and perpetual jets-d'eau, and what is most remarkable is, that with stones of divers colors they do the same

---

\* From the King of Cullie, of which we have an account written in Spanish, mention'd more particularly in the French editor's preface to this book.

 Book VI. sort of work, which the artificers in inlaid work do with ebony and ivory, and that with equal niceness and delicacy. They likewise made several fountains in the palace, the beauty of which was augmented by an infinity of jets d'eau of divers forms, with a surprizing and inimitable art. Afterwards the workmen of Persia and Iran enrich'd the out-parts of the walls with porcelain of Cachan, which gave the finishing stroke to the beauty of this palace. Then Timur order'd a noble banquet to be prepar'd, with all the delights which mortals can desire, or by which the senses can be gratify'd. He was there congratulated by the princes his children, the emperors and princes, who furnished upon him gold and precious stones. <sup>\* Spal 2.</sup> The European <sup>\*</sup> ambassadors were also invited to this great banquet, and partook of the diversion; for the Castles <sup>\*</sup> have also their place in the sea <sup>†</sup>.

## CHAP. XXV.

*Timur holds a general diet. A great feast for the marriage of the princes at Caughat.*

**T**IMUR having long since form'd a design of conquering all Asia, cou'd not refrain from finishing what he had intended. Neglectful therefore of the delights of repose, he


<sup>\*</sup> A little animal, about the size of a barley-corn, which are seen upon the surface of the sea.

<sup>†</sup> By this expression we perceive the great company the Zaganian court had of the Spanish ambassadors.

took up a resolution to subdue the empire of Chap. 45.  
 China, which was inhabited by infidels. But before he wou'd begin this great enterprize, he was willing to execute the command of the Alcoran by the marriage of his grandchildren. Hereupon he order'd a feast to be made; and sent out his circular letters to all the governors of provinces, generals of his army, and Chiefs and nobles of his empire, to meet at a general diet, where they were to celebrate the nuptials. The princes Tazai Aglen and Bachtimour Aglen, who were descended from Genghis Can, intreated Timur to summon the Mirza Pir Mehemed who was at Gaznin, and the Mirza Charoc who was in Corassan, to this famous Conventual: they obtain'd their request for Pir Mehemed; but as to Charoc, Timur answer'd, that it was not proper he shou'd come, he being the main support of the kingdoms of Irac and Aushijina.

Camghul was the place appointed for the marriage-feast; and the first of Rablulevel 807, O. 126. 17.  
 which answers to the year of the Monkey, Timur went to lodg there. This palace and the neighboring places were adorn'd with the greatest magnificence; so that this autumn-season render'd, in a manner, even the spring jealous. The tents were tied with silken cords, in which were abundance of carpets wrought with gold; the curtains were of velvet of Churhter; and the ceilings of ebony and ivory exquisitely engrav'd. The emperor's apartment consisted of four great inclosures, which are call'd Seraperdi, built on very regular plans: his Kherghish or Imperial pavilion made two hundred tents, gilt and adorn'd with precious stones. Each tent had twelve columns of silver inlaid with gold; the out-side was scarlet and



Book VI.  seven other colors, and the inside satin of all colors. The upholsterers, of whom there was a great number, had employ'd a whole week in creating and furnishing this magnificent apartment. The Mirzas and Emirs had also each a Seraperid, a Barghish, tents, and a great pavilion nam'd Kherghish\*. The columns of the tents were of massy silver, and the floor was cover'd with the richest carpets.

The governors of the provinces, the generals of the army, the lords and principal commanders of the empire, assembled in this place, and pitch'd their tents in good order. The people also came there from all nations, as China, Muscovy, India, Greece, Zebul, Mazendran, Corassan, Pers, Bagdad, Syria, and in short from all the kingdoms of Iran and Touran, that is to say, from all Asia.

During these entertainments Mengheli Bougai Hagedy, one of the principal lords of the court of Malek Eszaher Barcoe, king of Egypt, arriv'd in quality of ambassador from Malek Ennasser Farouge, who had succeeded Barcoe his father. This Mengheli was endow'd with very rare qualitys, cou'd repeat the whole Alcoran by heart, was master of a great deal of eloquence, and acquainted with several sciences, which render'd him the most agreeable person in conversation. He brought abundance of uncommon presents, ready money, precious stones, rich stuffs, and nice toys. Among other varietys was a Giraffa†, one of the strangest animals

\* Seraperid is an inclosure; Barghish a great hall of entertainments; and Kherghish a great pavilion. The two last are included by the Seraperid.

† A long neck'd creature about the bigness of a calf, bred in Africa, and, according to some, got by a ramel upon a panther. It is call'd in some Camelo-par-catre.

upon the earth, and nine of the largen of *Carpas*.  
triches of Africa.

The Mirza Galil Sultan came from Tuckellan to this assembly, where he saluted the emperor, the great Emirs of State, as Birdi Bei, Yadhghiar Perias, and others, who all made a very splendid appearance. The Mirza Pir Mehemmed came from Gaznin, according to the orders he had receiv'd; he paid his respects to Timur, who embrace'd him, and by his tears testify'd his sorrow at the death of his brother the Mirza Mehemmed Sultan. The Mirza made his presents, nine of a sort: and next morning Timur gave him a vest wove with gold, a crown and belt; and vests to the officers of his household, who took off their mourning-habits.

Then Coja Ahmed Tossi, receiver of the revenues of Coraslan, arriv'd, and presented the sums belonging to the treasury of Coraslan, with abundance of curious toys, nine of a sort. The emperor was not the only person who partook of the joys and diversions; for both high and low had their share. The most skilful artists prepar'd some master-pieces of their art, as trophies and cabinets of flowers to represent triumphs, which were adorn'd with garlands made up with perfect symmetry. There were in the jewelers shops necklaces of pearls and precious stones, especially of grenadin and balais rubys, with an infinite number of pieces of rock-crystal, coral and agat, and several rings, bracelets and ear-rings; all which render'd Canighul a mine of gold and precious stones, instead of a mine of flowers, which its name implies.

An amphitheatre with four corners was built, call'd Tchartec, which was cover'd with pieces of brocade and Persian carpets. There were seats for both the vocal and instrumental music; and

Book VI. and also places for the buffoons and jesters, who with their facetious sayings excited mirth and laughter. There was likewise another Tcharcar for all sorts of tradesmen; and a hundred of a different manner, fill'd with those who sold fruit, each of whom had made a kind of garden of pistachios, pomegranates, almonds, pears and apples, in great order; which perfum'd the air, and made an agreeable sight. The butchers were particularly taken notice of for the neatness of their representations: they dress'd up a sheep in a man's shape, and other skins in divers other ridiculous figures. There were speaking goats which had horns of gold, and on either one another: they appear'd outwardly like goats, but were handsome young women dress'd in this manner: some were dress'd like larks and angels, with wings, while others took the figure of elephants and sheep.

The skimmers also appear'd in masquerades, some like leopards, others like lions, and others like other animals, with whose skin they were cover'd: there were those likewise who resembled foxes, and tigers. The design of the masquerade was to represent gent who had transform'd themselves into these several figures. The upholsterers likewise produc'd a masterpiece of their trade; for they made a camel of wood, reeds, cords, and painted lincn, which walk'd about as if alive: and the man within it, drawing a curtain, discover'd the workman in his own piece. The manufacturers of cotton also made birds with cotton, which look'd as if they were alive: they also made a Minaret of the same material with the help of reeds, which every one imagin'd to be built with brick and mortar, and which was higher than the Minarets of the mosques; it was cover'd



ver'd with brocades and embroidery-work, carry'd it self about, and on its top was plac'd a flock. The saddlers were not behind the rest; for they gave proofs of their skill by two litter's for women, which open'd at the top, and after the usual manner were laid upon a camel, in which sat two of the most beautiful women of the city, each holding a shin in her hand; and they made pleasant postures as well with their feet as hands, to divert the assembly. The mat-makers likewise shew'd their dexterity, having very neatly work'd with reeds two lines of writing of *Caush*\*, and other large letters.

On the other side were the rope-dancers, who by their agility attract'd every one's admiration; their rope at the same time seeming to touch the heavens. Thus the whole company was employ'd either as actors or spectators, all endeavouring to contribute to the celebrating the marriage of the princes the emperor's children, that is, of the Miran Olouc-Bec and Ibrahim Sultan, sons of Charne, Aidel son of Miran Chah, Ahmed, Seidi Ahmed, and Biera, all three sons of the Mirza Omar Cheik.

The emperor order'd the astrologers to chuse a happy moment for an affair of such importance; which being done, the first officer of the household drew the curtain of the gate. The Cadis, Cherifs, Imams and doctors of the empire, met the emperor; and having agreed on the articles of marriage, the great doctor Cheik Chamieddin Mehemed Jazari was chosen to read 'em to the assembly. The grand Cadi of Samarcand, Mon-lana Selahhedin, receiv'd the mutual consent of the partys, which he register'd; and then,

\* The ancient character of the Persians.

Book VI. according to the maxims of the Hanafsan law, he join'd the princes and princesses together in marriage; on whom every ear sprinkled gold and precious stones.

The emperor being seated on his throne, order'd a banquet of the utmost magnificence to be serv'd up to the brides and the other ladies of the court, by the most beautiful young women of his seraglio, who were crown'd with posy's of flowers. The princes of the blood, Emirs, Nevians, Cheriks, and foreign ambassadors, took their place according to their rank and dignity, as well as the Emirs of Tomans and Hexares. These lords were seated under a canopy of twelve columns, distant from the nuptial hall about a horse's course.

The Yefachis, or exempts, whom the Turks call Chacurs, were there backwards and forwards to perform the function of their post, mounted in a magnificent manner upon horses of great price, with saddles of gold, adorn'd with precious stones, and habited in vests of gold brocade, with an air of authority\* and command.

On another side there were elephants of a prodigious size, on whose backs were plac'd a kind of thrones, with abundance of ornaments. Under the canopy with twelve columns, were plac'd earthen urns, with strings of precious stones tied about 'em, fill'd with gold and silver pills; and on the tops were cups of gold, agate, and rock-crystal, adorn'd with pearls, and several sorts of jewels: all which were presented on salvers of gold and silver. The drink was

---

\* The Yefachis carry in their hands, as a sign of their office, a silver-wand.

Cammea<sup>\*</sup>, Oxynef, Hippocras, brandy, wines, Chap. 24.  
 Sirma, and other liquors. It is reported that  
 the wood of several large forests was cut down  
 to dress the victuals at this banquet. The head-  
 steward with his under-officers constantly at-  
 tended to give all necessary orders as to the  
 setting up of the dishes, before which an officer  
 always walk'd. There were tables furnish'd in  
 different places thro' out the whole plain, and  
 flaggons of wine set near the tables, with an  
 infinite number of baskets full of fruit. Be-  
 sides the flaggons for the emperor's use, and for  
 the lords of the court, there were several  
 jars rang'd in all the plain for the people's  
 drinking: and that the joy might be uni-  
 versal, the emperor order'd a proclamation  
 shou'd be publish'd that all the people might en-  
 joy what pleasures they pleas'd, and no one take  
 cognizance of 'em. The crier read the procla-  
 mation as follows: " This is the time of feast-  
 " ing, pleasure and rejoicing. Let no one com-  
 " plain of or reprimand another. Let not the  
 " rich encroach upon the poor, or the power-  
 " ful upon the weak. Let none ask another,  
 " Why have you done thus?" After this de-  
 claration every one gave himself up to those plea-  
 sures he was most fond of, during the feast  
 and whatever was done pass'd unobserv'd.

At length the feast was finish'd; after which,  
 according to custom, a vast quantity of curious  
 movable goods was laid upon mules and camels  
 for the new-marry'd princes: among which  
 were all sorts of rich habits, crowns, and belts

---

<sup>\*</sup> Cammea is a drink us'd among the Tartars. The way  
 of making it is mention'd in the history of Genghis Can,  
 book 5. chap. 10.



*Book VI.* set with precious stones. The mules had coverings of satin embroider'd with gold; their little bells were gold, as well as those belonging to the camels: and both were handsomely adorn'd. This pompous equipage pass'd before the people, who were struck with admiration. The bridegrooms with their brides were cloth'd nine times in different habits, with crowns and belts set with precious stones; and each time they chang'd their clothes, they paid their respects as usual, while gold and precious stones, pearls, rubys, and balass rubys, were sprinkled upon 'em in great numbers, with which the ground was cover'd, and which became the domestics profit.

The following night there were every where illuminations with lanthorns, torches and lamps; and the new-marry'd princes enter'd the imperial chamber. The next day Timur did 'em the honor to pay 'em a visit at their own apartments, being accompany'd by the empresses, and great Emirs and Cherifs of his court. The rejoicings were so great thro-out the whole empire, that from Canighul as far as Tous in Corassana, there was not one place, where the sound of drums and trumpets was not heard.

The ambassadors of Egypt, Spain, India, and Decht Capenac, Gete, and others, were witnesses of this magnificence, and particularly of the pleasures of the feast, which lasted two entire months. Timur distinguish'd 'em by particular favors, and gave vells to them, as well as to the Cherifs and other great lords, who were assembled from all parts of the empire; he did the same to the generals, the governors of the provinces, and all the officers.

After the marriage-feasts were over, Timur again betook himself to the administration of public

public affairs, ordering every one to return to his proper employment. The licence which had been granted during the feast was recal'd; and for the future no one was allow'd to drink wine, or commit any thing unlawful. Afterwards Timur retir'd to his closet, to address himself to God by the following prayer.

" O Almighty being, who art above whatever  
 " man can conceive, and whose essence is un-  
 " known to any but thy-self, being all in all;  
 " how can I recite thy praises, and how return  
 " thanks in proportion to the favors I have re-  
 " ceiv'd, since they are infinite? Out of no-  
 " thing hast thou created me; from poverty  
 " hast thou made me rich; and from a petty  
 " prince hast thou render'd me the most mighty  
 " emperor of the universe. To thy great boun-  
 " ty I owe the gaining of so many battels, and  
 " the conquest of so many kingdoms: for what  
 " am I, a poor and vile creature? I thou'd be  
 " incapable of every thing, were I not assisted  
 " by thy grace. In peace thou favor'st me with  
 " quiet and joy; and in war thou givest me  
 " victory, and maintainest me in sovereign au-  
 " thority, fear'd by my enemy's, and lov'd by  
 " my subjects. Continue then, O thou great  
 " Creator, thy goodness towards me: since  
 " thou hast chosen me in thy clemency, don't  
 " chase me away in thy wrath. I know that I  
 " am but dust; and that if thou dost not favor  
 " me with thy protection, all my glory and  
 " grandeur will be turn'd into ashes and dis-  
 " honor. O Lord, put me not to shame be-  
 " cause of my vices, who have been so long  
 " accusom'd to partake of thy favors: and  
 " then I shall rest contented."

## C H A P. XXVI.

*The causes which incited Timur to undertake the conquest of the kingdom of China.*

**I**N the beginning of Timur's rise Asia was in the possession of usurpers, who had rais'd themselves to sovereignty, either by the extinction of the race of former kings and emperors, or by intrigues and revolts: but as the world cou'd not be peaceably govern'd by so many sovereigns, there were continual wars amongst 'em, and the poor people were drove into great extremitys. Virtue and tranquillity were banish'd the places which robbers only possess'd; security was no longer to be met with on the high-ways, which were full of thieves; and in fine, every thing was in confusion and disorder. The world might then be well compar'd to a human body, which being infected with some corrupt matter, necessarily falls sick, and can receive no benefit but from a strong medicine, which purges out the cause of the disease; and yet this purgation can't be undergone without some inconveniences which may arise from a deprav'd appetite. In the same manner, God, who was pleas'd to purge the world, made use of a medicine, which was both sweet and bitter, to wit, the clemency and the wrath of the incomparable Timur; and to that effect, inspir'd in him an ambition to conquer all Asia, and to expel the several tyrants thereof. He establish'd peace and security in this part of the world: so that a single man might carry a silver-bason fill'd with gold from the east of Asia



Asia to the west. But yet he cou'd not accomplish this great affair, without bringing in some measure upon the places he conquer'd, destruction, captivity, and plunder, which are the concomitants of victory.

After this hero was happily return'd from the conquests of Syria, Natolia and Georgia, and of consequence found himself absolute master of all the empires of Iran and Touran, he generously took up a resolution to make preparations for the conquest of China, which was inhabited by infidels: that by this good work he might rectify what had been amiss in other wars, wherein the blood of so many of the faithful had been spilt. Thus, after the marriage of the prince's his grandchildren was consummated, he summon'd the Mirzas his children, and the great Emirs of his council to court, to whom he made the following speech.

" God hath bless'd us with such extraordinary good fortune, that we have conquer'd Asia, and overthrown the greatest kings of the earth; few sovereigns in past ages having acquir'd so great dominions, or attain'd so great authority, or had such numerous armies, or so absolute a command. And as these vast conquests have not been obtain'd without some violence, which has caus'd the destruction of a great number of God's creatures; I have resolv'd to perform some good action, which may atone for the crimes of my past life, and to accomplish that which all the world besides is not capable of, that is, to make war on the infidel, and exterminate the idolaters of China, which can't be done without very great strength and power. It is therefore fitting, my dear companions, that those very troops which have been the instru-

Book VI. " means whereby those faults were committed,  
 " should also be the instruments of repentance;  
 " and that they march into China, to acquire  
 " the merit of that holy war, in demolishing  
 " the temples of the idols of the fire, and erect-  
 " ing in their places mosques and chappels.  
 " By this means we shall obtain the pardon of  
 " our sins, as the Alcoran assures us, saying  
 " *that good works efface the sins of this world.*"

Timur having finish'd this speech, the princes of the blood and Emirs besought God to bless his good intentions, unanimously applauding his sentiments, and loading him with praises:  
 " Let the emperor, say they, display his stan-  
 " dard; and we his slaves will follow him, and  
 " sacrifice our lives in his service."


Then orders were given to the Tavachis to take an exact number of all the soldiers by thousands, and to augment and enroll the regiments. Timur commanded all the Emirs of Oulons\*, and the governors of provinces, to assemble their soldiers: they took coppers of the Tautcal† from the great Tavachis, that they might know in what order and with what arms they shou'd come; and they departed, to get together their troops in all the provinces.

Timur then went from Canighul, and enter'd the city of Samarcand, where he lodg'd in the college of Serai Mule Canum. He gave the Mirza Pir Mehmed a crown, belt and horse, and permitted him to return to Zatul: he also gave to each of his domesticks a horse and a suit

---

\* The Emirs of Oulons are the mutual lords of the Tartar herds, who are inferior to the governors of provinces.

† The order for the war.

of clothes: he order'd the Mirza Sidi Ahmed\*, Chap. 16.  
son of Omar Cheik, to accompany him. And   
they took the road to Candahar.

The emperor did particular honors, and gave vests and belts to the ambassador of Egypt, who obtain'd leave to return home: he order'd Moulana Abdalla Keeli to accompany him, whom he sent with a convoy in embassy to the Sultan of Egypt, for whom he gave him a letter seventy cubits long, and three in breadth, wrote in letters of gold by Moulana Cheik Mehemed, son of the doctor Hadgi Bendeghir Tibrizi, who wou'd not yield to his father as to the beauty of his style and the art of writing finely. The substance of this letter was an answer to what the Sultan of Egypt had writ with regard to the Sultan Ahmed and Cara Yensel. He sent with this letter several curious presents worthy of the greatest princes.

Timur likewise granted particular honors and favors to the ambassadors of Europe\*, Docht Capchac, Gete and other parts, and permitted 'em to return home. He likewise dismiss'd the princess Melker Aga, who had assisted at the feast, and afterwards return'd to the Mirza Charoe at Herat. He sent to Hamadan the princess Peghisi Sultan his daughter, to the Mirza Esender her husband: and she pass'd by Socara and Macan.

\* I believe this Sidi Ahmed was the father of Baber Mirza, whose descendent reigns in India at this present, under the title of the great Mogul.

\* The Spanish ambassadors, whom we have mention'd in the passage, were dismiss'd at the same time as those of Egypt were, without obtaining an audience of leave of Timur, who was reported to have been very sick: on which account, in the Spanish relation it is said thro' mistake that he was dead.



Timur gave the Mirza Olinic Bec the government of the towns of Tachkent, Scitum, Yenghi, Achira, and all the kingdom of Gote as far as China; and to the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan that of Andecan, Acfiket, Taraz and Cachgar, as far as Cotan; which he confirm'd by letters-patent seal'd with his red hand. Among the Emirs of the Mirza Pir Mehemed, Tagi Bonga and three others set out to assemble the troops of those provinces, and bring 'em to Tachkent, which was the general rendezvous of the army. Temour Coja Achouga was banish'd to Afighent in Mogolistan, for a fault he had committed.

Timur went from the college of Serai Mile Canim to Aree\*, and lodg'd at Ghree Serai, a palace he had built.

## CHAP. XXVII.

*Timur sets out for the war against the infidels of China.*

THE Alcoran remarks, that if any one in his pilgrimage to Mecca shou'd be surpris'd by death, the merit of this good work is written in heaven in his name, as surely as if he had had the good fortune to execute it: it is the same in relation to the Gazi, where with troubles and fatigues mix'd with dangers an eternal me-

\* Aree is the indolence of the ancient royal palace of Samarcand.

rit is acquir'd; and he who dies during the expedition is deem'd to have executed his design. It was fitting that so great a hero as Timur shou'd die in the bed of honor, and that this inevitable accident shou'd happen during a journey he undertook for God's glory, and to acquire the rewards the Alcoran promises to the Gazis, that is, the war against the Infidels. And as the death of this great man was nearly approaching, when he took up a resolution to march into China, God permitted that neither the season, nor the countrys he must pass thro, which were always cover'd with snow and frost, shou'd be able to divert him from his resolution, or oblige him to retard his departure till the spring.

He gave orders to the Emir Herendac to review the troops, and bring him an account how many men there were in the army he design'd to carry into China. This Emir reported, that the troops of Transoxiana, Turkestan, Balc, Bedakehan, Corassana, Sistan, Mazendran, the Caratatars brought from Natalia, the colonys from Persia, Azerbaijan and Irac, amounted to two hundred thousand men compleat, capable of undertaking the greatest enterprizes. Timur, very much pleas'd at the good state of his troops, distributed his treasure among 'em, and commanded 'em to begin their march.

The Mirzas Calil Sultan and Ahmed Omar Cheik, accompany'd by the Emirs Codadad Hussein, Chamseddin Abbas, and other generals of Tatars and Hezars of the right wing, were order'd to pass the winter with their troops at Tachkent, Chahroukhia, and Seirant: and the Mirza Sultan Hussein was to take up his winter-quarters with some troops of the left wing at Yass and Sabran. Chahroukhia, which was formerly nam'd Penakunt, was so run'd by Gen-

Book VI. ghia Can's army, that there remain'd no foot-  
 steps of any edifices till the year of the Monkys,  
 An. Dom. which answers to the year of the Hegira 794,  
 1392. when Timur order'd his lieutenants to rebuild  
 and repeople it: and as Timur then gave it to  
 the Mirza Charoc, it was call'd from his name  
 Chahreahhia.

Jan. 2.  
 1403.

The emperor having entrusted the government  
 of Samarcand to Argoun Chah, and the care of  
 his treasures to the Cheik Tchoura, order'd the  
 great standard to be display'd: and he departed  
 from Samarcand the 2<sup>d</sup> of Jumaziulevel 807,  
 the sun being in the middle of Aquarius, in a  
 sextile aspect with Jupiter: and the moon being  
 in Libra, in a sextile aspect with the sun, and  
 in a trine aspect with Jupiter. He laid hold on  
 the happy moment which the astrologers had  
 fix'd for his departure, and took the road to Ac-  
 soulat. He went directly to Caraboulac in Sog-  
 diana.

Then the standard departed from Caraboulac,  
 and took the road to Ilanoti: and after several  
 days arriv'd at Tambic, where great rains and  
 snows fell, the wind blew excessively, and the  
 cold was extremely violent: yet this did not  
 hinder Timur's departure and arrival at Ac-  
 soulat. And as this place was full of sands, and  
 there was abundance of small wood for burning,  
 orders had been given before to build cottages  
 of reeds, and some houses fit to lodge in. The  
 emperor being repos'd in his apartment, the  
 Mirzas and soldiers encamp'd each in their re-  
 spective posts. The sun was then enter'd into  
 Pisces, the cold daily encreas'd, and the winter  
 was more violent than usual.



## C H A P. XXVIII.

*An account of certain adventures, the knowledge of which is necessary to the understanding the latter part of this history. A relation of what pass'd at Afsoular.*

LOVE is often the cause of many disorders. The Mirza Calil Sultan, after having got with child the princess Dgehan Sultan, daughter of the Mirza Ali, Timur's sister's son, became desperately in love with one of the concubines of the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, nam'd Chadi Mule. This passion got so great an ascendent in his soul, that he cou'd not rest till he had marry'd her, which was during Timur's absence; of which the princess his wife being inform'd, so great a jealousy kindled in her heart, that she discover'd the case to the emperor at Samarcand. Orders were immediately given out for Chadi Mule to make her appearance: but the Mirza conceal'd her, which so provok'd Timur, that he order'd diligent search to be made after her; and being found, she was condemn'd to die, and wou'd have suffer'd immediately, if the Mirza Pir Mehamed Gehang-hir had not beg'd for a reprieve. Nevertheless advice was given the emperor at Afsoular, that the Mirza Calil Sultan had again conceal'd her in his apartment: whereupon the Emir Berat had orders to go and seize her, and bring her away; which being done, Timur in a great passion commanded her to be put to death. The empress Seraf Mule Canum cou'd not bear to see

Book VI. the deep anxiety and despair the poor Mirza fell into: but considering moreover the great love Timur bore to the prince & his children, he endeavour'd to accommodate this difference, by the help of the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamolic; and persuaded 'em to inform the emperor, that this lady was with child by the Mirza. On this account the order was revers'd, and the princess entrusted to the care of the empress Bouyan Aga, that after her lying-in she might bring up the child, and commit the lady to some of her black slaves\*.

The emperor being at Afsoular, order'd the Mirza his son, the commanders of kingdoms, the governors of provinces, the Darcags of cities, and other grand officers and lords of his empire, to write to their lieutenants, to advise 'em to take great care during the expedition into China that the laws be duly executed, and justice dispens'd every where, so that the people might enjoy quiet and security: that they shou'd not give heed to the disorders of the public tranquillity, as knowing it was their duty to treat the people well, since they were entrusted to 'em by the Creator: that they behave themselves in such a manner, that when an account shall be demanded of their conduct, they may have no cause to repent, nor be the reason of Timur's blushing for shame before the throne of God, at the day of judgment. This order was exactly executed, and sent into all the provinces by men of probity.

---

\* The black slaves are eunuchs, and the ordinary guardians of the Mahometan ladies. The reason of Timur's putting this lady into their hands, was to hinder the Mirza Calil Sultan's having any future commerce with her.

Then the Mirza Calil Sultan went to Tachikunt, according to the orders he had receiv'd ; and the Mirza Sultan Hussein to Yassli and Sabran. There was nothing to be seen any where but carriages and waggons, which were brought from all the provinces, and fill'd with all sorts of ammunition ; and an infinite number of horses brought from all parts to be sold, which the emperor bought, and distributed among the Mirzas, Emirs and soldiers. Then the Seid Coja, son of the Cheik Ali Behader, came from Corassana from the Mirza Charoc, with advice of the good health of that prince.

The emperor sent the Emir Berendac to Tachikunt, to bring away the provisions : and he publish'd an order for all the generals and great officers to keep an exact account of the state of their Tomans, Herars and Sedes ; that in this long expedition no one might be oblig'd to stay behind for want of either provision or arms. This order had so good an effect, that in this numerous army each horseman had enough to suffice ten men, as well in victuals as in arms. Besides this, several thousand loads of corn were carry'd in the waggons which follow'd the army, to sow the fields on their road, that at their return they might not have a scarcity. Several thousands of she-camels were also carry'd, that on a pressing occasion their milk might serve for nourishment to the soldiers. These precautions were necessary to an army, so numerous as not to be match'd in antiquity. Those who had seen the immense riches at the seat of Canighat, were struck with admiration : and men of the best sense reflected upon the Arabian saying, *That when a man has attain'd the highest degree of prosperity, he is upon the point of pluckment.* Most persons said, even in public,



Book VI. after having seen the prodigious grandeur and magnificence which appear'd in the pleasures of Canighul, and the fine appearance which this innumerable army made, with the vast quantity of arms and baggage which were in the imperial camp, that they no longer doubted the prosperity of Timur being arriv'd at its utmost perfection, and consequently fear'd with reason the diminution of his good fortune. People began to mistrust some disgrace wou'd befall 'em; and their hearts fluctuating between hope and fear, they daily besought God to preserve the emperor from the misfortunes which attend the greatest prosperity, and to turn the evil and destructive eyes \* from off this reign, which they hop'd wou'd endure a great while longer.

\* See  
book IV.  
chap. 32.

## C H A P. XXIX.

### *Timur departs from Afsoular.*

THE sun was yet in Capricorn, and the violence of the cold so great, that several men and horses perish'd in the road, some losing their hands and feet, others their ears and noses: the snows and rains were continually falling, the whole face of the heavens seeming to be cover'd but by one cloud, and the whole earth by one piece of snow. Astronomers remark, that at this time there was a conjunction of the three superior planets in Aquarius; which was a presage of some great misfortune. Yet the desire of acquiring the merit of the Gazie prevail'd in the mind of our conqueror above the greatest difficulties: he wou'd not wait till the cold abated, but inform'd himself of the nature and cir-

circumstances of the roads, of the water, pas-  
 surage, deserts and mountains, which he order'd  
 to be taken down in writing, that all necessary  
 precautions might be us'd. Chap. 29.

Then Timur set out from Acsoulat; and sent  
 fresh orders to the Mirzas Cabil Sultan and Ah-  
 med, accompany'd by the Emirs Codadad Hus-  
 seini, Yadhiasr, Chah Erlar, Chamseddin Ab-  
 bas, Berendac, and eight others, who were in  
 winter quarters with their troops about Tach-  
 kunt, Chahroukhia, and Seiram; as also to  
 the Mirza Sultan Hussein, who was with his  
 about Yass and Sabran in Capchac, not to fail  
 of leaving their winter-quarters at the begin-  
 ning of spring, in order to join the court.

Timur having march'd two days and one  
 night, went to Onzoun-Ata to encamp, then  
 to Yolscadgiai Chelk, from thence to Sourkent,  
 and afterwards to Comarcha Ata, to Sultan  
 Chelk, and at length to the town of Zernoue,  
 from whence he departed, and crossing the Si-  
 hon upon the ice, encamp'd on the other bank.  
 This river was froze so hard this year, that  
 they were oblig'd to dig two or three cubits to  
 get water; and from the sun's entering Sagitta-  
 rius to his coming out of Pisces, waggons, men  
 and beasts, cou'd pass either the Gihon or Si-  
 hon in any part of 'em.

Timur having decamp'd from the banks of  
 the Sihon, arriv'd at Otrar on wednesday the  
 12th of Regeb 807, and lodg'd in the palace of Feb. 17.  
 Birdi Bei, where all the princes and lords had 1405.  
 likewise each their respective apartments. The  
 day of the emperor's arrival, one corner of the  
 roof of the palace, where he was lodg'd, set  
 fire, by the tunnel of a chimney running by it;  
 but the fire was soon extinguish'd. This acci-  
 dent disquieted the lords of the court, inasmuch

*Book VI.* as most of 'em had had frightful dreams which prognosticated some misfortune; and it seem'd as if nature had given the people an insight into what shou'd happen to their prince. But fate is inevitable.

Timur sent Monsia Recmal to discover whether there was any passage over the bridge, who carefully examin'd the whole, and brought answer that it was impossible to cross it. Another, who had been sent towards Seiram and the mountain of Conlati, on his return declar'd that the snow of this mountain was two pikes high.

Then Cara Coja, an ancient domestic of Tocatmich Can, heretofore emperor of Capchaic, arriv'd at court in quality of ambassador from that prince, who had a long time wander'd about as a vagabond in the desert of Capchaic. Timur being pleas'd to grant him a magnificent audience, enter'd in state into the Divan Caré, and ascend'd his throne; the princes Tairi Aglen, of the race of Ocrai Can<sup>1</sup>, Bahtemur Aglen, and Giera Aglen, of the race of Touchi Can, sitting on his right hand, and the Mirzas Olout-Bec, Ibrahim Sultan, and Airdgel on the left. The ambassador was conducted to the audience by the Emirs Birdi Bel and Noureddin two brothers, Chamelic and Coja Yensel; and having prostrated himself, had the honor to kiss the imperial carpet: he made an harangue from his master in these words. "I have, says he, suffer'd the punishment my ingratitude merited: the slight acknowledgment I have made for so many favors receiv'd of your highness, hath drawn upon me the misery I had my self reduc'd to. I have no other

<sup>1</sup> Can ugolsyi Can of Cani.

"refuge



"refuge than the hopes of pardon from your  
 "bounty: and if I can be assur'd you'll forget  
 "your servant's faults, I will discover a grateful  
 "sense of the favor by a constant submission to  
 "your imperial orders."

Timur, according to his wonted goodness, treated this ambassador with civility, and even assur'd him that at his return from the war of China, he wou'd again conquer the kingdom of Touchi Can, which he had a design to put into the hands of Tocatmich-Can his master. After these civil treatments he dismiss'd the ambassador Cara Coja, sending by him a present to Tocatmich. And Timur's intention being to depart forthwith from Otrar to continue his expedition into China, he design'd to send back the empresses and the young princes his children, who out of ceremony were come thither to wait upon him. But fate had otherwise order'd it.

## C H A P. XXX.

*Timur's death at Otrar.*

THE Alcoran remarks, that God created the world for the sake of man, but man for his own service. By this we see that the dignity of the human soul is too great to remain for ever in this material bod; and that so pure and excellent a being can't find satisfaction but in the enjoyment of him who created it, and gave it immortality.

Timur, after the campaign of seven years, in which he had conquer'd almost all Asia, turn'd the whole of his ambition towards the establishing of justice in the world, informing himself of  
 the

**Book VI.** the state of his subjects, and redressing all evils : if they were oppress'd by tyrants, he did 'em justice ; and if in poverty, he enrich'd 'em by his favors ; and by this mean render'd the world flourishing, and rejoic'd the people's hearts. As soon as he was return'd to the seat of his empire, without reposeing himself from his fatigues any longer than five months, he form'd a design to make war on the idolaters of China, hoping by that to obtain pardon of God for his former crimes : and having set out for that expedition, he came to Ottrar, seventy six leagues or parasangas distant from Samarcand.

**March 25.** On wednesday the 10th of Chaban 807, Ti-  
**1401.** mur was attack'd with a burning fever, and believ'd he heard the Houris\* say to him, Repent, for you must appear before God. On this, he became sincerely penitent for his crimes, and resolv'd to make satisfaction for 'em by good works. His sickness increasing, he found himself very much weaken'd, having no rest : affliction seiz'd the heart of all the court, which appear'd the greater as the distemper augmented. Then neither empire, nor army, nor riches, nor crowns fixed him in any stead.

And tho Moulana Fadlalla Tehrizi, one of the most skilful physicians of the age, employ'd all his care in prescribing the most excellent remedies, yet the sickness became more violent. Physic is useless when fate has ordain'd the death of any one. All hopes of the emperor's health were lost : his physicians having given him over. But tho his body was weaken'd, yet his mind continu'd sound ; and notwithstanding

---

\* The Houris are continual virgins, who the Mahometans believe are appointed for their pleasures in their prophet's paradise.

ing his violent griefs, he was always informing himself of the condition of his army. When he found his sickness so strong, that all remedies prov'd ineffectual, he resolv'd courageously to face death: and calling the emperors and principal Emirs into his presence, he made the following testament.

" I am satisfy'd that my soul is about to leave  
 " my body, and that my asylum is at the  
 " throne of God, who gives and takes away  
 " life at his pleasure. I beseech you to utter  
 " neither crys nor groans at my death; and  
 " instead of rending your garments, and run-  
 " ning to and fro like madmen, pray to God to  
 " have mercy on me; say Allah Eche<sup>1</sup>, and the  
 " Fariha<sup>2</sup>, that my soul may find comfort.  
 " Since God has so highly favor'd me as to en-  
 " able me to give laws to the earth, whereby  
 " as present thro' all the kingdoms of Iran and  
 " Touran no one dare encroach upon his neigh-  
 " bor, nor the great oppress the poor, I have  
 " hopes that he will pardon my sins, tho' they  
 " are without number. I have this consolation,  
 " that during my reign I have not permitted the  
 " strong to injure the weak. Tho' I am not ig-  
 " norant of the instability of the world, yet I  
 " do not advise you to leave off caring for the  
 " affairs thereof: since that will cause disorders  
 " among men, banish safety from the high-  
 " ways, and be an obstacle to the people's quiet:  
 " and it is certain that at the day of judgment  
 " an account will be demanded of those, to  
 " whom the care of those things have been  
 " intrusted.

<sup>1</sup> God is the most great.

<sup>2</sup> The first chapter of the Alcoran, which the Mahometans recite, as Christians do the Lord's prayer.



Book VI.

Timur-Bec  
declares J  
Timur's  
successor.

" I declare my son Pic-Mehemed Gehanghir  
" my universal heir, and lawful successor to  
" the empire. He must possess the throne of  
" Samarcand with an absolute and independent  
" sovereignty, that he may carefully manage  
" both the religious and civil affairs, and take  
" care of the necessities of the army, and of  
" the city and country's subject to my jurisdic-  
" tion. I command you all to obey him, and  
" unanimously to sacrifice your lives in maintain-  
" ing his authority; that the world may not  
" fall into disorder, and that my labor for so  
" many years may not be lost. If you agree  
" together, no one will dare to oppose you, or  
" offer the least obstacle against the execution of  
" my last will."

Timur then order'd all the Emirs and great  
lords of the court, and the generals of the ar-  
my, to come before him, whom he strictly en-  
join'd to see to the execution of his testament;  
and made 'em promise in his presence with so-  
lemn oaths not to consent that any one shou'd  
oppose it: and he sent orders to all the Emirs and  
generals who were absent to take the same  
oaths.

The lords having heard this discourse, were  
in the utmost consternation, melted into tears,  
and fell with their faces to the ground. The  
Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelic, whose  
hearts were seiz'd with grief and despair, said to  
Timur, " We cou'd sacrifice our lives with a  
" great deal of pleasure to purchase one single  
" day more for our gracious master. If our  
" death wou'd be of service to you, our lives  
" shou'd cost us nothing: but it is impossible to  
" alter the decrees of providence. We are your  
" slaves; and tho being depriv'd of your pro-  
" tence we have no longer any joy or content-

ment,

"*ment, yet we can assure your highness, that*  
 "*as long as we live, we will not fail of contin-*  
 "*ing obedient to your orders, tho at the hazard*  
 "*of our lives. May heaven never grant us suc-*  
 "*cess, if we have the least thoughts of doing*  
 "*any thing contrary to the will of our benefactor.*  
 "*We will always walk in the same paths of obo-*  
 "*dience after your death as during your life."*

While they were thus speaking, tears gush'd  
 out of their eyes, their minds no longer enjoy'd  
 any quiet, and their bodys lost all their natural  
 strength. They told the emperor that if he  
 pleas'd, they wou'd write to the Mirza Cassi  
 Sultan, and the Emirs who were at Tachkent,  
 to come to court, that having the honor to see  
 their master's face once more, they might learn  
 from his own mouth his last will: "For, say  
 "they, tho we shou'd declare to 'em the term  
 "of your last will with all possible exactness.  
 "yet it will not have the same force on 'em, as  
 "if they had heard it themselves." But the  
 emperor answer'd that his hour was approaching;  
 that those who were absent cou'd not come  
 time enough to see him; and that it was impos-  
 sible for 'em to meet again till the day of judg-  
 ment. "This, says he, is the last audience  
 "you will have of me. I have no other desire  
 "than to see the Mirza Charoe once more: but  
 "that is impossible: God will not have it so."

The ladys and princes, who were in the anti-  
 chamber to observe the course of his distemper,  
 on hearing this, lost all patience, and fell into  
 the utmost consternation. Then Timur turning  
 towards the princes his children, spoke to 'em  
 as follows.

"Remember to do every thing I have recom-  
 "mended to you in relation to the public tran-  
 "quillity: and be constantly informing your-  
 "selves

Book VI. "selves of the affairs of your subjects. Be va-  
 "liant, and courageously keep possession of your  
 "swords, that like me you may enjoy a long  
 "reign and a vast empire. I have purg'd the  
 "countrys of Iran and Tonran from the enemys  
 "and disturbers of the people's quiet; and have  
 "render'd 'em flourishing by my justice. If you  
 "do what my testament directs, and make equi-  
 "ty and justice the rule of your actions, the  
 "kingdom will remain a long time in your  
 "hands: but if discord creeps in among you,  
 "ill fortune will attend your undertakings;  
 "your enemys will breed wars and sedition,  
 "which it will be difficult to put a stop to;  
 "and irreparable mischiefs will arise both in  
 "religion and government."

After this discourse the disemper increas'd:  
 and tho there were several Imams and readers  
 without the door of the chamber, who read the  
 Alcoran from one end to the other, yet Timur  
 was pleas'd to have the doctor Moulana Hebe-  
 tulla, son of Moulana Obaid, to read the word  
 of God at his bed's-head, and often repeat the  
 belief of the unity of God. At night, between  
 the evening-prayer and bed-time, (that is about  
 eight a-clock) Timur several times made pro-  
 fession of his belief of *Lailahillallah*\*, remem-  
 bering the promise of Mahomet, that he whose  
 last words are, *There is no other god than*  
*God*, shall assuredly enter into paradise. Then  
 he gave up his soul to the angel *Esraniel*\*, who  
 call'd him in these words: "O soul, that  
 "honest in God, return to thy Lord with re-  
 "signation. We belong to God, and must re-  
 "turn to him."

\* *Hebr.*

\* *There is no other god than God.*



This fatal event happen'd on a wednesday-night the 17th of Chaban 867, which answers to the 14th of Esfendarmez 326 of the Gelalian epocha, the sun being in the eighth degree of Pisces.

Chap. 31  
April 1.  
1401.

Several learned men have compos'd verses on his death, in which the date of the year is contain'd; and among others Moulana Behauddin Dgyami: they say he was seventy-one years of age, and that he had reign'd thirty-six, a number equal to that of his children and grandchildren, as we shall see in the last chapter.

## C H A P. XXXI.

*Relation of what happen'd after Timur's death.*

**T**IMUR having pass'd from this mansion of pride to the paradise of eternal delights, fear and horror seiz'd both upon his friends and enemies; every one was jealous of disorders and wars, and did not in the least doubt but the security and tranquillity of the state wou'd entirely perish. The affliction wou'd have been insupportable, had not his horoscope predicted the continuation of the crown in his august family, and that the kingdoms he had conquer'd by the strength of his arm, and which he had render'd flourishing by his justice, wou'd remain in peace under the protection of his children who shou'd succeed him in the empire. Notwithstanding this, the princes of the blood cast their crowns upon the earth: the empresses and ladies tore their faces and their hair; the Euxes and principal persons rent their robes, and flinging themselves upon the ground, pass'd that dismal night in grief: and it seem'd as if the heavens had shar'd in this affliction, since rains and

*Book VI.* thunder, storms and tempest did not cease all the night.

Next morning the grandees of the court ended their lamentations, to perform the emperor's funeral obsequy. The doctors Hendomchah Casnegi and Moulana Corobeddin Sedre had the care of the ceremony. They order'd the prayers and verses of the Alcoran, appointed on these occasions, to be read. Then the body was wash'd, and embalm'd with camphire, musk and rose-water; and being wrap'd up in linen, was laid in a coffin of ebony, after having recommended his soul to God.

When they had finish'd this ceremony, the great Emirs who attended his person, as Birdi Bei, son of Sarbanga, and his brother the Emir Cheik Noureddin, Chamelle, Coja Yousef, and several others, solemnly swore they would always associate together, and use their utmost endeavours, even in the hazard of their lives, to see Timur's testament executed. And as the design of the war in China was not yet abandon'd, they kept Timur's death conceal'd, and forbade the ladies changing their habits, or shewing any exterior signs of grief, that the enemy might not have present advice of it.

Afterwards they went to meet the empress, and held a council with 'em in relation to what must be done at this present conjuncture. They sent advice of the misfortune to the Mirza Calil Sultan, and the Emirs who were at Tachkent. They dispatch'd expresses to Yass and Sabran, to the Mirza Sultan Hussein, to advertise him that the emperor's sickness increas'd, and that he should come to court with but few of his men. They sent Kezer Couchin to Gaznin, with letters to the Mirza Pir Mehemed Gehanghir, to inform him of Timur's death, and of his will,

in which he had declar'd him his universal heir and successor to the empire; and they besought him to repair immediately to Samarcand. They also wrote letters to all the Mirzas and governors of provinces, inviting 'em to observe all the vigilance necessary on the like occasions, to guard the country entrusted to 'em, and secure themselves from all reproach; praying 'em to inform themselves exactly of whatever shou'd pass on their frontiers, and give advice of it to court; in short, to neglect nothing which might hinder any surprize, because the enemys and disturbers of the public tranquillity had kept themselves conceal'd for several years as it were in exile, and waited only such a favorable opportunity as this; that in the mean while they shou'd execute justice, and continue their favors to the people, that no one might have any thoughts of revolting. The Cheik Temoor went express to the Mirza Charoat at Herat, Ali Dervich to the Mirza Omar at Tauris, Aratmour to the Mirzas Miran Chah and Aboubecre at Bagdad, and another into Fars and Iran.

## C H A P. XXXII.

*Timur's coffin transported from Otrar.*

THE Mirzas, emperresses and Emirs, who were at Otrar, on thursday-night the 18th of Chabim 857, at the time of evening-prayers, cover'd the coffin with velvet and black damask; and with it took the road to Samarcand: they pass'd the river Jaxartes in the night upon the ice, and went into a wood on the bank of the river: from Otrar to the Jax-

April 2.  
1905



Book VI. *armies are but two leagues or parasangas. Next morning the grief became so violent, that nothing was heard but the most piteous groans and lamentations, no one being able to abstain from sorrow. The Emirs, Haskia and Couthins cast their turbans upon the ground, and cover'd their heads with dust; while the ladies rent their hair, and tore their cheeks with their nails.*

After these demonstrations of affliction, the wise Emirs gave the following advice. "Since  
" fate, say they, begins to make us feel mis-  
" fortunes, we must give way to its force, no-  
" thing being able to hold out against its efforts.  
" The most resolv'd politics can't retard its  
" course: death makes no difference between  
" kings and slaves. On this account, the best  
" method is to fortify our selves with patience,  
" since there is no other remedy, and endeavor  
" by alms, works of piety, prayers, and read-  
" ing of the Alcoran, to rejoice, if possible, the  
" soul of our decess'd master. Death lies in  
" ambuscade to surprise us; it gives the finish-  
" ing stroke to all affairs, as well to the con-  
" quest of the world, as to the least trifle: no  
" one is exempted from it; and he who once  
" dies can't be born again." These counsels  
not being powerful enough to appease the great  
despair in which every one was plung'd, the  
Emirs had recourse to Mahomet's death, at the  
same time beseeching him to intercede for the  
consolation of the afflicted. They shew'd that  
tho this great prophet was the most excellent of  
God's creatures, and the seal of the prophets,  
yet the moment destin'd for his death being  
come, his pure soul broke the cords by which it  
was tied to his body, and with an entire resig-  
nation took its flight towards paradise: that  
since

since this illustrious man can'd not be immortal, others must not expect to be so; and however soliciting this misfortune might appear, there was no other remedy to be us'd. than to resign our selves to fate, and implore the assistance of God, whose orders we must obey.

## C H A P. XXXIII.

*The empresses and Emirs hold a council concerning the war of China.*

THE reading of the history and death of Mahomet having a little moderated the universal grief, the Emirs took this opportunity to give the following counsel to the empresses and princes.

"There is no doubt, say they, that if so powerful and numerous an army, which was never exceeded by any in past ages, nor probably ever will be in times to come, shou'd march into the enemy's country, we shall easily exterminate the infidels in a short time; and tho' the news of our master's death shou'd be carry'd to the Calmucs and Chinese, yet all news being thought either true or false, if we lead our army as far as their frontiers, they will be jealous they have receiv'd false advice, and say that if Timur was dead, no one wou'd be powerful enough to lead an army of that strength: and thus imagining he is yet alive, and that we spread the rumor of his death thro' artifice and design, they will be seiz'd with fear, while we shall gain an easy victory. It is requisite that we put all Timur's intentions in execution, and confiding in God,

Book VI. " carry our arms into China, where we may  
 " employ all our strength in prosecuting this re-  
 " ligious war with vigor, which the empe-  
 " rer had resolv'd to wage with the idolaters  
 " of China, in order to procure glory to the  
 " Mussulmans. And after we shall have satisfy'd  
 " our consciences in this point, we will display  
 " the victorious standard, and return to Samar-  
 " cand, where we will employ all our joint en-  
 " deavors in the well-governing of the empire.  
 " Thro the grace of God, there are more than  
 " thirty kings or sons of kings whom our master  
 " has left for his successors to the crown, one  
 " of whom must necessarily inherit it. For  
 " wou'd it not be most unhappy that so mighty  
 " an army, equip'd with so much diligence  
 " and care by Timur, after having begun its  
 " march, and gone so many days journey with  
 " design to make war on the infidels, shou'd re-  
 " turn without having executed any thing of  
 " consequence."

The princes, empresses, and great Emirs re-  
 volving these things in their minds, unanimously  
 resolv'd, That the Emirs with their regiments  
 shou'd march under the command of the Mirza  
 Ibrahim Sultan, whom Timur had chosen to at-  
 tend him in the expedition into China; and  
 that they shou'd join the Mirza Calil Sultan at  
 Tachkent, to whom the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan  
 shou'd resign the command of the army, as be-  
 ing the eldest of the Mirzas then present: and  
 that Calil Sultan shou'd bear the name of empe-  
 rer thro-out the whole campaign: but that the  
 great Emirs of the council shou'd administer  
 the affairs of state under him as usual: and  
 lastly, that they shou'd march into China in this  
 order, from whence, after having vanquish'd the  
 idolaters, ruin'd the towns, burnt the temples,  
 and



and seiz'd on the spoils, they shou'd return to Samarcand, where the empresses, Mirras and Emirs shou'd hold a general diet, to execute Timur's last will and testament. Chap. 34.

## C H A P. XXXIV.

*Timur's coffin is transported to Samarcand.*

THE foregoing resolution being taken, the Emirs Coja Youscf and Ali Contchin, with several lords, took the road to Samarcand with Timur's coffin, where they arriv'd on monday-night the 22d of Chaban 807, and bury'd Timur with the usual solemnity.

April  
140

After they were gone, the other great Emirs gave the following counsel to the empresses. " Tho our deceas'd master of happy memory has by his testament ordain'd the Mirza Pir Meliamed his successor in the empire: yet as this prince is at Candahar, and has perhaps pass'd into India, so that he is at a great distance from us; and if we wait his arrival to continue the Chinese expedition, we shall not get there in a proper season for making war, we will therefore immediately depart for that campaign: and when that Mirza shall arrive at Samarcand, which will be in a little time, because he must soon receive the news of the emperor's death, it is requisite that he enter the city with pomp and ceremony, and ascend the throne of the empire according to the will of his deceas'd grandfather: for to him the crown lawfully belongs. Timur has always cherish'd this Mirza's children more than those of any other,

Book VI. " other, because he was the son of Gehanghair  
 " his eldest son, to whom and to his children the  
 " succession belongs according to the Mahome-  
 " tan law. We may also truly say, that good-  
 " fortune has always attended him, and that  
 " the majesty of kings may be seen even in his  
 " countenance; that he is of a pure faith, go-  
 " verns himself by good maxims, has a gene-  
 " rous and brave heart, a noble mind, and a  
 " princely behavior. His justice, equity and  
 " clemency towards the people are more conspi-  
 " cuous than the sun: and we ought to expect  
 " that this great prince's reign will add new  
 " splendor to the throne, great advantages to  
 " the subjects, peace and tranquillity in the king-  
 " doms dependent on this great empire, and a  
 " universal satisfaction among the people; so  
 " that the approaching installation of this  
 " prince may take away from ill-designing per-  
 " sons all means of sowing division, or procu-  
 " ring revolt."

This discourse being ended, the empresses  
 Serai Male Canum, Tekel Canum, Tounan  
 Aga, and the other ladies, departed with the  
 Mirzas Oluc-Bec and others for Samarcand,  
 after the emperor's custom. The Emirs recom-  
 mended to 'em to use all imaginable precautions,  
 especially where they encamp'd, and to send out  
 constantly to gain intelligence far and near of being  
 surpris'd. This separation was not without a  
 mutual affliction.

At ten in the morning of the same day, the  
 Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, and the great Emirs  
 took horse at the head of the army, with design  
 to march into China, to execute the emperor's  
 intentions in a Gazie against the infidels.

Timur's imperial standard, his drum and  
 kettledrums, with the ensigns of his victories,  
 were

were carry'd by a troop of horse of the Mirza Chap. 12.  
 Ibrahim Sultan's court. At the view of this great train an ingenious person made these reflections: "Behold the standards which are  
 " the signs of command: to beat the drum, be-  
 " long only to kings: since the same has been  
 " done by this young Mirza, he ought to hope  
 " for the scepter. These are good omens: and  
 " since he is the first who has taken the place  
 " of empire, in all likelihood it will return to  
 " him again in time." All this happen'd as  
 predicted.

When they had pass'd the Sihon, and march'd one league, they went to encamp on the bank of the river Ardge, near the bridge of Calduma, east of Otzar. An imperial tent and large pavilion were erected there for the Mirza; and the horse-tail of the decess'd emperor was fix'd over-against the camp with the usual ceremony. From thence expresses were sent to the Mirza Calil Sultan and the great Emirs of the right wing, who were at Tarkunt and Charunkia, to inform 'em that they had found Timur's coffin to Samarcand, and that the empresses were gone after 'em: that for their parts they had resolv'd to continue the war in China, and were set out with that intent. They also sent couriers with the same news to the Mirza Sultan Hussain, who commanded the left wing, desiring him to march immediately with his troops to join them at Jouseloc, where they might see Timur's last will and testament, and prepare to march with 'em into China. Jouseloc, which was the place of rendezvous, is a town five leagues east from Otzar.



## C H A P. XXXV.

*The Mirza Sultan Hussein, Timur's grandson,  
opposes the sentiment of the Emir.*

NOTHING is more certain, than that every enterprize which is not favor'd by providence will prove unsuccessful. Fate had not resolv'd on the design of making war in China: on which account all the efforts for that purpose were render'd useless, and fortune overturn'd this hopeful project: for the Mirza Sultan Hussein had no sooner heard of Timur's death, than the desire of revolting, which had lain conceal'd in his breast so long, and the enmity of which he had discover'd in the war at Damascus, where thro' an unheard-of cowardice he abandon'd our party, when the Syrian army sallied out of the city to attack us: the desire of revolting, I say, re-kindled in his breast on this occasion: and excited by a deprav'd imagination, he disbanded part of the troops of the left wing, and taking from 'em their horses, pass'd the Sihon at Cogende with a thousand men, each having two horses, with whom he took the road to Samarcand by the way of Cazac, designing to surprize the inhabitants of that place by a stratagem, that they might suffer him to enter the city. At noon of the same day the courier, who had carry'd him the express, return'd with this news. Every one was surpriz'd, and thought of taking the necessary measures for preventing his ambitious designs.

## C H A P. XXXVI.

*The Emirs write circular letters to give advice to all the provinces of the Mirza Sultan Hussein's undertaking.*

WHEN the Emirs Chelk-Noureddin and Chamelic were inform'd of the unjust proceedings of the Sultan Hussein, they immediately wrote the following letter to the Emir Arghun Chah governor of Samarcand. "The Sultan Hussein has begun to act his folly afresh: he has disbanded the troops he commanded, and with a thousand horsemen, each having two horses, has taken the road to Samarcand; wherefore be upon your guard for the defence of the city, and omit no precautions. If this rash young prince approach the city, and you meet with an opportunity of taking him, fail not of securing him; that no misadventures happen thro' his means; for he ought not to be treated." They wrote another letter with the same advice to the empresses, beseeching them to stop wherever they then were, till they had join'd em. They also sent a courier to Coja Yousef to inform him of what had happen'd, advising him to use all necessary precautions in relation to the letter, and endeavor to convey it into the city as soon as possible; lest the Sultan Hussein, excited by his ambition, under pretence of seeing Timur's coffin enter Samarcand, should get in himself, and stir up a revolt. They dispatch'd an express to the Mirza Calil Sultan and his great Emirs who were at Tachkent, which is distant from Otrar

*Book VI.* his days journey in the caravan, to let 'em know of the evil design of the Sultan Hussein, who had broke their measures in relation to the war with China; that it was proper for the Emirs at Tachkent to return with their troops to Acar, which is a famous meadow full of good pasturage; to which place themselves wou'd also repair, and make known to 'em Timur's testament, which he had order'd at the point of death, and which they had sworn to execute; that afterwards they wou'd endeavour in concert to take care of the public concerns, as they shou'd agree together in the diets which were to be held.

When the councils were set out, the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, with the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelik, departed from Otrar, and took the road to Samarcand. The Emir Birdi-Bel staid in his government of Otrar: and as the revolt of the Sultan Hussein had occasion'd some consternation, the whole army march'd in order of battel towards Samarcand. In the evening they pass'd the Sihen, where the ice broke, and three camels laden with gold were drown'd. They march'd all night, and next morning the Emirs join'd the emperress.

On the other hand, there happen'd a very cross affair, which was, that the Emirs of Calil Sultan's court, and even the soldiers of his body of the army, Turks and Tadgies, Iracians and Narollant, had had advice before the arrival of the exprels who set out from Otrar, that the Sultan Hussein had dispers'd his troops, and taken the road to Samarcand with a thousand horse: that at the reception of this news the fear caus'd by Timur's death was much increas'd; and that imagining they shou'd in some measure remedy it, the Mirza Ahmed Omar Cheik,



Chelik, and the great Emirs Codaialad Hulsani, Chapter  
 Yalghiar Chah Esdar, Chamseddin Abbas,  
 Berendac, and other principal officers, had as-  
 sembled at Tachkunt; and without sending for  
 the advice of the other Mirzas, the empresses,  
 or great Emirs Cheik Nooredain and Chamelic,  
 had advanc'd the Mirza Calil Sultan to the  
 throne of the empire at Tachkunt, and sworn to  
 obey him, not considering the ill success which  
 must attend an undertaking of that importance.

## C H A P. XXXVII.

*A letter to the great Emirs who were at  
 Tachkunt.*

**T**HE empresses, Mirzas, and Emirs Cheik  
 Nooredain and Chamelic, having receiv'd  
 advice of the oath taken by the great Emirs to  
 the Mirza Calil Sultan, whom they had plac'd  
 on the throne, wrote the following letter to 'em  
 by way of reprimand.

" The great Timur our master, of blessed  
 " memory, has ordain'd by his last will the  
 " Mirza Pir Mehemed Gebaoghiz his heir and  
 " lawful successor to the empire, whom we have  
 " sworn to obey, tho' at the peril of our lives.  
 " At present you have acted contrary to the  
 " express will of our great master and bene-  
 " factor. By thus disobeying his last will, you  
 " have forgot the obligations you lie under to  
 " him. We did not doubt that if any one had  
 " but advis'd to do as you have done, you  
 " wou'd have oppos'd 'em with all your power.  
 " We can't comprehend how lords of so great  
 " experience have dar'd to commit an action of  
 " such

Book VI

" such ill consequence : which in the end must  
 " produce repentance and misery on your side.  
 " Your manner of acting will doubtless be  
 " charg'd as an excess of ambition: how comes  
 " it then that you have wounded your reputa-  
 " tion by ingratitude towards your benefactor?  
 " You have violated your oath of fidelity to  
 " Timur, which you ought never to have done,  
 " especially at a time when so many misfor-  
 " tunes have been caus'd by the death of our  
 " gracious master. Don't you consider the ill  
 " name you'll acquire by this action in history,  
 " which will remain to the end of time? How  
 " can you consent to this dishonorable deed,  
 " who have so often sacrific'd your lives in the  
 " pursuit of honour? How can you become  
 " traitors to an emperor, for whose sake you  
 " have so often and so generously expos'd your  
 " selves to the greatest dangers? What is most  
 " surprizing is, that your consciences must re-  
 " prove you at the same time that we do, since  
 " you are not ignorant of the crime you have  
 " committed. How can persons of your high  
 " quality, of so great understanding, and long  
 " experience, dare to commit so enormous a  
 " fault?"

This letter was seal'd, and sent by a messen-  
 ger nam'd Abou Dgyourat: who having deli-  
 ver'd it to the Emirs, they read it, and after a  
 serious reflection, acknowledg'd their fault, and  
 were sorry for it: but repentance was too late,  
 they having resign'd their liberty to another.

## C H A P. XXXVIII.

*The Emir Berendac arrives at the empress's court, with an answer to the letter sent the Emir, who were at Tachkunt with the Mirza Calil Sultan.*

THE Mirza, empresses and Emirs being encamp'd at Acsotiat, the Emir Berendac, son of Gehan Chah, arriv'd from Tachkunt, and being admitted into their presence, paid his compliments of condolence; and afterwards took his place in the council-hall with the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelic, where he presented the following letter written by the Emirs Codadad Hussein and Chamfeddin Abbas.

" We have taken an oath to obey the Mirza  
 " Calil Sultan, for the good of both church and  
 " state, and to maintain the succession of the  
 " kingdom in our master's family for ever. The  
 " misfortune which has happen'd appear'd so  
 " terrible to us, that we fear'd some unexpected  
 " revolt, which it wou'd have been impossible  
 " to have remedy'd. All we have done was  
 " with a sincere intencion. A general was  
 " wanting to our troops, that no one might  
 " have any pretence for revolting, which wou'd  
 " have brought the state into confusion and dis-  
 " order: we therefore imagin'd you wou'd have  
 " had the same sentiments with us. But since  
 " our proceedings do not agree with the last  
 " will of our master, we receive his orders  
 " with respect and sincerity: and God forbid  
 Vol. II. C c " we



Book VI. " we shou'd in any wise contradict 'em. We  
 " shall be always ready to join in whatever you  
 " judg proper to do as to the execution of the  
 " emperor's testament."

The Emirs Chelk Noureddin and Chamehc  
 having read this letter, which was conformable  
 to what the Emir Berendac had declar'd to 'em,  
 told him they cou'd by no means consent to any  
 thing done in contradiction to Timur's will, and  
 that they wou'd never acknowledg the Mirza  
 Calil Sultan. " If we disobey our emperor's  
 " orders, say they, and acknowledg any other  
 " for his successor than whom he has declar'd,  
 " we shall deserve to be loaded with misfor-  
 " tune and shame, and to be for ever accus'd.  
 " We'll take great care as to what we do in this  
 " affair, of which every sensible and impartial  
 " man may judg."

Then the Emirs wrote a second letter to those  
 at Tachkent, whom they invited to submit uni-  
 formly to the will, and annul the oath they had  
 taken thro inadvertency; as likewise to remem-  
 ber the obligations they were under to the em-  
 peror, and not have cause to blush before him at  
 the day of judgment. " This action, added  
 " they, will look ill both in the sight of God  
 " and man, and be an eternal blot upon you,  
 " which you will never be able to wipe off."

This second letter was put into the hands of  
 the Emir Berendac, to whom they spake as fol-  
 lows: " You have committed a great fault,  
 " which you ought to repair by vacating the  
 " oath you have so wrongfully taken, and by  
 " following out master's orders, which we are  
 " all oblig'd to obey. Submit your selves to the  
 " Mirza Pir Mehemed, and persuade the Mirza  
 " Calil Sultan to do the same. You must sign  
 " an agreement to that purpose, and send it to

" at Samarcand, that we may deliver it to Chap. 18.  
 " the Mirza who is the true and lawful heir to  
 " the empire." Then the Emir Berendac set out  
 for Tachkent.

Next day the Mirzas, empresses and Emirs departed to continue their road towards Samarcand. The Mirza Olouc-Bec, with the Emir Chamelle, at the head of one body of the army, march'd towards the right: and the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan with the Emir Cheik Noureddin, commanding another body, towards the left. These two Mirzas were then but eleven years old: and Olouc-Bec being eldest by four months and twenty days, the Emir Chamelle, when they were arriv'd at Caradgee, set out before, in pursuance of the resolution taken in the assembly: and being arriv'd at Samarcand, the governor Argoun Chah shut the gates against him, and even plac'd a guard upon the walls. The Mirza Cahil Sultan had written a letter to him full of fine promises, by which he engag'd him to be of his side, telling him that if he was willing to gain his favor, he shou'd refuse entrance to the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelle.

Argoun Chah, puff'd up by this Mirza's fair promises, which flatter'd the ambition and ingratitude inherent in his Turcoman blood, exaltation'd himself to folly, and was won over to the Mirza Cahil Sultan. The Emir Chamelle went from the gate of Cheik Zade, which is upon that road, to the gate of Tchehar Raha, where the Emirs Argoun Chah, Coja Yousef, and other chiefs of the city commonly keep their stations. Argoun Chah wou'd not suffer him to enter, pretending to stand by the orders he had receiv'd of Timur. He moreover told him that he was ready to believe the emperor had by his testa-

Book VI. ment ordain'd the Mirza Pir Mehemed his successor: but that he wou'd wait till all the Mirzas and Emirs being assembled together agreed on it; that he wou'd then open the gates to 'em, and they might proclaim the Mirza, and place him upon the throne: after which he wou'd deliver up the government of the city.

The Emir Chamelie believing that what Argoun Chah had told him was all grimace, and that he was resolv'd not to open the gate, return'd very much afflicted: he cross'd the river Coube, and being arriv'd at Ali Abad, a town of Segisiana Kelapa, he met the Mirzas and empresses, who had pass'd the mountain of Caradgee. He told 'em how affairs stood, and his thoughts of Argoun Chah's real designs. This renew'd their afflictions, and oblig'd 'em to encamp. Serai Mule Canun and Toman Aga held a council with the Emirs on what was most fitting to be done, and agreed that it shou'd be best to go to Bocara, while they shou'd send the Emir Cheik Noureddin to Samarcand, to persuade the Emirs there to give 'em entrance.

April 14.  
1179.

This Emir departed the the first of Ramadan 807, and being arriv'd at the gate of Tekhar Raha, counsell'd the Emirs within, who gave him the same answer as they had the Emir Chamelie. Nevertheless Noureddin got off his horse, pass'd the bridge on foot, and spake to 'em before the gate. "Emirs, said he, what we are now talking of is no trifling matter. Permit me then to enter alone into the city, that we may examine together the good and bad consequences of what you are doing, lest you have cause to repent at last." Whatever Noureddin cou'd say, signify'd nothing: for they were buoy'd up with the Mirza. Calil Sultan's pro-



promises. The Emir seeing his words had no effect, return'd to Ali Abad, where he gave an account to the Mirzas and emperors of all that had pass'd.

Chap. 11.  
~~~~~

## C H A P. XXXIX.

*Relation of what happen'd on the Emir Berendac's return to Tachkent.*

WE said before that the Emir Berendac had made a treaty at Achoulat with the Emirs Chelik Noureddin and Chamelic, which he had confirm'd with an oath, wherein he had promis'd to risk his life in the defence of Timur's last will: and that he went back to Tachkent with letters to the Emirs there. These Emirs having read those letters, became very sorry for having proclaim'd and sworn to the Mirza Calil Sultan, and unanimously approv'd of what the Emir Berendac had told 'em from the other Emirs, saying that the throne belong'd to him whom Timur had declar'd his heir by will, and that they wou'd never consent to alter it. After which they drew up a manifesto, which every one sign'd and seal'd, and the Mirza Calil Sultan was likewise oblig'd to subscribe. The Mirza order'd Arslanich to carry this paper, with presents, to the Emirs Noureddin and Chamelic, from whence he was to convey it to the Mirza the lawful heir: and before his departure, he said to him, "When you have assur'd the Mirza  
" Fir Mehemed of my respects, tell him I am  
" his sincere friend, and according to the will  
" of the emperor our father and master, I re-  
" knowledg him his successor in the empire."

In this the Mirza acted the part of a hypocrite, his sole desire being to command: and there were some Emirs who egg'd him on to the execution of his designs, tho they had had access to his person but for a short time. "The strongest, say they, ought to govern; and he who has any advantage shou'd make use of it. You must, my lord, embrace this opportunity to depart immediately for Samarcand, and ascend the throne, after which you shou'd open the treasury, and by your liberalitys make both high and low your servants: for man is a slave to favors. Arm your self with policy and courage for your advancement, and lose no time: for such an affair as this won't admit of delay or cowardice. Such an opportunity may not be met with for several ages: do not therefore neglect it. The poet says, protract not the happy minute: for next moment an insuperable difficulty may be started."

These advices were so often repeated, that the Mirza's ambition surmounted his reason: he got together all the horses, mules and camels belonging to Timur, and to the Mirzas and Emirs of his attendance, which he had left to graze at Tachkent and Seiram, and distributed 'em among the Emirs and other officers of Irac who were of his party: he gave 'em a great deal of money, suits, belts, cuirasses, arms and utensils, which belong'd to the soldiers of the army who were in those quarters: and then he departed at their head for Samarcand. When he was come near the Sihon, he encamp'd: and afterwards resolv'd that the Emir Barak, with the troops of the right wing, shou'd cross the Sihon forthwith on a bridge of boats above Chatoukhia; and that himself wou'd pass over

after him; and then the Emirs Codadad, Cham Chap. 40.  
Iskhin Abbas, and the other Emirs.

The Emir Berendac had already made a secret proposal to these Emirs, that he shou'd join the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamollic: to which they consented, saying, they wou'd do nothing repugnant to Timur's will, and that their intention also was to abandon the Mirza Calil Sultan, and march towards Atchie Ferisht. Berendac advis'd 'em to stay some days near Tachkum, that he might inform 'em of what shou'd happen; and that afterwards they shou'd unanimously prosecute what was just and reasonable, that to their designs might have the desir'd success.

---

## CHAP. XL.

*The great Emirs oppose the Mirza Calil Sultan.*

THE Emirs Berendac, Rouilem Tagi Bonga, and Abdelstherim son of Hadul Seiseddin, being arriv'd at the Sihon, pass'd it on a bridge; after which Berendac broke it down, and then went to join the Mirzas and empresses who were on their road to Samarcand. The Emirs Codadad and Chamfeddin likewise abandon'd the Mirza Calil Sultan, and march'd to Atchie Ferisht; on advice of which, that Mirza went to the Sihon, and having rebuilt the bridge, pass'd the river next day with his troops. The Emir Berendac being arriv'd in the neighborhood of Domabe, met Gelat Bagourgi, who on the Emir Chamollic's return to Samarcand had abandon'd the Mirzas and empresses, and was



Book VI. going over to the Mirza Calil Sultan: he gave  
 Berendac an account of the Emir Chamolac's  
 journey to Samarcand, and of Argoun Chali's re-  
 fusing him entrance into the city.

The Emir Berendac surpriz'd at this news,  
 and mov'd as well by his ambition as his coward-  
 dice, prefer'd policy to justice and reason; and  
 regardless of his oath, or the observance of the  
 rules of equity, immediately return'd to find the  
 Mirza Calil Sultan. On the contrary, Rou-  
 stem Tagi Bouga went to Ali Abad, where he  
 inform'd the Mirzas of the Emir Berendac's  
 return. This latter, astonish'd and confounded,  
 beg'd pardon of the Mirza Calil, and solemnly  
 swore to him a second time. The Mirza with  
 those of his party declar'd the paper void, where-  
 in they had promis'd obedience to the Mirza  
 Pir Mehemed, tho he had set his seal to it, and  
 sent it by Azimnich; and at the same time he  
 continu'd his road towards Samarcand, with de-  
 sign to usurp the empire. This news being  
 come to the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Cha-  
 molac, they thus address'd the empresses. "The  
 " civil commot of seditious persons has at present  
 " obtain'd; the Emirs have again taken an  
 " oath to the Mirza Calil Sultan; they have  
 " violated the treaty which they subscrib'd  
 " and seal'd, and are all on their march to Sa-  
 " marcand. He who breaks his word and oath,  
 " ought to be abhor'd by every one, as an  
 " enemy to mankind. Every body's heart  
 " burn'd now be rent into a thousand pieces;  
 " for the most powerful emperor, who was in  
 " a manner the Lord of the world, is dead: but  
 " scarce is he expir'd, when some raw youths,  
 " whom from the lowest state of life he has  
 " rais'd to the greatest honours, because trait-  
 " tors to him, and forgetting the obligations  
 " they

" they owe him, contravene his orders, and Chap. 41.  
 " violate their oaths. How can we dissuade  
 " our grief at so terrible a misfortune? An  
 " emperor, whose equal is no where to be met  
 " with, who has oblig'd the kings of the earth  
 " to serve at his gate, and has justly acquir'd  
 " the name of conqueror, is no sooner pass'd  
 " out of this world, than his last will is exam-  
 " pled upon. Religion is barr'd for this  
 " world. What unheard-of ingratitude is it,  
 " that abject slaves, after so many benefits re-  
 " ceiv'd, shou'd become the enemies of their  
 " great benefactor? If rocks had but a heart,  
 " they wou'd mourn at the sight of so abo-  
 " minable an action. Why are not flames  
 " rain'd down from heaven to punish these un-  
 " grateful wretches? As for us, may God  
 " grant us his grace, that we may not forget  
 " our master's favors; but that after we have  
 " besought his intercession, we may employ all  
 " our care in the execution of his last will, and  
 " in being obedient to the young princes his  
 " children, and sacrifice even our lives as faith-  
 " ful servants, rather than disobey him in the  
 " least point."

## C H A P. XII.

*The Emirs hold a council with the empresses,  
in relation to their marching to Bokara.*

**A**FTER the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and  
 Chamelle had finish'd this speech, they  
 represented to the empresses, that since affairs  
 had took such a turn, it seem'd requisite that  
 while their majestys shou'd go to Samarcand,

the

BOOK VI. the Emirs shou'd attend upon the Mirzas to Bactra, from whence they might go to meet the Mirza Pir Mehemed to shew him Timur's testament. The empresses approving their proposal, the Emirs took leave of 'em; and having assembled a great number of Emirs who were faithful to the deceas'd emperor, and resolv'd to execute his orders, they held a council with 'em, and spake as follows.

" Every one knows that no body had freer  
 " access to the late emperor than we: if there-  
 " fore we forget the favors we receiv'd of him,  
 " we shall deserve to be made miserable for ever.  
 " And tho' since his death every one has turn'd  
 " his back upon us, yet for our parts we'll be  
 " quit our resolution to obey his last orders. If  
 " others have no thoughts of blessing before  
 " him at the day of judgment, we have. Our  
 " intention is to seek the Mirza Pir Mehemed,  
 " who is declar'd by Timur's testament the  
 " lawful heir to the empire, and to offer our  
 " service to him: and if to fulfil our benefac-  
 " tor's will, we must risk our lives, and for-  
 " sake our worldly goods, we'll do it a thousand  
 " times rather than fail in our promise, or vio-  
 " late our oath: for if we shou'd be guilty  
 " of so infamous an action, we cou'd never  
 " hope to enjoy one day in paradise. You, E-  
 " mirs, who were the nearest officers of that  
 " happy emperor, let us know your sentiment  
 " with regard to this resolution."

The Emirs of this assembly, whose hearts were sensibly touch'd, unanimously answer'd,  
 " Our sole intention is to obey our master's  
 " orders: since you are resolv'd to execute his  
 " last will, we'll follow you with the greatest  
 " alacrity, and in what relates to us, we'll em-  
 " ploy our utmost care, and sacrifice our very  
 " lives."



"lives." The chief offices faithful servants of the emperor, were Atilmich, Terekul Cartara, Hasan Jagadaol, Allan Coja Tercan, Ulloul, Chamfeddin Ahmaleghi, Mousa Reemal, Berteri, Vefadar, and others.

## C H A P. XLII.

*The Mirzas and Emirs march to Bocara.*

AFTER the resolution was taken of going to Bocara, the 3d of Ramadan 807, the Mirzas Olouc-Bec and Ibrahim Soltan took leave of the empresses, who, after excessive grief on both sides, embrac'd the Mirzas with the greatest tenderness, and recommended 'em to the divine protection. These princes took horse, and departed from Ali Abad, trusting only in the assistance of heaven. The Emirs Chouk Neureddin and Chamelic follow'd 'em, having with 'em Timur's treasury, which consisted of ready money, jewels, habits, arms and other riches, which this emperor always kept by him: and they sent Roustem Tagi Bouga to Bocara before the rest, to give all necessary orders.



## C H A P. XLIII.

*The empresses march to Samarcand, Their mourning, after the late Mirza's departure.*

THE empresses, accompany'd by the young princes the Mirza's children, as Baiers, Arugei, Sadvaccas, Siorgatnich and others, with several faithful domestics, departed from All Abad; and having the deceas'd emperor's horse-tail and drums carry'd before 'em, and his baggage following behind, they took the road to Samarcand, and arriv'd at the gate of Tehehar Raha, with their hair discover'd, and their eyes gushing out with tears. The Emirs of the city had the insolence to refuse opening the gate to 'em that day: on which the empresses went down into the garden of the Mirza Charoc near that gate, where they pass'd the night. Next day they enter'd the city with the Mirza's and officers of their household, and lodg'd in the Canical of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, where Timur's coffin lay. At their arrival there they uncover'd their heads, and tore their hair; they mangled their faces, and cast themselves on the ground, to testify their sorrow for the emperor. The princesses Canzade and Roukia Canica, the Mirza Mehemed Gchanghir, with several grandees of the empire, as the Coja Abdulcel and others, with the wives of the Cherifs and principal persons, having salts about their necks, and their faces torn, assembled together in different mourning-habits. The inhabitants shut up the shops and markets; and every one made lamentations over the

the emperor's corps. The affliction was not only among the inhabitants of Samarcand; but also spread thro' out all Asia. Chap. 22

## C H A P. XLIV.

*Account of what pass'd among the Mirzas and Emirs who were sent to Bocara.*

THE Mirzas Olone-Bec and Ibrahim Sultan, who had taken the road to Bocara from Ali Abad, arriv'd the fourth of Ramadan 807 at the walls of Dehbeus, a very high fortress, at the foot of which runs the river of Samarcand. They were met there by Beyan Temoor Cazen, brother of Menghelli Cojs, from Samarcand, who brought a letter from Cojs Koush and Argoun Chah, the tenor of which was as follows. "After the usual salutations, we let you know that tho we have refus'd to open the gates of the city to you, it was not thro any motive of malice, or with intent to revolt: our design is only to observe Timur's last will, to the alteration of which we'll never consent. If the Mirza Calil Sultan shou'd come hither, we wou'd use him in the same manner. We are resolv'd to preserve this city, it being the seat of the empire, and not deliver it up to any one till the coming of the Mirza Pir Mehemed, the lawful successor to the crown, into whose hands we will resign it according to the emperor's testament. We thus let you know the state of affairs, that you may not be incens'd against us." At the end of the letter they swore to perform what they promis'd.

The



Book VI.

The Mirzas, notwithstanding the oath, suspected the promises of these flatterers: but not to irritate 'em in this bad conjuncture, they disssembled their suspicion, and order'd the messenger to salute the Emirs, and tell 'em that if their intencion was to do what they had promis'd, it wou'd be better for 'em, since it was the way which every honest and sensible man wou'd take. Besides this they wrote a letter, in which they mildly advis'd 'em to continue firm in the resolution they had taken, and to govern the city according to their duty, without hearkning to any instigations to the contrary; for if they kept their word, and acknowledg'd the obligations they had receiv'd from the emperor, in maintaining the city for the Mirza Pir Mehmed, they wou'd fulfil their master's will; it being an indispensable obligation on every one to do that which is well-pleasing both to God and man, that so their integrity might be mention'd with honor by posterity. They likewise order'd him to tell 'em they need not doubt but that, when the Mirza shou'd be fix'd upon the throne, he wou'd distinguish them above all others, as they had prefer'd it for him; but if they shou'd transgress the orders of their benefactor, they wou'd commit a very heinous and treasonable action, and besides the dishonor and infamy of it, wou'd incur a severe punishment, and must in the end repent in vain. They seal'd up this letter, which they deliver'd to Beyan Temour Caxent, who immediately return'd with it to Samarcand.

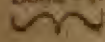
## C H A P. XLV.

*The Mirzas and Emirs at Bokara receive advice of the Mirza Calil Sultan's arrival at Samarcand, and of the obedience paid him by the Emirs of that city.*

**B**EYAN Temour-Cazen being return'd to Samarcand, the Emirs continu'd their journey towards Bokara, and two or three days after receiv'd advice that the Mirza Calil Sultan, who had taken the road of Samarcand from Tachkunt, with the Emirs of his party and his troops, being excited by a desire of usurpation and dominion, had made great haste; that being arriv'd near the city, the Emir Coja Yousef went out to meet him with presents, and had receiv'd him as emperor, having cast gold and precious stones before him, and kiss'd his hand at Chiraz, a village four miles from Samarcand; that the Cherifs and principal persons of the city had done the same; that when the Mirza was arriv'd at the bank of the river of Cushec, Argoun Chah went out to make his submission to him, and had deliver'd the keys of the city and castle, with those of the treasury of that capital, into his hands; and that all the traitors of the city and of the Mirza's court had unanimously resolv'd to acknowledg him for their sovereign, regardless their oaths, or the obedience due to Timur's last testament.

The Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelic having heard this news, loaded the ingrateful perjurers with curses; and wrote a letter to

em

Book VI.  ten full of reproaches, which they sent by an express. Then continuing their road, they met Roullam Berlas, brother of Hamza, governor of Bocara, whom they had sent thither before, and was return'd to meet the Mirza, who being arriv'd before the city went to visit the sepulcher of the prophet Job, whose assistance they implor'd. They made a new treaty in this holy place, which they confirm'd by solemn oaths.

Afterwards they took horse, and enter'd Bocara; they lodg'd in the castle, which they rebuilt, and augmented the fortifications. As to the guard of the city, they agreed that the gate which opens upon it, with one half of the castle, shou'd be under the care of the Mirza Olouc-Bec, assisted by the Emir Chamelic; and that the gate which looks upon the out-part, with the other half of the castle and walls, shou'd be commanded by the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, attended by the Emir Chesk Noureddin; that the city shou'd be guarded by the Emirs Roullam Berlas, his brother Hamza, Arilovich, Terechul Carcara, and others, each of whom shou'd have the care of a gate, as well as of the bastions and walls. Having all come to this resolution, they began immediately to put it in execution, and to rebuild the walls of the city.



## C H A P. XLVI.

*Coronation of the Mirza Calil Sultan at Samarcand.*

**T**H E astrologer Moulana Bedreddin having made choice of wednesday the 16th of <sup>April</sup> Ramadan 807, which answers to the year of the Hen, the sun being in the sixth degree of Aries, for the coronation of the Mirza Calil Sultan; that prince made his entry the same day into Samarcand, and took possession of the great imperial palace, where the treasures of all Asia were amass'd. Being seated on the throne in his imperial habits, he receiv'd the submission of the Mirzas, Emirs, and principal men of the state, who on their knees congratulated his accession to the throne.

As soon as he was install'd, to show he had an outward regard to Timur's testament, he gave the title of Can to the Mirza Mehemed Gekanghir, son of the Mirza Mehomed Sultan, and nephew of the Mirza Pir Mehemed, tho' this young prince was but nine years of age; and his name was plac'd at the top of all the patents and imperial orders according to custom, tho' the Mirza Calil Sultan had the sole disposal of every thing, as if he had been the lawful sovereign of all Transoxiana.

Two days after, this new emperor went to the Canicah of the deceas'd Mirza Mehemed Sultan, where Timur's tomb was, to pay his devotions, and perform the public ceremonies of mourning. The empresses, Mirzas, Emirs, and all the people came there in black habits, and wept and



made bitter lamentations. By the Mirza Calil Sultan's order the whole Alcoran was read thro', alms were distributed among the poor and sick, and a great funeral-banquet prepar'd.

Then the emperor's drum was beat in a very mournful manner, after which it was broke to pieces according to custom. The learned men and poets compos'd panegyrics and epitaphs upon the emperor; and among others the son of the Coja Masacud Hocari, and the Coja Afine: Ula.

As the pious Timur, by reason of the love he always bore to the Cherifs, had several times desir'd that his tomb shou'd be plac'd under that of the great Cherif Seid Bereke, that Cherif's coffin was transported from Andcoud, and inter'd under the mausoleum Timur had erected near the alcove of the Canicah; and Timur's body was plac'd underneath that of the Cherif, according to the orders he had given; the corps of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan was also transported to the same mausoleum, and bury'd at the emperor his grandfather's side. May God enlighten their souls with the lamps of his mercy.

When the Mirza Calil Sultan was fix'd on the throne, he open'd his treasures, and distributed them very liberally among the Emirs, principal lords, and soldiers: but why shou'd it be call'd liberality? it was rather impudence and prodigality, for he distributed his gold like measures of wheat, and it was carry'd away by loads, as corn out of barns, to the great amazement of the people.

## C H A P. XLVII.

*Abridgment of the history of the reign of the  
Mirza Calil Sultan: and the cause of his  
ruin.*

**L**EARNED men have accounted kings the shadow of God, and acknowledg'd that the power of sovereigns is as a ray of the Divinity. But nothing is likewise more certain, than that he who believes himself capable of worthily acquitting that great charge without the divine assistance, gives credit to what is both absurd and impossible: for God always favors with his mercy the good man, and prefers above all other potentates those who regularly pay their devotions to him, and distribute alms to the poor. We may also be assur'd that a state is not well govern'd by its vast treasures and magazines, nor by the multitude of its troops or the great number of its captains: but by the protection of the Almighty. In fine, there is somewhat besides valor requisite for the governing of a great empire.

The truth of this plainly appears in the case of the Mirza Calil Sultan, who thro' injustice and favorable conjunctures became master of so vast an extent of ground, as scarcely ever any one emperor possess'd so much. His birth, as grandson of the great Timur-Bec, drew on him the attention of the whole universe: and at his grandfather's death, most part of the Novians and great Emirs were with him at Tachkent. When they receiv'd the news of that misfortune, their hearts were fill'd with fear: and as



Book VI. of Timur's children, there were none at that place older than the Mirza Cakil Sultan, every one took an oath to him, thinking by this means to preserve the crown for ever in Timur's family.

The Mirza at the same time took the road to Samarcand, and at his arrival there perceiv'd a general consternation among the people, the chief of whom, judging it best so to do, went to meet him, and congratulate him on his coming to the crown. The Emirs who had the keys of the city and treasuries, likewise resign'd 'em to him: and so he easily became master of the throne of Samarcand. This city was then in a very flourishing condition, being inhabited by princes and great lords, learned doctors, and the most skilful artists in the world; for most of the tradesmen of the towns conquer'd by Timur, had left their own country to dwell in this great city, it being the seat of the empire of Asia. We will not mention the immense treasures of ready money, precious stones, suits, belts, earrings, vessels and toys, which were innumerable; nor the arms, bucklers, tents, pavilions, canopies, thrones, and other marks of grandeur, riches and magnificence, which had been amassing for several ages by the princes of all the Kingdoms of Asia, and had been pillag'd by Timur from the emperors and princes of the countries of Iran and Touran, from the country of the Calmaes to the frontiers of Greece and Natolia; and from the farther part of India to the frontiers of Syria, and from Carezem and the great Capchac to the limits of Russia, Circassia, Bulgaria and Europe: besides which was the tribute of thirty-six years receiv'd from all Asia.

This

This city, tho so vastly rich, and fill'd with *Chap. 42.*  
great quantities of goods, and abundance of  
soldiers, fell into the hands of the Mirza Calil  
Sultan without his striking a blow for it: but this  
prodigal prince squander'd away all those trea-  
sures, brought all this grandeur to nothing, and  
entirely ruin'd this vast power in less than four  
years: which was one means made use of by  
 fate to ruin his good fortune.

The second cause was the Mirza's violent  
passion for Chadi Male, one of the concubines of  
the Emir Hadgi Sotteddin, whom he had private-  
ly marry'd in the emperor's absence, and cou'd  
never visit except in secret: but when he  
found himself an absolute sovereign, he resign'd  
everything up to the will of this beauty, and  
took no pleasure but in her company, her  
charms being the subject of all his thoughts;  
while she shew'd no regard either to princes or  
nobles, but accounted every thing below her;  
and even the emperor, laying aside his sove-  
reignty, became her slave, and breath'd only by  
her permission. This brought disorder upon the  
state, and upon the Mirza's affairs, so that no-  
thing succeeded in which the sovereign authority  
had any concern. He squander'd away all his  
riches, and chiefly among those who were after-  
wards the instruments of his ruin: and tho he  
was so rich that all the wealth of Harch and  
the tribe of Tai did not amount to a tenth part  
of one of his treasuries, yet he soon spent all.  
He had neglected the counsel not to be over-  
liberal, for fear of being at last left naked;  
and he seem'd ignorant, that one shou'd give  
only to those who deserve it, and that in mode-  
ration.

On this account, the first thing to be men-  
tion'd as done by this prince was his excessive

Book VI.

prodigality. He sprinkled handfuls of precious stones on the heads of those, upon whom it wou'd have been a crime, in a manner, to sling a little earth; while persons of extraordinary merit cou'd obtain nothing, or at least but a trifle. It was then a perfect game of hazard, for he who put in a penny, carry'd away a million; and those who deserv'd vast treasures, died without having a tenth part. Moreover, the Mirza advanc'd several strangers of mean extraction, made 'em Emirs, and gave 'em the first places in the state; which discover'd a great want of policy and conduct; for it alienated the hearts of the great Emirs of his court, and the generals of his army from him: and even those upstarts whom he had cherish'd, fell into an excess of self-love and pride, which was the root of many disorders. "Bestow  
 " not honours, says the poet, upon him then  
 " lov'd, unless by degrees; for if you advance  
 " him on a sudden, he will become insensible  
 " of the favours you have heap'd on him, and  
 " of the obligations he owes to you."

Besides all this, as the Sultan Calil's mistress was inferior in rank to the decess'd emperor's wives, and these empresses became jealous of her growing greatness, she conceiv'd a great indignation against 'em, and persuaded Calil to give each of 'em, as well as Timur's concubines, to some brave Emir in marriage, who might by that means, as she pretended, become more attach'd to his interest, and so bring the state into better order. Accordingly he behav'd himself towards those venerable empresses, whom he ought to have reverenc'd as his own mother, in a manner condemn'd by all men of sense, forcing them to marry those who were unworthy to be their porters: he cast angels into the  
 mouths



mouths of satyrs, gave eagles to crows, hung pearls with pieces of glass, and rubys with dints; which he did without the least remorse. But he did not consider, that a king who had cast off all thoughts of honor and justice, will shortly lose his kingdom. In effect, his actions drew on him the aversion of his soldiers, and even of all his subjects: and as he no longer acted with sincerity, the public affairs fell into the utmost disorder and confusion. "He run," says a certain poet, the ship of empire aground; both himself and his lady were cast away; for the kingdom slip'd out of his hands, and he fell from the utmost height."

The source of all these disorders was the great familiarity the Mirza had with strangers, and persons of no figure or merit. The good ought to avoid the wicked; for the wicked are the cause of their ruin. These events shew the great soul and admirable conduct of Timur-Bec in his governing the empire: they let us see that his ordering the death of this woman was not without the providence of God, tho' at that time every one was ignorant of the ill consequence of her being suffer'd to live.

## C H A P. XLVIII.

*Conclusion of the history of Timur-Bec, wherein the qualities by which that conqueror surpass'd all the kings who preceded him, are set down.*

*The names of his children who surviv'd him.*

THE glorious perfections by which the incomparable Timur-Bec adorn'd the regal dignity, were his sincere piety, the great veneration he bore to religion, his strict justice, and unbounded liberality, the effects of which were daily seen and felt by his people.

As his great qualities have been mention'd in the series of this history, our design at present is to take notice of certain which were peculiar to him. And among others, with regard to his birth, it is proper to be inform'd, that tho his ninth grandfather was Temeng Can, of the race of Buzendger Can, chief of a branch of the tribe of Cayat, who was descended from Turk, the son of Japhet, the son of Noah, on whom may salvation rest; (from whence we discover that his ancestors were Canes and emperors) yet the Emir Tragai his father, as well as his grandfather the Emir Berkulk, having abdicated the kingdom, and left the government of the principality of Keck, which they had preserv'd with the Tamas of ten thousand men annex'd thereto, to the children of their uncles of the family of Berlas; we may say that Timur-Bec brought the crown into this august family, he being the last emperor in it.

At the age of twenty-five he attain'd to the highest dignities, with admirable courage, and an ambition admir'd by all the world, endeavoring to bring the great talents he had receiv'd from nature to perfection. He pass'd nine years in different countrys, where his good sense and great genius appear'd in councils and assemblies, while at the same time his intrepidity and valor drew upon him every one's admiration, whether in personal combats, or in pitch'd battles, wherein no conqueror before him cou'd boast performing even the tenth part of his actions.


The truth of what we advance may easily be conceiv'd, when we reflect on the actions related in this book: and we are not at all apprehensive that our history will be tax'd with exaggeration. He mounted the throne of the empire when thirty-four years old, and reign'd successfully for thirty-six years, during which time he gain'd a considerable number of conquests; for he made himself master of the three empires of Zagatai Can, Touchi Can, and Hulacou Can; he subdu'd the greatest cities, and kingdoms of Asia; and extended the limits of his dominions as far as the borders of that part of the world; so that his power, riches and magnificence were greater than we can possibly imagine. This is so certain, that we need only read the histories of other kings and princes, in whose families the crown has continu'd a long time, to be assur'd of it. But the chief proof of his great power was, that to whatever place he march'd to wage war, he soon conquer'd it, and gave the government thereof to some of his children or officers; not acting like ancient conquerors, who were contented with those tokens of submission which vanquish'd princes might make by a tribute.



Book VI.

One thing farther remarkable in this monarch was, that tho he always observ'd the wholesome maxim of holding diet, yet he never solely confided in 'em; but constantly did what his own good genius inspir'd in him; and had such good success in all his undertakings, that it seem'd as if he had been always the care of divine providence: He cou'd not be shaken in his resolutions: he had the policy to be present at the execution of his most important enterprises, either as to the state or religion. Both in peace and war he wou'd put forward every thing himself.

Besides his great and continual employments in war and the government, there remain many monuments of his ambition and grandeur, in cities, towns, castles, and walls which he built; in rivers and canals which he dug; and in works of piety, as mosques, chappels, hospitals, bridges, palaces, monasterys, gardens, vineyards, and pleasure-houses, which he erected in divers parts of Asia, in so great a number, that it wou'd take up a large volume only to enumerate 'em, without describing each in particular. And it wou'd be no exaggeration to say, that a king wou'd be accounted very powerful and magnificent, who shou'd have employ'd thirty-six years only in building the great edifices which Timur did; and that he wou'd be thought to surpass all the kings of the earth on that account, without carrying on those long wars, and obtaining the surprising conquests which he did. Are not all the caravans in the great roads of Asia for the accommodation of travellers, the magnificent monasterys and hospitals, from which the poor, the sick and travellers reap so great advantages by the alms distributed there; are not these;

112y, the good works of this pious emperor, Chap. 48.  
who now reaps the fruits of 'em in eternity? 

We may also consider the blessings this emperor receiv'd from heaven in the great number of children he left behind him; which were thirty-six sons, and seventeen daughters living, according to the following detail.

The deceas'd Mirza GERANGHIE his eldest left eleven princes; for the deceas'd *Mu- Timur's children.*  
hammed Sultan had had three sons, Mehemed Geranghir, then nine years of age, Sadraccas six, and Yahia five. The Mirza Pir *Muhammed* Geranghir twenty nine years old, had seven sons, Caidou nine years of age, Caid seven, Bazzadger, Sadraccas, Tondger, Caisar, and Dgehanghir.

The deceas'd Mirza OMAR CHEIK left nine sons; Pir *Muhammed*, twenty-six years old, who had one son, of seven years of age, nam'd Omar Cheik; *Roufren*, ag'd twenty-four, who had two sons, Osman six years old, and Sultan Ali one year; *Eskender* twenty-one years of age; *Abmed* eighteen years; *Sali Abmed* fifteen; and *Baqen Hasan* twelve.

The sons of the Mirza MIRAN CHAH, thirty-eight years of age, were in all seven: *Alpabere*, twenty-three years old, who had two sons, Alengher nine years of age, and Osman Chelebi four; *Omar* twenty-two years old; *Calil Sultan* twenty-one; *Aidgel* ten; and *Surgamich* six.

The Mirza CHAHOE, twenty-eight years of age, had seven sons: *Olouc-Bec* and *Bouahim Sultan*, both eleven years old; *Baisamcar* eight years; *Surgamich* six; *Mehomed Fouki* three years; *Jauglen* two years; and *Tarasi* one year.

Book VI. These thirty-six princes were all living at Timur-Bec's death: besides whom he had one daughter nam'd Sultan Uacc Begum, and sixteen granddaughters: the Mirza Omar Cheik had three daughters, the Mirza Mehemed Sultan three, the Mirza Miran Chah four, and the Mirza Charoc one; the Mirza Pir Mehemed Gebanghir three, the Mirza Aboubecro one, and the Mirza Calli Sultan one.

The Mirza Sultan Hussein, twenty-five years of age, was the son of Timur's daughter nam'd Akia Beghi or Tagi Can; and his father was the Emir Mehemed Bei, son of the Emir Moulla.

And as it was written in the book of fate, that the crown shou'd continue in this illustrious family by the branch of the Mirza Charoc and his children: after having now finish'd the history of the glorious actions of Timur-Bec, we intend to compile a history of the Mirza Charoc, and give a true relation of his great actions, which prov'd him the worthy successor of the most illustrious conqueror who ever appear'd in the world.

*The end of the second volume.*



---

---

**I** HAVE read by order of my lord  
chancellor *the history of Timur-Bec,*  
*grand Can of Tartary;* and believe the  
public will receive as much pleasure  
as advantage from a work, in which  
the reader will discover the geography  
of the vast regions of Tartary, hith-  
erto known in this part of the world.

Paris Decemb. 24.  
1720.

L. De VERTOT.

---

THE

---

THE  
**CONTENTS**  
 OF THE  
**First VOLUME.**

---

**BOOK I.**

- C**HAP. I. Of Sultan Cazan, grand Can of Zagatai; his defeat and death. Mir Cazagan, a Turkish prince, takes upon him the government of the empire, and establishes a grand Can. The war of Mir Cazagan against Malek Hossain, prince of Herat. Page 1
- Chap. 2. Of the government of the Mirza Abdalla, the son of Cazagan; and of the difference which happen'd between the princes of Zagatai. 14
- Chap. 3. Teglur Timur Can, king of the Guees, marches into Transoxiana. The flight of Hadgi Berlat. 18
- Chap. 4. The rise of Mir Hossain, grandson of Mir Cazagan: he is assisted by Timur-Ber. 19
- Chap. 5. Several intrigues between Timur and Hadgi Berlat; as also between the other princes. 22
- Chap. 6. The king of the Guees returns to Transoxiana with a great army. The death of Hadgi Berlat. The Can confirms Timur in the possession of his country of Kesh, and of a Toman of ten thousand men. 28
- Chap.

# The CONTENTS.

Chap. 7. <i>Timur-Ber marches in search of Emir Hussein.</i>	21
Chap. 8. <i>Several warlike exploits of Timur and Hussein.</i>	37
Chap. 9. <i>The remembrance of the army of Gey, and its defeat, caus'd by the policy of Timur-Ber; with the reduction of the city of Keck.</i>	44
Chap. 10. <i>The death of Toghla Timur Can, king of the Gey; and the defeat of his army by the forces of Timur-Ber and Hussein.</i>	47
Chap. 11. <i>The assembly of the princes caus'd by Timur and the Emir Hussein, in which they elevated Cabulshah Aglen to the dignity of grand Can.</i>	53
Chap. 12. <i>The battle of Lai, or of the slaughter.</i>	55
Chap. 13. <i>The Retreat of Timur-Ber and Hussein, Samarcand besieg'd by the Gey.</i>	61
Chap. 14. <i>Departure of the prince for Samarcand, and the dissension which happen'd between 'em.</i>	65
Chap. 15. <i>Timur-Ber brings an army into the field against Emir Hussein.</i>	72
Chap. 16. <i>Several exploits of Timur, and intrigues of the princes. The march of Timur to Caschib.</i>	77
Chap. 17. <i>Mir Hussein brings an army into the field to oppose Timur.</i>	86
Chap. 18. <i>The siege and taking of Bocar, by the army of Hussein. Timur defeats the army of the Governor.</i>	89
Chap. 19. <i>Timur sends an ambassador to Malek Hussein at Herat.</i>	92
Chap. 20. <i>Timur defeats the army of the Emir Hussein in Transoxiana.</i>	94
Chap. 21. <i>The Emir Hussein sends an army against Timur, which is defeated.</i>	101
Chap. 22. <i>The Emir Hussein again seeks to make peace with Timur.</i>	105
Chap. 23. <i>The Emir Hussein brings an army into the field from Bedakchan.</i>	108
†	Chap.



# The CONTENTS.

- Chap. 24. *Timur marches at the head of an army to repulse the Gers.* 112  
 Chap. 25. *Timur returns from Badakshan.* 115  
 Chap. 26. *A second rupture between Timur and Hussein.* 117

## BOOK II.

- C**HAP. 1. *The establishment of Timur on the throne of the empire of Zagatai.* 120  
 Chap. 2. *Timur returns from the city of Balk to Samarcand: the building of the castle and fortress of their metropolis.* 122  
 Chap. 3. *The Courultai, that is, the diet or assembly of the states, convened by Timur's orders.* 126  
 Chap. 4. *Timur marches to Chokurgan at the head of an army.* 128  
 Chap. 5. *Timur sends an army to Balk and Termed.* 140  
 Chap. 6. *Timur sends the Emir Yaken to besiege Chokurgan.* 141  
 Chap. 7. *Timur marches an army into the country of the Gers.* 142  
 Chap. 8. *A second expedition of Timur against the Gers.* 144  
 Chap. 9. *The embassy from Timur to Hussein Sefi, king of Carazem.* 147  
 Chap. 10. *Timur departs from Samarcand, to make war on the king of Carazem.* 149  
 Chap. 11. *Timur makes peace with Yuseph Sefi, who succeeded Hussein; and demands in marriage the princess Camade for the prince Golsanghis his eldest son.* 155  
 Chap. 12. *Timur marches a second time into the kingdom of Carazem.* 157  
 Chap. 13. *The famous embassy from Timur to the king of Carazem, to demand the princess Camade.* 158  
 Chap.

# The CONTENTS.

- Chap. 14. *Timur marches a third time into the country of the Gotes.* 163
- Chap. 15. *Timur's marriage with the princess Ditchidaga, daughter of Camareddin king of the Gotes. Timur is in danger of losing his life by a conspiracy which he narrowly escap'd.* 166
- Chap. 16. *Timur marches a third time to Caracem, and returns on the revolt of Sar Bauga and Adelchud.* 168
- Chap. 17. *Timur's fourth expedition to the kingdom of the Gotes.* 171
- Chap. 18. *The death of Mirza Gekhanghir, Timur's eldest son.* 174
- Chap. 19. *Timur's fifth expedition against the Gotes.* 176
- Chap. 20. *Timur's sixth expedition to the country of the Gotes against Camareddin. Tocannich Aglen, descended from Tonschi, son of Genghis Can, arrives at court, and puts himself under the protection of Timur.* 178
- Chap. 21. *Timur gives Tocannich Aglen the principality of Oerrar and Subran; and assists him in making himself master of the empire of Capcha which he claim'd as his right; the Qourai Can, descended from Genghis Can, was in possession of it.* 180
- Chap. 22. *Preparations for war. Timur brings an army into the field against Qourai Can, emperor of Capcha and grand Russia.* 182
- Chap. 23. *Timur's irruption into the country of Qourai Can: Tocannich Aglen plac'd on the throne of Capcha, otherwise call'd the empire of Tonschi Can.* 185
- Chap. 24. *The birth of prince Charu, son and heir to the emperor Timur.* 187
- Chap. 25. *Timur sends Tocannich Can to attack Temur Melle Can, emperor of Capcha.* 189

# The CONTENTS.

Chap. 26. Embassy from the emperor Timur to Joseph Sofi king of Caracem.	191
Chap. 27. Timur's fourth war in Caracem; death of Joseph Sofi: conquest of that kingdom.	194
Chap. 28. Foundation of the walls of Kech, the court of Timur: the building of the palace of Afersai.	199
Chap. 29. The Emir Hadgi Seifeddin sent ambassador to Herat, to Malek Cayasiddin Pir Ali, king of Corassana.	200
Chap. 30. Mirza Miran Chah, son of Timur, marches into Corassana, to make war on Malek Cayasiddin Pir Ali, prince of Herat.	202
Chap. 31. Timur's army marches to make war in Persia, and the rest of the empire of Iran.	204
Chap. 32. Reduction of Fanchengge, a town of Corassana.	207
Chap. 33. Reduction of Herat, capital of Corassana.	209
Chap. 34. The army marches to Taur and Kelat.	213
Chap. 35. Timur returns to Samarcand.	215
Chap. 36. Death of Akia Beghi, daughter of Timur, and wife of the Emir Bei, son of the Emir Mussa.	216
Chap. 37. Timur's second expedition into the kingdom of Iran or Persia.	219
Chap. 38. Reduction of the town of Tarabiz in Corassana.	p. 225
Chap. 39. The arrival of an ambassador from Persia, or the true Persia, at the court of Timur.	227
Chap. 40. Timur marches into the province of Mazendran.	229
Chap. 41. Timur marches to Samarcand, Death of the empress Dikhaduga, and of the princess Geluc Tuzan Aga, Timur's sister.	231



# The CONTENTS.

Chap. 42. Timur sends a fresh army into the country of the Great.	235
Chap. 43. Timur marches to Mazandran, and thence to Sistan.	236
Chap. 44. Town of Sistan besieged and taken.	239
Chap. 45. Timur marches to Boff.	245
Chap. 46. War against the Ougautians, inhabitants of the mountains, south of Candahar.	247
Chap. 47. Timur returns to Samarcand.	250
Chap. 48. Timur marches into the province of Mazandran.	251
Chap. 49. Timur marches into the province of Irac Agoni.	256
Chap. 50. The emperor Timur marches to Sulahia.	257
Chap. 51. Timur returns to Samarcand, the capital of his empire.	259
Chap. 52. Timur enters the kingdom of Iran, where he stays three years successively.	261
Chap. 53. Timur marches to Azerbaijan, or the country of the ancient Medes.	263
Chap. 54. Timur enters Georgia at the head of his army. The description of the Persian way of hunting; at which the Gorks and Norks.	267
Chap. 55. Timur returns to Canakagh.	269
Chap. 56. The march of Timur to Herda. The motion of the army of Capchar. Defeat of the troops of Taimanch Can.	273
Chap. 57. The arrival of the empress Serai Malik Caman, and the prizes her sons.	277
Chap. 58. Timur's army marches against Kara Ahmed, prince of the Turcomans.	278
Chap. 59. Timur marches to Vau and Vafan. The letter which Cha Ching king of Persia wrote to Timur at his death.	282
Chap. 60. Timur marches again into the country of Fars and Irac Agoni.	289

# The CONTENTS.

- Chap. 61. *Timur marches to Chiraz, the capital of Persia or the true Persia.* 294  
 Chap. 62. *Reasons which induc'd Timur to return to the capital of his empire.* 297  
 Chap. 63. *Timur returns to Samarcand; and gives the government of Persia and Irac to the family of Massiff.* 301  
 Chap. 64. *The emperor orders a process against some Emirs, whom he had left in Transoxiana.* 303

## B O O K III.

- CHAP. 1. *Timur-Bek departs for his fifth expedition into the kingdom of Caracem.* 305  
 Chap. 2. *Some accidents during Timur's expedition into Caracem.* 308  
 Chap. 3. *Timur departs to make war in Capcha, and is victorious over Tocamich Can.* 317  
 Chap. 4. *Timur sends the Mirza Miran Chab into Carassaur.* 323  
 Chap. 5. *Timur's expedition into Mogolistan against Kizer Coja Aglen, and the prince Ancatoura; which made the fifth campaign in that country.* 325  
 Chap. 6. *Timur holds a diet, and sends his army into all the quarters of the Moguls, to fight the Gens.* 331  
 Chap. 7. *Timur returns to the seat of his empire.* 338  
 Chap. 8. *The Caroultaï, or diet, held by Timur's order.* 342  
 Chap. 9. *Timur sends his troops into the country of the Gens.* 344  
 Chap. 10. *Timur marches into the desert of Capcha.* 347  
 Chap. 11. *Timur reviews his troops.* 356  
 Chap. 12. *Timur sends the Mirza Mahomet Sultan at the head of the scouts.* 359

# The CONTENTS.

Chap. 13. <i>Battel between the fronts of the two armies. Death of the Emir Aicoutmar, and other famous men.</i>	367
Chap. 14. <i>The army rang'd in order of battel in an extraordinary manner. A terrible fight which caus'd the rout.</i>	371
Chap. 15. <i>Timur returns from the desarts of Capchaie to the seat of his empire.</i>	382
Chap. 16. <i>The government of Zabulestan given to Mirza Pir Mehamed, son of Gebanghir.</i>	384
Chap. 17. <i>Timur departs for a war of five years continuance.</i>	386
Chap. 18. <i>Timur departs from Jander after his recovery.</i>	388
Chap. 19. <i>The taking of Amol, Sari, and Mahanjar.</i>	390
Chap. 20. <i>Timur sends a letter to Samarcand.</i>	396
Chap. 21. <i>Timur makes war a second time on the kingdom of Fars and Iam.</i>	399
Chap. 22. <i>Timur marches to the kingdoms of Lorestan and Caresban.</i>	403
Chap. 23. <i>An account of the motions of the princes of Fars, &amp; of Persia and Iam, in which the present affairs depend.</i>	406
Chap. 24. <i>Timur marches to Chiraz against Chah Mansour.</i>	411
Chap. 25. <i>Battel between Timur and Chah Mansour. The death of the latter.</i>	416
Chap. 26. <i>Timur seizes the princes of the house of Muzaffer, and disposes of their effects among his lieutenants.</i>	422
Chap. 27. <i>Timur marches to the kingdom of Iam, Agoul, or Hircania.</i>	424
Chap. 28. <i>Timur invests the Mirza Miran Chah in the kingdom of Hulacai Can.</i>	426
Chap. 29. <i>Timur vanquishes the Turcoman Hachan Sacer.</i>	427
Chap. 30. <i>Timur marches to Bagdad.</i>	431
E c 3	Chap.



# The CONTENTS.

Chap. 31. Return of Mirza Mehemet Sultan after the defeat of the Ozurdes robbers.	438
Chap. 32. Timur sends an ambassador to the Sultan Baruc in Egypt.	439
Chap. 33. The taking of the town of Teerit.	441
Chap. 34. Timur continues his journey, and sends his princes and Emirs to make incursions in several kingdoms.	448
Chap. 35. Timur marches to Diarbekir.	450
Chap. 36. Timur marches to Edessa.	452
Chap. 37. Death of Mirza Omar Cheik, Timur's son.	453
Chap. 38. Timur marches to Gozire.	460
Chap. 39. Timur's second enterprize upon Mardin.	461
Chap. 40. Birth of the Mirza Oluc Be.	463
Chap. 41. Timur marches to Amud or Hamid, capital of the country of Diarbekir.	464
Chap. 42. Timur returns to Alatac.	467
Chap. 43. Timur sends bodies of soldiers into several countries to enlarge his conquests.	468
Chap. 44. The taking of the town and fortress of Azenic.	471
Chap. 45. Timur's return after the taking of Azenic.	477
Chap. 46. Timur sends an army into Georgia.	479
Chap. 47. The birth of Ibrahim Sultan, son of Charoc.	480
Chap. 48. Selenu rejoicings for the birth of Ibrahim Sultan, son of Charoc.	482
Chap. 49. Timur constitutes the Mirza Charoc governor of Samarcand.	484
Chap. 50. Timur goes in person to the Georgian war.	485
Chap. 51. Timur marches a second time into Cappadocia against Tocatmich Can.	487
Chap. 52. Timur renews his army.	490
Chap. 53. Battle between Timur and Tocatmich Can.	493
Chap.	

# The CONTENTS.

Chap. 54. Timur goes in pursuit of Tocarmich Can, and installs a new Can of Capchaï.	498
Chap. 55. Timur marches into Europe; and pillages the western Capchaï, as also Muscovy and Russia.	501
Chap. 56. Timur makes war in Circassia.	505
Chap. 57. Timur marches to Alburtz Couh, or mount Caucasus.	506
Chap. 58. Timur attacks the fortress of Coula, Tumu, and others.	507
Chap. 59. Timur marches to Sensem.	511
Chap. 60. Timur marches into Capchaï, and pillages the town of Hadgi Tereau, or Astracan.	513
Chap. 61. Timur returns to Capchaï.	515
Chap. 62. Timur gives the government of Azerbaijan to the Mirza Mirancha, who besieges Alengic.	519
Chap. 63. Taking of the town of Seirjan; and the retreat of Behloul to Nehavend.	520
Chap. 64. Timur sends the Mirza Mohamed Sultan to conquer the kingdom of Ormus. The reduction of Traz.	524
Chap. 65. Timur returns to the seat of his empire.	525
Chap. 66. The building of the palace of Beghi Chermal.	530
Chap. 67. Timur gives the principality of Corassana to the Mirza Chavac.	531
Chap. 68. Timur stays some time at Kech. Return of the Mirza Mohamed Sultan from the campaign of Fari.	534
Chap. 69. Timur demands in marriage for himself the daughter of Kesi Coja Aglen. He celebrates the nuptials of the Mirza Iskender with the princess Beghi Sultan.	537
Chap. 70. Timur gives orders for making the garden of Dilenchah, and building a stately palace in it.	538

---

THE  
CONTENTS  
OF THE  
Second VOLUME.

---

BOOK IV.

- CHAP. 1. *The cause of Timur's war in India.* Page 4  
Chap. 2. *Timur brings his army into the field, to make war against the Gurbres in India.* 7  
Chap. 3. *Timur marches against the inhabitants of Ketur. He defeats the Siapanches, who were cluh'd in black.* 8  
Chap. 4. *Timur sends Mehemet Azad to gain intelligence of Mirza Rouslan and Burhan Aglen. His return to Ketur.* 13  
Chap. 5. *Timur sends Mirza Charoc to Herat.* 17  
Chap. 6. *The arrival of ambassadors from several places. Taiza Aglen returns from the country of the Calmacks, and Cheik Noureddin from that of Fars.* 18  
Chap. 7. *The repairing the fortress of Irjah, and the destroying of the Ouganis robbers.* 23



# The CONTENTS.

Chap. 8. <i>Timur marches to Chouazan and Nagar; and destroys the robbers of the nation of the Perseans.</i>	25
Chap. 9. <i>Timur passes the river Indus.</i>	28
Chap. 10. <i>Chehabeldin Mahomed Chah Tenni commences hostilities against the emperor after his submission.</i>	29
Chap. 11. <i>Timur's arrival at Toulouba.</i>	32
Chap. 12. <i>Timur marches in search of Nasret Cokeri.</i>	34
Chap. 13. <i>Arrival of prince Pir Mehemud Ghanghar from Moultaun.</i>	35
Chap. 14. <i>The taking the town of Boud, and the fortress of Batair; the inhabitants of which places are put to the sword.</i>	39
Chap. 15. <i>Timur departs from Batair, for Seristi, Fatahad and Ahrouni.</i>	43
Chap. 16. <i>Timur marches against a nation of rebellious Guees.</i>	46
Chap. 17. <i>A review of the whole army marching in order of battel.</i>	48
Chap. 18. <i>Timur marches to the east side of the town of Lanni. Massacre of a hundred thousand Indian slaves who were in his camp.</i>	52
Chap. 19. <i>Timur gives battel to Sultan Mahmud, emperor of India.</i>	55
Chap. 20. <i>Flight of Sultan Mahmud, and his general Melles Cau, prince of Moultaun. Reduction of Deli capital of India.</i>	61
Chap. 21. <i>Timur departs from Deli; and pursues his conquests in the remoter parts of India, near the Ganges.</i>	68
Chap. 22. <i>Conquest of Myrtha. The Gueeres are put to death.</i>	69
Chap. 23. <i>Several battels upon the great river Ganges, against the militia of the Gueeres.</i>	72
Chap. 24. <i>Timur's three Gazies, or expeditions against the Gueeres.</i>	74
Chap.	

# The CONTENTS.

Chap. 17. <i>Timur exterminates the Guebres assembled in the famous defile of Conople. Description of a marble statue of a cow ador'd by the Indians.</i>	78
Chap. 18. <i>Timur's resolution to return to the seat of his empire.</i>	81
Chap. 19. <i>Timur's eruption on the mountain Soualee.</i>	82
Chap. 20. <i>Several combats in the woods near Soualee.</i>	83
Chap. 21. <i>Timur's Gazies and expeditions in the province of Tchamou.</i>	87
Chap. 22. <i>Relation of what pass'd at Lahor, with regard to Chien Couker, prince of that city.</i>	91
Chap. 23. <i>Description of the little kingdom of Cachmir, or Kichmir.</i>	93
Chap. 24. <i>Timur returns to the seat of his empire.</i>	97
Chap. 25. <i>Timur crosses the Oxus, and is met by the princes and princesses of the blood.</i>	102
Chap. 26. <i>Building of the great mosque of Samar-cand.</i>	103

## BOOK V.

CHAP. 1. <i>The causes which oblig'd Timur to make war in the country of Ionn, that is, in the western parts of Asia, from the river Gihon to the Mediterranean sea.</i>	108
Chap. 2. <i>Timur's departure for a campaign of seven years.</i>	113
Chap. 3. <i>The transactions of the Emir Selyman Chah.</i>	117
Chap. 4. <i>The arrival of good news from several parts.</i>	120
Chap. 5. <i>Timur marches into Georgia, and to the defile of Conople.</i>	126

# The CONTENTS.

Chap. 6. <i>Timur's return from the desile of Concha.</i>	128
Chap. 7. <i>Continuation of the history of the Mirza Rastan, who was gain from Djiaen to Chiraz. A great crime committed by his eldest brother, the Mirza Pir Mehmed.</i>	130
Chap. 8. <i>A diet in relation to the affair of Georgia.</i>	136
Chap. 9. <i>Timur marches against prince Jani Beg, a Georgian.</i>	139
Chap. 10. <i>The taking of the fort of Zerit, and the town of Suani.</i>	141
Chap. 11. <i>Timur marches against the Georgian prince Aivani.</i>	143
Chap. 12. <i>Timur returns from Georgia.</i>	144
Chap. 13. <i>Reasons which oblig'd Timur to march against the city of Sebaste, capital of Anarolia.</i>	145
Chap. 14. <i>Timur's letter to the Caisar Roun, that is, the Ottoman emperor.</i>	147
Chap. 15. <i>Timur marches to Sebaste, and takes that city.</i>	151
Chap. 16. <i>Timur marches to Abulestan.</i>	155
Chap. 17. <i>The reasons of Timur's carrying his army into Syria and Mesopotamia.</i>	157
Chap. 18. <i>Timur marches into the kingdoms of Syria and Egypt.</i>	160
Chap. 19. <i>The taking of the castles of Behesna and Antapa.</i>	162
Chap. 20. <i>The siege and taking the city of Aleppo.</i>	165
Chap. 21. <i>The castle of Aleppo attack'd and taken.</i>	173
Chap. 22. <i>The taking of the towns and castles of Emessa and Hama.</i>	177
Chap. 23. <i>Conquest of the town of Balta.</i>	180
Chap. 24. <i>Timur marches to Damascus, capital of Syria.</i>	181
Chap.	



# The CONTENTS.

Chap. 25. Timur gives battle to the Sultan of Egypt, and gains the victory.	187
Chap. 26. Taking of the city of Damascus.	189
Chap. 27. Taking of the castle of Damascus.	194
Chap. 28. Timur returns out of Syria.	202
Chap. 29. Timur crosses the Euphrates, and hovers in Mesopotamia.	205
Chap. 30. Timur marches to the town of Merdin.	206
Chap. 31. Timur sends troops into Georgia, and to Bagdad.	208
Chap. 32. Timur besieges and takes Bagdad.	211
Chap. 33. Timur's return from Bagdad, and march towards Tauris.	217
Chap. 34. Timur sends the Mirza Chares to Arzenagian.	219
Chap. 35. Arrival of the second empress Taiman Aga, and the young prince, from Samarcand.	221
Chap. 36. Timur marches into Georgia, and to Carabagh Arran.	222
Chap. 37. Timur passes the winter at Carabagh. Arrival of the Mirza Mehemet Sultan from Samarcand.	224
Chap. 38. Timur sends troops to make ravens in several places.	226
Chap. 39. The causes which oblig'd Timur to return to make war on Bajazet the Ottoman emperor.	230
Chap. 40. Timur digs the river of Berles.	234
Chap. 41. Timur departs from Carabagh for the plains of Chembane.	235
Chap. 42. Taking of the castle of Tartous.	238
Chap. 43. Taking of the castle of Kemac, Arrival of ambassadors from Bajazet.	240
Chap. 44. Timur reviews his army.	243
Chap. 45. Taking of the castle of Hayat.	245
Chap. 46. Timur marches to Cesarea in Cappadocia, and to Antioch.	246
Chap. 47. Timur ranges his army in order of battle, to fight Bajazet.	250
Chap	

# The CONTENTS.

Chap. 48. Timur gives Bajazet battle, and gains the victory.	252
Chap. 49. The taking of the Ottoman emperor, who is brought in chains before the throne of the conqueror.	255
Chap. 50. Timur orders troops to make invasions in divers parts of the Ottoman empire. He sends relations of his victory to the city of Iram and Tauran, with orders to make public rejoicings.	258
Chap. 51. The continuation of the history of the Mirza Mahomed Sultan, who had been sent to Prusa in Buthina.	261
Chap. 52. Account of the Mirza Sultan Hussein, and the Emir Selym Chah, who were gone out to make invasions.	265
Chap. 53. Timur departs from Kocutahia.	266
Chap. 54. Timur dispatches couriers into divers countries. The arrival of several ambassadors.	268
Chap. 55. Timur regulates the winter-quarters.	271
Chap. 56. Timur besieges Smyrna, and takes it.	275
Chap. 57. Second arrival of ambassadors from Bajazet's sons.	278
Chap. 58. Timur departs from Smyrna.	280
Chap. 59. Taking of the town of Egridir and Nishme.	283
Chap. 60. The death of the Ottoman emperor Bajazet, and of the Mirza Mahomed Sultan, Timur's grandson.	285
Chap. 61. Mourning for the death of the Mirza Mahomed Sultan: and the translation of his coffin.	288
Chap. 62. Arrival of ambassadors from Egypt.	289
Chap. 63. Timur marches against the Caratauri, or Black Tartars.	291
Chap. 64. Timur returns from Natalia.	294
Chap. 65. The manner in which the death of the Mirza Mahomed Sultan, son of Gohanghor, was made known to Circassia by messengers.	296

# The CONTENTS.

## BOOK VI.

CHAP. 1. Timur marches into Georgia.	299
Chap. 2. The government of China a second time given to the Mirza Pir Mehomed, son of Omar Cheik; and that of Ispahan to his brother the Mirza Reüstem.	301
Chap. 3. Timur sends the Mirza Abunderra to rebuild the city of Bagdad, and gives him the government of Irac-Arabi and Diarbekir.	302
Chap. 4. Timur's arrival at the frontiers of Georgia.	306
Chap. 5. The taking of the famous castle of Cartene in Georgia.	308
Chap. 6. Relation of what pass'd without during their siege.	313
Chap. 7. Timur marches to Abkhaz.	314
Chap. 8. Timur returns from Abkhaz. The cause of his return.	316
Chap. 9. Timur orders the town of Ballacan to be rebuilt.	319
Chap. 10. Timur sends intendants and doctors into all the provinces of his empire, to examine the affairs of particular persons, and to distribute his justice and favors among the people.	321
Chap. 11. Continuation of the history of the princes who were gone into Irac-Arabi.	325
Chap. 12. Arrival of the Mirza Omar from Samarcand. Continuation of what happen'd during the building of Ballacan.	327
Chap. 13. Timur passes the winter at Carabagh-Artavan. Relation of what happen'd there.	329
Chap. 14. The emperor sends the Mirza Chares to Ghilan.	332
Chap. 15. Arrival of some princes from Merdia and Vastan. A famous funeral banquet made for the late Mirza Mehomed Sultan.	334
Chap.	



# The CONTENTS.

Chap. 16. <i>Timur's return from a campaign of seven years.</i>	316
Chap. 17. <i>Timur invests the Mirza Omar in the empire of Halican Cau.</i>	327
Chap. 18. <i>Continuation of the history of the Mirza Rouslem and the Emir Seljman Chah, who were sent towards Rei.</i>	338
Chap. 19. <i>Timur sends the Mirza Iskender and the Emir Chamsli before the rest towards Rei.</i>	345
Chap. 20. <i>The taking of the citadel of Firuzcuk.</i>	342
Chap. 21. <i>Timur marches to Tchelan.</i>	345
Chap. 22. <i>Battel between the Mirza Sultan Hassan and Iskender Chah. The flight of the latter.</i>	348
Chap. 23. <i>Timur returns to the seat of his empire.</i>	351
Chap. 24. <i>Timur's entry into his imperial city of Samarcand.</i>	355
Chap. 25. <i>Timur holds a general diet. A great feast for the marriage of the princes at Camighat.</i>	353
Chap. 26. <i>The causes which incited Timur to undertake the conquest of the kingdom of China.</i>	363
Chap. 27. <i>Timur sets out for the war against the infidels of China.</i>	372
Chap. 28. <i>An account of certain adventures, the knowledge of which is necessary to the understanding the latter part of this history. A relation of what pass'd at Afschar.</i>	375
Chap. 29. <i>Timur departs from Afschar.</i>	378
Chap. 30. <i>Timur's death at Otrar.</i>	381
Chap. 31. <i>Relation of what happen'd after Timur's death.</i>	387
Chap. 32. <i>Timur's coffin is transported from Otrar.</i>	389
Chap. 33. <i>The emperors and Emirs hold a council concerning the war of China.</i>	391
Chap. 34. <i>Timur's coffin is transported to Samarcand.</i>	393
	Chap.

# The CONTENTS.

- Chap. 35. *The Mirza Sultan Hussein, Timur's grandson, opposes the sentiment of the Emirs.* 396
- Chap. 36. *The Emirs write circular letters to give advice to all the provinces of the Mirza Sultan Hussein's undertaking.* 397
- Chap. 37. *A letter to the great Emirs who were at Tachkum.* 399
- Chap. 38. *The Emir Berendac arrives at the empresses' court, with an answer to the letter sent the Emir, who were at Tachkum with the Mirza Calil Sultan.* 401
- Chap. 39. *Relation of what happen'd on the Emir Berendac's return to Tachkum.* 405
- Chap. 40. *The great Emirs oppose the Mirza Calil Sultan.* 407
- Chap. 41. *The Emirs hold a council with the empresses, in relation to their marching to Bicara.* 409
- Chap. 42. *The Mirzas and Emirs march to Bicara.* 411
- Chap. 43. *The empresses march to Samarcand. Their mourning, after the two Mirzas departure.* 412
- Chap. 44. *Account of what pass'd among the Mirzas and Emirs who were gone to Bicara.* 413
- Chap. 45. *The Mirzas and Emirs at Bicara receive advice of the Mirza Calil Sultan's arrival at Samarcand, and of the obedience paid him by the Emirs of that city.* 415
- Chap. 46. *Coronation of the Mirza Calil Sultan at Samarcand.* 417
- Chap. 47. *Abridgement of the history of the reign of the Mirza Calil Sultan: and the cause of his ruin.* 419
- Chap. 48. *Conclusion of the history of Timur-Bec, wherein the qualities by which that conqueror surpass'd all the kings who preceded him, are set down. The number of his children who surviv'd him.* 424

The end of the contents.





Nie 15  
27 3/176

*"A book that is shut is but a block"*

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL LIBRARY  
GOVT. OF INDIA  
Department of Archaeology  
NEW DELHI

Please help us to keep the book  
clean and moving.

---